English Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers and CD-ROM

Raymond Murphy
English Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English

Fourth Edition with answers

Raymond Murphy
Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present and past
1 Present continuous (I am doing)
2 Present simple (I do)
3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)
4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)
5 Past simple (I did)
6 Past continuous (I was doing)

Present perfect and past
7 Present perfect 1 (I have done)
8 Present perfect 2 (I have done)
9 Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)
10 Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)
11 How long have you (been) ...?
12 For and since When ...? and How long ...
13 Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)
14 Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)
15 Past perfect (I had done)
16 Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)
17 Have and have got
18 Used to (do)

Future
19 Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future
20 (I'm) going to (do)
21 Will/shall 1
22 Will/shall 2
23 I will and I'm going to
24 Will be doing and will have done
25 When I do / When I've done When and if

Modals
26 Can, could and (be) able to
27 Could (do) and could have (done)
28 Must and can't
29 May and might 1
30 May and might 2
31 Have to and must
32 Must mustn't needn't
33 Should 1
34 Should 2
35 Had better It's time ...
36 Would
37 Can/Could/Would you ...? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the study guide on page 326.
If and wish
38 If I do ... and If I did ...
39 If I knew ... I wish I knew ...
40 If I had known ... I wish I had known ...
41 Wish

Passive
42 Passive 1 (is done / was done)
43 Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)
44 Passive 3
45 It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...
46 Have something done

Reported speech
47 Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)
48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs
49 Questions 1
50 Questions 2 (Do you know where ...? / He asked me where ...)
51 Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) I think so / I hope so etc.
52 Question tags (do you? isn’t it? etc.)

-ing and to ... Gerunds and Infinitives
53 Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)
54 Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)
55 Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)
56 Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)
57 Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)
58 Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)
59 Prefer and would rather
60 Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing
61 Be/get used to something (I’m used to ...)
62 Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)
63 Expressions + -ing
64 To ... , for ... and so that ...
65 Adjective + to ...
66 To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)
67 See somebody do and see somebody doing
68 -ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Articles and nouns
69 Countable and uncountable 1
70 Countable and uncountable 2
71 Countable nouns with a/an and some
72 A/an and the
73 The 1
74 The 2 (school / the school etc.)
75 The 3 (children / the children)
76 The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc., the + adjective)
77 Names with and without the 1
78 Names with and without the 2
Singular and plural
Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)
's (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

Pronouns and determiners
Myself/yourself/themselves etc.
A friend of mine My own house On my own / by myself
There ... and it ...
Some and any
No/note/any Nothing/nobody etc.
Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty
All / all of most / most of no / none of etc.
Both / both of neither / neither of either / either of
All, every and whole
Each and every

Relative clauses
Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which
Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without who/that/which
Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where
Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)
Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)
-ing and -ed clauses (the woman talking to Tom, the boy injured in the accident)

Adjectives and adverbs
Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)
Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired
Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)
Adjectives and adverbs 2 (well/fast/late, hard/hardly)
So and such
Enough and too
Quite, pretty, rather and fairly
Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)
Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)
Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)
Superlatives (the longest, the most enjoyable etc.)
Word order 1: verb + object; place and time
Word order 2: adverbs with the verb
Still, yet and already Any more / any longer / no longer
Even

Conjunctions and prepositions
Although / though / even though In spite of / despite
In case
Unless As long as Provided/providing
As (As I walked along the street ... / As I was hungry ...)
Like and as
Like / as if / as though
For, during and while
By and until By the time ...
Prepositions
121 At/on/in (time)
122 On time and in time At the end and in the end
123 In/at/on (position) 1
124 In/at/on (position) 2
125 In/at/on (position) 3
126 To/at/in/into
127 In/on/at (other uses)
128 By
129 Noun + preposition (reason for, cause of etc.)
130 Adjective + preposition 1
131 Adjective + preposition 2
132 Verb + preposition 1 to and at
133 Verb + preposition 2 about/for/of/after
134 Verb + preposition 3 about and of
135 Verb + preposition 4 of/for/from/on
136 Verb + preposition 5 in/into/with/to/on

Phrasal verbs
137 Phrasal verbs 1 General points
138 Phrasal verbs 2 in/out
139 Phrasal verbs 3 out
140 Phrasal verbs 4 on/off (1)
141 Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)
142 Phrasal verbs 6 up/down
143 Phrasal verbs 7 up (1)
144 Phrasal verbs 8 up (2)
145 Phrasal verbs 9 away/back

Appendix 1 Regular and irregular verbs 292
Appendix 2 Present and past tenses 294
Appendix 3 The future 295
Appendix 4 Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) 296
Appendix 5 Short forms (I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc.) 297
Appendix 6 Spelling 298
Appendix 7 American English 300

Additional exercises 302

Study guide 326

Key to Exercises 336
Key to Additional exercises 368
Key to Study guide 372

Index 373
Thanks

This is the fourth edition of *English Grammar in Use*. I wrote the original edition when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

Regarding the production of this fourth edition, I am grateful to Nóirín Burke, Annabel Marriott, Matthew Duffy, Liz Driscoll, Jane Walsh, Jeanette Alfoldi and Kamae Design. I would like to thank Cambridge University Press for permission to access the Cambridge International Corpus.

Thank you also to the following illustrators: Humberto Blanco, Paul Fellows, Sophie Joyce, Katie Mac, Ian Mitchell, Gillian Martin, Sandy Nicholls, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Dave Whamond and Simon Williams.
To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

- What is the difference between I did and I have done?
- When do we use will for the future?
- What is the structure after I wish?
- When do we say used to do and when do we say used to doing?
- When do we use the?
- What is the difference between like and as?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book and there are exercises on each point.

Level
The book is intended mainly for intermediate students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures which intermediate students want to use, but which often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is not suitable for elementary learners.

How the book is organised
There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of the) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the Contents at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is a Key for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 292–301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed Index at the back of the book (page 373).

How to use the book
The units are not in order of difficulty, so it is not intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that you find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

- Use the Contents and/or Index to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide on page 326.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the Key.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can of course use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.
Additional exercises

At the back of the book there are *Additional exercises* (pages 302–325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26–36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.
To the teacher

*English Grammar in Use* was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (*Present and past, Articles and nouns, Prepositions* etc.). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don’t forget the *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see To the student).

This fourth edition of *English Grammar in Use* has been revised and updated. There are no new units, but some of the exercises have been rewritten or replaced.

An edition of *English Grammar in Use* without the Key is available. Some teachers may prefer this for use with their students.

An online version of *English Grammar in Use* is also available.
English Grammar in Use
Present continuous (I am doing)

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work.
She is driving to work.

This means: she is driving now, at the time of speaking.
The action is not finished.

Am/is/are + -ing is the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am ( = I'm)</th>
<th>driving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is  ( = he's etc.)</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they are ( = we're etc.)</td>
<td>doing etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am doing something = I'm in the middle of doing it; I've started doing it and I haven't finished:

- Please don't make so much noise. I'm trying to work.   (not I try)
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He's having a shower.' (not He has a shower)
- Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more.   (not It doesn't rain)
- (at a party) Hi, Jane. Are you enjoying the party?   (not Do you enjoy)
- What's all that noise? What's going on?   (= What's happening?)

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:

I'm reading a really good book at the moment.
It's about a man who ...

Steve is not reading the book at the time of speaking.
He means that he has started it, but has not finished it yet.
He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian. (but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking)
- Some friends of mine are building their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

You can use the present continuous with today / this week / this year etc. (periods around now):

A: You're working hard today.   (not You work hard today)
B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
A: The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.

We use the present continuous when we talk about changes happening around now, especially with these verbs:

grow, change, increase, rise, fall, get, become, improve, begin, start

- Is your English getting better?   (not Does your English get better)
- The population of the world is increasing very fast.   (not increases)
- At first I didn't like my job, but I'm beginning to enjoy it now.   (not I begin)
Exercises

1.1 The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

| 1. Please don’t make so much noise. | a. It’s getting late. |
| 2. I need to eat something soon. | b. They’re lying. |
| 3. I don’t have anywhere to live right now. | c. It’s starting to rain. |
| 4. We need to leave soon. | d. They’re trying to sell it. |
| 5. They don’t need their car any more. | e. I’m getting hungry. |
| 6. Things are not so good at work. | f. I’m trying to work. |
| 7. It isn’t true what they said. | g. I’m looking for an apartment. |
| 8. We’re going to get wet. | h. The company is losing money. |

1.2 Complete the conversations.

1. A: I saw Brian a few days ago. Oh, did you? What’s he doing these days? (what / he / do)
   B: He’s at university.
   A: What subject?
   B: Psychology.
   A: Does he enjoy it? (he / enjoy)
   B: Yes, he says it’s a very good course.

   B: Not bad. It wasn’t so good at first, but it’s getting better now.
   A: What about Daniel? Is he OK?
   B: Yes, but he’s enjoying his work right now. (he / not / enjoy)
   A: Oh, that’s good. He’s been in the same job for a long time and he’s trying to get bored with it. (he / begin)

1.3 Put the verb into the correct form, positive (I’m doing etc.) or negative (I’m not doing etc.).

1. Please don’t make so much noise. I’m trying (I / try) to work.
2. Let’s go out now. It isn’t raining (it / rain) any more.
3. You can turn off the radio. I’m not listening (I / listen) to it.
4. Kate phoned me last night. She’s on holiday in France. She’s having a great time and doesn’t want to come back.
5. I want to lose weight, so this week I’m not eating (I / eat) lunch.
6. Andrew has just started evening classes. He’s not learning Japanese.
7. Paul and Sally have had an argument. They’re not speaking to each other.
8. I’m getting tired. I need a rest.
9. Tim isn’t working (work) today. He’s taken the day off.
10. I’m not looking for Sophie. Do you know where she is?

1.4 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>start</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>increase</th>
<th>change</th>
<th>rise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. The population of the world is increasing very fast.
2. The world is changing. Things never stay the same.
3. The situation is getting worse.
4. The cost of living is increasing. Every year things are more expensive.
5. The weather is improving. The rain has stopped, and the wind isn’t as strong.
Present simple (I do)

Study this example situation:

Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep. He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He drives a bus. (He is a bus driver.)

Drive(s)/work(s)/do(es) etc. is the present simple:

I/we/you/they drive/work/do etc.
he/she/it drives/works/does etc.

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

☐ Nurses look after patients in hospitals.
☐ I usually go away at weekends.
☐ The earth goes round the sun.
☐ The cafe opens at 7.30 in the morning.

Remember:

I work ... but He works ... They teach ... but My sister teaches ...

For spelling (-s or -es), see Appendix 6.

We use do/does to make questions and negative sentences:

| do | does I/we/you/they work? drive? do? I/we/you/they don't work drive do |
|----|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
|    | I come from Canada. Where do you come from? |
|    | I don't go away very often. |
|    | What does this word mean? (not What means this word?) |
|    | Rice doesn't grow in cold climates. |

In the following examples, do is also the main verb (do you do / doesn't do etc.):

☐ 'What do you do?' 'I work in a shop.'
☐ He's always so lazy. He doesn't do anything to help.

We use the present simple to say how often we do things:

☐ I get up at 8 o'clock every morning.
☐ How often do you go to the dentist?
☐ Julie doesn't drink tea very often.
☐ Robert usually goes away two or three times a year.

I promise / I apologise etc.

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you promise to do something, you can say 'I promise ...'; when you suggest something, you can say 'I suggest ...':

☐ I promise I won't be late. (not I'm promising)
☐ 'What do you suggest I do?' 'I suggest that you ...'

In the same way we say: I apologise ... / I advise ... / I insist ... / I agree ... / I refuse ... etc.
Exercises

2.1 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cause(s)</th>
<th>connect(s)</th>
<th>drink(s)</th>
<th>live(s)</th>
<th>open(s)</th>
<th>speak(s)</th>
<th>take(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. Tanya _speaks_ German very well.
2. I don't often _drink_ coffee.
3. The swimming pool _opened_ at 7.30 every morning.
4. Bad driving _happened_ many accidents.
5. My parents _lived_ in a very small flat.
6. The Olympic Games _took place_ every four years.
7. The Panama Canal _opened_ the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

2.2 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Julie _doesn't drink_ (not / drink) tea very often.
2. What time _does_ (the banks / close) here?
3. I've got a car, but I _use_ (not / use) it much.
4. ‘Where _comes_ (Ricardo / come) from?’ ‘From Cuba.’
5. ‘What _do_ (you / do)?’ ‘I'm an electrician.’
6. It _takes_ (take) me an hour to get to work. How long _does_ (it / take) you?
7. Look at this sentence. What _does_ (this word / mean)?
8. David isn't very fit. He _do_ (not / do) any sport.

2.3 Use the following verbs to complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the negative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>believe</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>flow</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>grow</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>rise</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>translate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. The earth _goes_ round the sun.
2. Rice _doesn't grow_ in Britain.
3. The sun _flows_ in the east.
4. Bees _don't make_ honey.
5. Vegetarians _eat_ meat.
6. An atheist _believe_ in God.
7. An interpreter _translate_ from one language into another.
8. Liars are people who _tell_ the truth.
9. The River Amazon _flows_ into the Atlantic Ocean.

2.4 You ask Lisa questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.

1. You know that Lisa plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
   How often _do you play_ tennis _?_
   _Your sister_ _?_
3. You know that Lisa reads a newspaper every day. You want to know which one. Ask her.
   _?_
   _?_
5. You know that Lisa goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
   _?_
   _?_

2.5 Complete using the following:

I _apologise_ I _insist_ I _promise_ I _recommend_ I _suggest_

1. Mr Evans is not in the office today. _I suggest_ you try calling him tomorrow.
2. I _won't_ tell anybody what you said. _I promise_.
3. _in a restaurant_ You must let me pay for the meal. _I insist_.
4. _for what I did. It won't happen again._
5. The new restaurant in Hill Street is very good. _I recommend_.

5
**Present continuous and present simple 1**
(I am doing and I do)

**Compare:**

**Present continuous (I am doing)**

We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking. The action is not complete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am doing</th>
<th>I do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ The water is boiling. Can you turn it off?</td>
<td>☐ Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Listen to those people. What language are they speaking?</td>
<td>☐ Excuse me, do you speak English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Let's go out. It isn't raining now.</td>
<td>☐ It doesn't rain very much in summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ 'I'm busy. 'What are you doing?''</td>
<td>☐ What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.</td>
<td>☐ I always get hungry in the afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian.</td>
<td>☐ Most people learn to swim when they are children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ The population of the world is increasing very fast.</td>
<td>☐ Every day the population of the world increases by about 200,000 people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the continuous for temporary situations:

- ☐ I'm living with some friends until I find a place of my own.
- ☐ A: You're working hard today.
  B: Yes, I have a lot to do.

See Unit 1 for more information.

**Present simple (I do)**

We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☐ Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</td>
<td>☐ Excuse me, do you speak English?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ It doesn't rain very much in summer.</td>
<td>☐ What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ I always get hungry in the afternoon.</td>
<td>☐ Most people learn to swim when they are children.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Every day the population of the world increases by about 200,000 people.</td>
<td>☐ My parents live in London. They have lived there all their lives.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Joe isn't lazy. He works hard most of the time.</td>
<td>☐ I'm always doing something’ has a different meaning. For example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> I've lost my phone again. *I'm always losing things.*

> I'm always losing things = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.

More examples:

- ☐ You're always playing computer games. You should do something more active.
  (= You play computer games too often)
- ☐ Tim is never satisfied. He's always complaining. (= He complains too much)
Exercises

3.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1. Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius. **OK**
2. The water boils. Can you turn it off? **is boiling**
3. Look! That man tries to open the door of your car. **try**
4. Can you hear those people? What do they talk about? **talking**
5. The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days. **goes**
6. I must go now. It gets late. **getting**
7. I usually go to work by car. **go**
8. ‘Hurry up! It’s time to leave.’ ‘OK, I come.’ **comes**
9. I hear you’ve got a new job. How do you get on? **get**
10. Paul is never late. He’s always getting to work on time. **getting**
11. They don’t get on well. They’re always arguing. **get on**

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.
1. Let’s go out. **It isn’t raining** (it / not / rain) now.
2. Julia is very good at languages. **She speaks** (she / speak) four languages very well.
3. Hurry up! **(everybody / wait) for you.**
4. ‘**(you / listen) to the radio?’ ‘No, you can turn it off.’**
5. ‘**(you / listen) to the radio every day?’ ‘No, just occasionally.’**
6. The River Nile **(flow) into the Mediterranean.**
7. The river **(flow) very fast today – much faster than usual.**
8. **(we / usually / grow) vegetables in our garden, but this year (we / not / grow) any.**
9. **A: How’s your English?**
**B: Not bad. I think (it / improve) slowly.**
10. Rachel is in New York right now. **(she / stay) at the Park Hotel.**
**(she / always / stay) there when she’s in New York.**
11. Can we stop walking soon? **(I / start) to feel tired.**
12. **A: Can you drive?**
**B: **(I / learn). My father **(teach) me.**
13. Normally **(I / finish) work at five, but this week (I / work) until six to earn a little more money.**
14. **My parents **(live) in Manchester. They were born there and have never **(your parents / live)?** lived anywhere else. Where **(your parents / live)?**
15. Sonia **(look) for a place to live. **(she / stay) with her sister until she finds somewhere.
16. **A: What **(your brother / do)?**
**B: He’s an architect, but **(he / not / work) at the moment.**
17. **(at a party) **(I / usually enjoy) parties, but **(I / not / enjoy) this one very much.**

3.3 Finish B’s sentences. Use always -ing.
1. **A: I’ve lost my phone again.**
**B: Not again! **You’re always losing your phone **.**
2. **A: The car has broken down again.**
**B: That car is useless. **It **.**
3. **A: Look! You’ve made the same mistake again.**
**B: Oh no, not again! **I **.**
4. **A: Oh, I’ve forgotten my glasses again.**
**B: Typical! **.**
We use continuous forms for actions and happenings that have started but not finished (they are eating / it is raining etc.). Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in this way. We don’t say ‘I am knowing’ or ‘they are liking’; we say ‘I know’, ‘they like’.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>realise</td>
<td>suppose</td>
<td>mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>contain</td>
<td>consist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m hungry. I want something to eat. (not I’m wanting)
- Do you understand what I mean?
- Anna doesn’t seem very happy at the moment.

Think

When think means ‘believe’ or ‘have an opinion’, we do not use the continuous:
- I think Mary is Canadian, but I’m not sure. (not I’m thinking)
- What do you think of my plan? (= What is your opinion?)

When think means ‘consider’, the continuous is possible:
- I’m thinking about what happened. I often think about it.
- Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

See hear smell taste

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with these verbs:
- Do you see that man over there? (not Are you seeing)
- This room smells. Let’s open a window.

We often use can + see/hear/smell/taste:
- I can hear a strange noise. Can you hear it?

Look feel

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody looks or feels now:
- You look well today. or You’re looking well today.
- How do you feel now? or How are you feeling now?
- but
- I usually feel tired in the morning. (not I’m usually feeling)

He is selfish and He is being selfish

He’s being = He’s behaving / He’s acting. Compare:
- I can’t understand why he’s being so selfish. He isn’t usually like that.
  (being selfish = behaving selfishly at the moment)
- He never thinks about other people. He is very selfish. (not He is being)
  (= He is selfish generally, not only at the moment)

We use am/is/are being to say how somebody is behaving. It is not usually possible in other sentences:
- It’s hot today. (not It is being hot)
- Sarah is very tired. (not is being tired)
Exercises

4.1 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1. Are you hungry? _____ do you want _____ (you / want) something to eat?
2. Don’t put the dictionary away. ___________________________ (I / use) it.
3. Don’t put the dictionary away. ___________________________ (I / need) it.
4. Who is that man? What ___________________________ (he / want)?
5. Who is that man? Why ___________________________ (he / look) at us?
6. Alan says he’s 80 years old, but nobody ___________________________ (believe) him.
7. She told me her name, but ___________________________ (I / not / remember) it now.
8. ___________________________ (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
9. ___________________________ (I / think) you should sell your car.
10. Air ___________________________ (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.

4.2 Use the words in brackets to make sentences. (You should also study Unit 3 before you do this exercise.)

1. (you / not / seem / very happy today)
   You don’t seem ___________________________ very happy today.

2. (what / you / do?)
   ___________________________

3. (who / this umbrella / belong to?)
   I have no idea.

4. (the dinner / smell / good)
   ___________________________

5. Excuse me. (anybody / sit / there?)
   No, it’s free.

6. (these gloves / not / fit / me)
   They’re too small.

4.3 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. OK ___________________________
2. Are you believing in God? ___________________________
3. I’m feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat? ___________________________
4. This sauce is great. It’s tasting really good. ___________________________
5. I’m thinking this is your key. Am I right? ___________________________

4.4 Complete the sentences using the most suitable form of be. Use am/is/are being (continuous) where possible; otherwise use am/is/are (simple).

1. I can’t understand why he’s being so selfish. He isn’t usually like that.
2. Sarah ___________________________ very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.
3. You’ll like Sophie when you meet her. She ___________________________ very nice.
4. You’re usually very patient, so why ___________________________ so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?
5. Why isn’t Steve at work today? ___________________________ ill?
Past simple (I did)

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was an Austrian musician and composer. He lived from 1756 to 1791. He started composing at the age of five and wrote more than 600 pieces of music. He was only 35 years old when he died.

Lived/started/wrote/was/died are all past simple.

Very often the past simple ends in -ed (regular verbs):
- I work in a travel agency now. Before that I worked in a department store.
- We invited them to our party, but they decided not to come.
- The police stopped me on my way home last night.
- Laura passed her exam because she studied very hard.

For spelling (stopped, studied etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are irregular. The past simple does not end in -ed. For example:
- write → wrote
- see → saw
- go → went
- shut → shut

Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
We saw Tanya in town a few days ago.
I went to the cinema three times last week.
It was cold, so I shut the window.

In questions and negatives we use did/didn’t + infinitive (enjoy/see/go etc.):

A: Did you go out last night?
B: Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn’t enjoy the film much.

‘When did Mr Thomas die?’ ‘About ten years ago.’
They didn’t invite us to the party, so we didn’t go.
‘Did you have time to do the shopping?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’

In the following examples, do is the main verb in the sentence (did ... do / didn’t do):
- What did you do at the weekend? (not What did you at the weekend?)
- I didn’t do anything. (not I didn’t anything)

The past of be (am/is/are) is was/were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was/wasn’t</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>I/he/she/it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>were/weren’t</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>we/you/they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that we do not use did in negatives and questions with was/were:
- I was angry because they were late.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- They weren’t able to come because they were so busy.
- Did you go out last night or were you too tired?
Exercises

5.1 Read what Laura says about a typical working day:

Laura

I usually get up at 7 o’clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o’clock. I’m always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don’t usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o’clock, and I always sleep well.

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn’t do yesterday.

Exercises

5.1 Read what Laura says about a typical working day:

Laura

I usually get up at 7 o’clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o’clock. I’m always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don’t usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o’clock, and I always sleep well.

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn’t do yesterday.

1 She got up at 7 o’clock. 7 She got up at 5 o’clock.
2 She had a big breakfast. 8 She was tired when she got home.
3 She walked to work. 9 She had a meal yesterday evening.
4 It took her 30 minutes to get to work. 10 She went out yesterday evening.
5 She arrived at work at 8.45. 11 She arrived at home at 11 o’clock.
6 She had lunch. 12 She felt well last night.

5.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

- buy
- catch
- cost
- fall
- hurt
- sell
- spend
- teach
- throw
- write

1 Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
2 ‘How did you learn to drive?’ ‘My father taught me.’
3 We couldn’t afford to keep our car, so we sold it.
4 Dave fell down the stairs this morning and hurt his leg.
5 Joe gave the ball to Sue, who caught it.
6 Ann spent a lot of money yesterday. She spent a £100.

5.3 You ask James about his holiday. Write your questions.

Hi. How are things?

Fine, thanks. I’ve just had a great holiday.

1 Where did you go?
   To the U.S. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
2 How did you get there?
   By car?
   Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.
3 It’s a long way to drive. How long did it take to get to Denver?
   Two weeks.
4 Where did you stay?
   Yes, small hotels or motels.
5 Did you like the food?
   Yes, but it was very hot – sometimes too hot.
6 Did you visit the Grand Canyon?
   Of course. It was wonderful.

5.4 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 It was warm, so I took off my coat. (take)
2 The film wasn’t very good. I didn’t enjoy it much. (enjoy)
3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I disturbed her. (disturb)
4 We were very tired, so we left the party early. (leave)
5 The bed was very uncomfortable. I couldn’t sleep well. (sleep)
6 The window was open and a bird flew into the room. (fly)
7 The hotel wasn’t very expensive. It didn’t cost much to stay there. (cost)
8 I was in a hurry, so I had time to phone you. (have)
9 It was hard carrying the bags. They were very heavy. (be)
Study this example situation:

Yesterday Karen and Jim played tennis. They started at 10 o’clock and finished at 11.30. So, at 10.30 they were playing tennis. They were playing = they were in the middle of playing. They had not finished playing.

Was/were -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it was doing</th>
<th>playing</th>
<th>doing</th>
<th>working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they were doing</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was doing something = I was in the middle of doing something at a certain time. The action or situation had already started before this time, but had not finished:

- I started doing
- I was doing
- I finished doing

past

☐ This time last year I was living in Brazil.
☐ What were you doing at 10 o’clock last night?
☐ I waved to Helen, but she wasn’t looking.

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

**Past continuous** (in the middle of an action)

☐ I was walking home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
☐ Kate was watching TV when we arrived.

**Past simple** (complete action)

☐ I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
☐ Kate watched television a lot when she was ill last year.

We often use the past simple and the past continuous together to say that something happened in the middle of something else:

☐ Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
☐ It was raining when I got up.
☐ I saw you in the park yesterday. You were sitting on the grass and reading a book.
☐ I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened after another:

☐ I was walking along the road when I saw Dan. So I stopped, and we had a chat.

Compare:

☐ When Karen arrived, we were having dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)
☐ When Karen arrived, we had dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

Some verbs (for example, know and want) are not normally used in the continuous (see Unit 4A):

☐ We were good friends. We knew each other well. (not We were knowing)
☐ I was enjoying the party, but Chris wanted to go home. (not was wanting)
Exercises

6.1 What were you doing at these times? Write sentences as in the examples. The past continuous is not always necessary (see the second example).

1. (at 8 o’clock yesterday evening) I was having dinner.
2. (at 5 o’clock last Monday) I was on a bus on my way home.
3. (at 10.15 yesterday morning)
4. (at 4.30 this morning)
5. (at 7.45 yesterday evening)
6. (half an hour ago)

6.2 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use the past continuous.

1. Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
2. The doorbell rang while I
3. The car began to make a strange noise when we
4. Jessica fell asleep while she
5. The television was on, but nobody

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. I saw (see) Sue in town yesterday, but she (not / see) me. She (look) the other way.
2. I (meet) Tom and Jane at the airport a few weeks ago. They (go) to Paris and I (go) to Rome. We (have) a chat while we (wait) for our flights.
3. I (cycle) home yesterday when a man (step) out into the road in front of me. I (go) quite fast, but luckily I (manage) to stop in time and (not / hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Jenny was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).
2. ‘What (you / do) at this time yesterday?’ ‘I was asleep.’
3. ‘(you / go) out last night?’ ‘No, I was too tired.’
4. How fast (you / drive) when the accident (happen)?
5. Sam (take) a picture of me while I (not / look).
6. We were in a very difficult position. We (not / know) what to do.
7. I haven’t seen Alan for ages. When I last (see) him, he (try) to find a job.
8. I (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody (follow) me. I was scared and I (start) to run.
9. When I was young, I (want) to be a pilot.
10. Last night I (drop) a plate when I (do) the washing-up. Fortunately it (not / break).
Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it. He has lost his key. He has lost his key = He lost it recently, and he still doesn’t have it.

Have/has lost is the present perfect simple:

| I/we/they/you have (= I’ve etc.) | finished done
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has (= he’s etc.)</td>
<td>been etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The present perfect simple is have/has + past participle. The past participle often ends in -ed (finished/decided etc.), but many important verbs are irregular (lost/done/written etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

When we say that ‘something has happened’, this is usually new information:

- Ow! I’ve cut my finger.
- The road is closed. There’s been (there has been) an accident.
- (from the news) Police have arrested two men in connection with the robbery.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with now. The action in the past has a result now:

- ‘Where’s your key?’ ‘I don’t know. I’ve lost it.’ (= I don’t have it now)
- He told me his name, but I’ve forgotten it. (= I can’t remember it now)
- ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she’s gone out.’ (= she is out now)
- I can’t find my bag. Have you seen it? (= Do you know where it is now?)

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to):

- James is on holiday. He has gone to Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there)
- Jane is back home now. She has been to Italy. (= she has now come back)

You can use the present perfect with just, already and yet.

Just = a short time ago:

- ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I’ve just had lunch.’
- Hello. Have you just arrived?

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected:

- ‘Don’t forget to pay your electricity bill.’ I’ve already paid it.
- ‘What time is Mark leaving?’ He’s already left.

Yet = until now. Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen. Use yet only in questions and negative sentences:

- Has it stopped raining yet?
- I’ve written the email, but I haven’t sent it yet.

You can also use the past simple (did, went, had etc.) in the examples on this page. So you can say:

- ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she went out.’ or ‘No, she’s gone out.’
- ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I just had lunch.’ or ‘No, I’ve just had lunch.’
Exercises

7.1 Read the situations and write sentences. Use the following verbs in the present perfect:
Depending on student FIRST do a V3 test with these verbs:
arrive break fall go up grow improve lose

1 Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it.
   Tom has lost his key.
2 Lisa can’t walk and her leg is in plaster.
   Lisa is in plaster.
3 Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2.
   The bus fare has increased.
4 Maria’s English wasn’t very good. Now it is better.
   Her English has improved.
5 Dan didn’t have a beard before. Now he has a beard.
   Dan has a beard.
6 This morning I was expecting a letter. Now I have it.
   The letter arrived.
7 The temperature was 20 degrees. Now it is only 12.

7.2 Put in been or gone.
Go

1 James is on holiday. He’s gone to Italy.
2 Hello! I’ve just been to the shops. I’ve bought lots of things.
3 Alice isn’t here at the moment. She’s out to get a newspaper.
4 Tom has been out. He’ll be back in about an hour.
5 ‘Are you going to the bank?’ ‘No, I’ve already been to the bank.’

7.3 Complete B’s sentences. Make sentences from the words in brackets.

A
1 Would you like something to eat?
2 Do you know where Julia is?
3 What time is David leaving?
4 What’s in the newspaper today?
5 Is Sue coming to the cinema with us?
6 Are your friends here yet?
7 What does Tim think about your plan?

B

No, thanks. I’ve just had lunch.
(1 / just / have / lunch)
Yes, I’ve just seen her.
(1 / just / see / her)
I don’t know. I’ve already left.
(he / already / leave)
No, I’ve already seen the film.
(she / already / see / the film)
Yes, they’ve just arrived.
(they / just / arrive)

7.4 Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet. Give verb list and then read.

1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, ‘Would you like something to eat?’
   You say: No thank you. I’ve just had lunch. (have lunch)
2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, ‘Can I speak to Joe?’
   You say: I’m afraid he’s just gone out. (go out)
3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your
   plate away. You say: Wait a minute! I’ve not finished yet. (not / finish)
4 You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phoned to reserve a table. Later your friend says,
   ‘Shall I phone to reserve a table?’ You say: No, I’ve already done it. (do it)
5 You know that a friend of yours is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful.
   Ask her. You say: Have you found one yet? (find)
6 You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, ‘Where are you going
   for your holiday?’ You say: I’m not sure. (not / decide)
7 Linda went shopping, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, ‘Is Linda still out
   shopping?’ You say: No, she’s already come back. (come back)

Verb List: decide, do, find, finish, go, return:
Present perfect 2 (I have done)  Life experience

Study this example conversation:

DAVE: Have you travelled a lot, Jane?
JANE: Yes, I’ve been to lots of places.
DAVE: Really? Have you ever been to China?
JANE: Yes, I’ve been to China twice.
DAVE: What about India?
JANE: No, I haven’t been to India.

When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the present perfect (have been / have travelled etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane has visited in her life, which is a period that continues until now.

Some more examples:
- Have you ever eaten caviar?
- We've never had a car.
- 'Have you read Hamlet?' ‘No, I haven’t read any of Shakespeare’s plays.’
- Susan really loves that film. She’s seen it eight times!
- What a boring film! It’s the most boring film I’ve ever seen.

Been (to) = visited:
- I've never been to China. Have you been there?

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (recently / in the last few days / so far / since breakfast etc.):
- Have you heard anything from Brian recently?
- I’ve met a lot of people in the last few days.
- Everything is going well. We haven’t had any problems so far.
- I’m hungry. I haven’t eaten anything since breakfast. (= from breakfast until now)
- It’s good to see you again. We haven’t seen each other for a long time.

In the same way we use the present perfect with today / this evening / this year etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking (see also Unit 14B):
- I’ve drunk four cups of coffee today.
- Have you had a holiday this year?
- I haven’t seen Tom this morning. Have you?
- Rob hasn’t worked very hard this term.

We say: It’s the (first) time something has happened. For example:
- Don is having a driving lesson. It’s his first one.
  + It’s the first time he has driven a car. (not drives)
  - He has never driven a car before.
- Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this has happened. (not happens)
- Bill is phoning his girlfriend again. That’s the third time he’s phoned her this evening.
Exercises

8.1 You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with ever.
1 (ride / horse?) ___ Have you ever ridden a horse?
2 (be / California?) ___ Have
3 (run / marathon?) ___ Have
4 (speak / famous person?) ___ Have
5 (most beautiful place / visit?) ___ What’s

8.2 Complete B’s answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:

be  be  eat  happen  have  have  meet  play  read  see  try

A

1 What’s Mark’s sister like?
2 Is everything going well?
3 Are you hungry?
4 Can you play chess?
5 Are you enjoying your holiday?
6 What’s that book like?
7 Is Brussels an interesting place?
8 I hear your car broke down again yesterday.
9 Do you like caviar?
10 Mike was late for work again today.
11 Who’s that woman by the door?

B

I’ve no idea. I’ve never met her.
Yes, we haven’t had any problems so far.
Yes. I haven’t done much today.
Yes, but I’ve been enjoying it for ages.
Yes, it’s the best holiday I’ve ever had for a long time.
I don’t know. I’ve never been there.
Yes, it’s the second time I’ve heard about it.
Again? I haven’t seen him this month.
I don’t know. I haven’t met her before.

8.3 Write four sentences about yourself. Use I haven’t and choose from the boxes.

used a computer  travelled by bus  eaten any fruit
been to the cinema  read a book  lost anything
today  this week  recently for ages  since ...
this year

1 I haven’t used a computer today.
2 ___
3 ___
4 ___
5 ___

8.4 Read the situations and write sentences as shown in the example.

1 Jack is driving a car, but he’s very nervous and not sure what to do.
You ask: ___ Have you driven a car before?
He says: No, this is the first time I’ve driven a car.

2 Ben is playing tennis. He’s not good at it and he doesn’t know the rules.
You ask: Have
He says: No, this is the first

3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn’t look very confident or comfortable.
You ask:
She says:

4 Maria is in Japan. She has just arrived and it’s very new for her.
You ask:
She says:
Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)

It has been raining

Study this example situation:

Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.

It has been raining.

Have/has been -ing is the present perfect continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Perfect Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/they/you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>has been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. There is a connection with now:

- You’re out of breath. Have you been running? (= you’re out of breath now)
- Paul is very tired. He’s been working very hard. (= he’s tired now)
- Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?
- I’ve been talking to Amanda about the problem and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you everywhere.

It has been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it been raining?
It has been raining for two hours.

We use the present perfect continuous in this way especially with how long, for ... and since ... The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- How long have you been learning English? (= you’re still learning English)
- Tim is still watching TV. He’s been watching TV all day.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you for the last half hour.
- Chris hasn’t been feeling well recently.

You can use the present perfect continuous for actions repeated over a period of time:

- Silvia is a very good tennis player. She’s been playing since she was eight.
- Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They’ve been going there for years.

Compare I am doing (see Unit 1) and I have been doing:

I am doing
present continuous
now

- Don’t disturb me now. I’m working.
- We need an umbrella. It’s raining.
- Hurry up! We’re waiting.

I have been doing
present perfect continuous
now

- I’ve been working hard. Now I’m going to have a break.
- The ground is wet. It’s been raining.
- We’ve been waiting for an hour.
9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

1. earlier now

They’ve been shopping.

2. earlier now

She

3. earlier now

They

4. earlier now

He

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

1. You meet Paul as he is leaving the swimming pool.
   You ask: (you / swim?) Have you been swimming?

2. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you.
   You ask: (you / wait / long?)

3. You meet a friend in the street. His face and hands are very dirty.
   You ask: (what / you / do?)

4. A friend of yours is now working in a shop. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / work / there?)

5. A friend tells you about his job – he sells mobile phones. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / sell / mobile phones?)

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. It’s raining. The rain started two hours ago.
   It’s been raining for two hours.

2. We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
   We ____________________________________________________________________ for 20 minutes.

3. I’m learning Spanish. I started classes in December.
   I ____________________________________________________________________ since December.

4. Jessica is working in a supermarket. She started working there on 18 January.
   She ____________________________________________________________________ since 18 January.

5. Our friends always spend their holidays in Italy. They started going there years ago.
   They ____________________________________________________________________ for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (I am -ing) or present perfect continuous (I have been -ing).

1. Maria ____________________________________________________________________ (Maria / learn) English for two years.

2. Hello, Tom. ____________________________________________________________________ (I / look) for you. Where have you been?

3. Why ____________________________________________________________________ (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!

4. Linda is a teacher. ____________________________________________________________________ (she / teach) for ten years.

5. ____________________________________________________________________ (I / think) about what you said and I’ve decided to take your advice.

6. ‘Is Paul on holiday this week?’ ‘No, ____________________________________________________________________ (he / work).’

7. Sarah is very tired. ____________________________________________________________________ (she / work) very hard recently.
Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)

Study this example situation:

There is paint on Kate’s clothes. She has been painting her bedroom. Has been painting is the present perfect continuous. We are thinking of the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.

Her bedroom was green. Now it is yellow. She has painted her bedroom. Has painted is the present perfect simple. Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. Has painted is a completed action. We are interested in the result of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

Compare these examples:

☐ My hands are very dirty. I’ve been repairing my bike.
☐ Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.
☐ It’s nice to see you again. What have you been doing since we last met?
☐ Where have you been? Have you been playing tennis?

☐ My bike is OK again now. I’ve repaired it.
☐ Somebody has eaten all the chocolates. The box is empty.
☐ Where’s the book I gave you? What have you done with it?
☐ Have you ever played tennis?

We use the continuous to say how long (for something that is still happening):

☐ How long have you been reading that book?
☐ Lisa is writing emails. She’s been writing emails all morning.
☐ They’ve been playing tennis since 2 o’clock.
☐ I’m learning Arabic, but I haven’t been learning it very long.

We use the simple to say how much, how many or how many times:

☐ How much of that book have you read?
☐ Lisa is writing emails. She’s sent lots of emails this morning.
☐ They’ve played tennis three times this week.
☐ I’m learning Arabic, but I haven’t learnt very much yet.

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:

☐ I’ve known about the problem for a long time. (not I’ve been knowing)
☐ How long have you had that camera? (not have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17. But note that you can use want and mean in the present perfect continuous:

☐ I’ve been meaning to phone Jane, but I keep forgetting.
Exercises

10.1 Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.
   He has been reading for two hours. (read)
   He has read 53 pages so far. (read)

2 Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe at the moment. She began her trip three months ago.
   She .................................................. for three months. (travel)
   She has visited six countries so far. (visit)

3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he won the national championship again – for the fourth time.
   He has won the national championship four times. (win)
   He has played tennis since he was ten. (play)

4 When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.
   They .................................................. films since they left college. (make)
   They have made five films since they left college. (make)

10.2 For each situation, ask a question using the words in brackets.

1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:
   (how long / learn / Arabic?) How long have you been learning Arabic?

2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:
   (wait / long?) Have you waited long?

3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:
   (catch / any fish?) Have you caught any fish?

4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask:
   (how many people / invite?) How many people are you inviting to your party?

5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask:
   (how long / teach?) How long have you been teaching?

6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:
   (how many books / write?) How many books have you written?
   (how long / write / books?) How long have you been writing?

7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:
   (how long / save?) How long have you been saving money?
   (how much money / save?) How much money have you saved?

10.3 Put the verb into the more suitable form, present perfect simple (I have done) or continuous (I have been doing).

1 Where have you been? Have you been playing (you / play) tennis?

2 Look! Somebody is breaking (somebody / break) that window.

3 You look tired. You have been working (you / work) hard?

4 ‘Liz is away on holiday.’ ‘Is she? Where is she going?’ (she / go)

5 My brother is an actor. He has appeared (he / appear) in several films.

6 ‘Sorry I’m late.’ ‘That’s all right. If you don’t wait (I / not / wait) long.’

7 ‘Is it still raining?’ ‘No, it has stopped (it / stop).’

8 ‘Liz has lost her phone.’ ‘Oh, have you seen (you / see) it anywhere?’

9 I have read the book you lent me, but I have not finished (I / not / finish) it yet. It’s very interesting.

10 I have read the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

11 This is a very old book. I have had (I / have) it since I was a child.
Study this example situation:

Dan and Jenny are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.

We say: They **are** married. (**present**)

**but** How long have they **been** married? (**present perfect**)  
(not How long are they married?)

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.  
(not They are married for 20 years)

We use the **present perfect** to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now.

Compare the **present** and the **present perfect**:

- **Present**  
  - Paul is in hospital.
  - Do you know each other well?
  - She’s waiting for somebody.
  - Do they have a car?
  - How long have they **had** their car?

- **Present perfect**  
  - He’s **been** in hospital since Monday. (= He has been ... )  
    (not Paul is in hospital since Monday)
  - Have you known each other **for a long time**?  
    (not Do you know)
  - She’s **been** waiting all morning.
  - How long have they **been** married?

I have known/had/lived etc. is the **present perfect simple**.

I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc. is the **present perfect continuous**.

When we ask or say ‘how long’, the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):

- I’ve been learning English for six months.
- It’s been raining since lunchtime.
- Richard has been doing the same job for 20 years.
- ‘How long have you been driving?’ ‘Since I was 17.’

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long have you known Jane? (not have you been knowing)
- I’ve had a pain in my stomach all day. (not I’ve been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For have, see Unit 17.

You can use either the present perfect continuous or simple with **live** and **work**:

- Julia has been living / has lived here for a long time.
- How long have you been working / have you worked here?

But use the simple (I’ve lived / I’ve done etc.) with **always**:

- I’ve always lived in the country. (not always been living)

We say ‘I haven’t done something since/for …’ (**present perfect simple**):

- I haven’t seen Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)
- Sarah hasn’t phoned for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)
### Exercises

#### 11.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Ben is a friend of mine. I know him very well.  
   **OK**  
2. Ben is a friend of mine. **know** him for a long time.  
3. Sarah and Adam **are married** since July.  
4. The weather is awful. It's raining again.  
5. The weather is awful. It's **raining** all day.  
6. I like your house. How long **are you living** there?  
7. Gary **is working** in a shop for the last few months.  
8. I **don't know** Tom well. We've only met a few times.  
9. I gave up drinking coffee. I **don't drink** it for a year.  
10. That's a very old bike. How long **do you have** it?  

#### 11.2 Read the situations and write questions from the words in brackets.

1. A friend tells you that Paul is in hospital. You ask him:
   (how long / be / in hospital?) **How long has Paul been in hospital?**
2. You meet a woman who tells you she teaches English. You ask her:
   (how long / teach / English?)
3. You know that Jane is a good friend of Katherine's. You ask Jane:
   (how long / know / Katherine?)
4. Your friend's brother went to Australia some time ago and he's still there. You ask your friend:
   (how long / be / in Australia?)
5. Tom always wears the same jacket. It's a very old jacket. You ask him:
   (how long / have / that jacket?)
6. You are talking to a friend about Joe. Joe now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
   (how long / work / at the airport?)
7. A friend of yours is having guitar lessons. You ask him:
   (how long / have / guitar lessons?)
8. You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
   (always / live / in Chicago?)

#### 11.3 Complete B's answers to A's questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Paul is in hospital, isn't he? Yes, he <strong>has been</strong> in hospital since Monday. No, I <strong>haven't seen</strong> her for three months.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you see Ann very often? Yes, she <strong>has been married</strong> for ten years. Yes, I <strong>have been</strong> for the last half hour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Amy married? Yes, she <strong>was married</strong> to her for ten years.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you waiting for me? Yes, we <strong>have been</strong> each other a long time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Mel, don’t you? No, I <strong>have never</strong> tennis for years.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you still play tennis? Yes, he <strong>has been</strong> watching TV all evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Joe watching TV? No, I <strong>haven't</strong> watching TV for ages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you watch TV a lot? Yes, I <strong>was watching</strong> a headache all morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have a headache? No, he <strong>has never</strong> been ill since I've known him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian is never ill, is he? Yes, I <strong>have been</strong> ill all day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you feeling ill? Yes, she <strong>has been</strong> in Berlin for the last few years.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sue lives in Berlin, doesn't she? No, I <strong>haven't gone</strong> to the cinema for ages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you go to the cinema a lot? Yes, I <strong>have always</strong> to go to New York. (use always / want)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to go to New York one day?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We use **for** and **since** to say how long something has been happening.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For</th>
<th>Since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>two hours</td>
<td>8 o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a long time</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a week</td>
<td>12 May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six months</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five days</td>
<td>2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 years</td>
<td>lunchtime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Sally has been working here **for six months.** *(not since six months)*
- I haven't seen Tom **for three days.**

It is possible to leave out **for** (but not usually in negative sentences):
- They've been married **for ten years.** *(with or without for)*
- They **haven't had** a holiday **for ten years.** *(you must use for)*

We do **not** use **for + all ...** *(all day / all my life etc.):*
- I've lived here **all my life.** *(not for all my life)*

You can use **in** instead of **for** in negative sentences *(I haven't ... etc.)*:
- They **haven't had** a holiday **in ten years.** *(= for ten years)*

**Compare when ... ? (+ past simple) and how long ... ? (+ present perfect):**

**A:** When did it start raining?
**B:** It started raining **an hour ago / at 1 o'clock.**

**A:** How long has it been raining?
**B:** It's been raining **for an hour / since 1 o'clock.**

**A:** When did Joe and Carol first meet?
**B:** They first met **a long time ago.**
---
**A:** How long have they known each other?
**B:** They've known each other **for a long time.**
---
**A:** How long is it since Mrs Hill died?
**B:** How long has it been since Mrs Hill died?

---

**We say:**
- **It's** *(= It is)*
- **It's been** *(= It has been)*
- **a long time** *(etc.)*
- **six months** *(etc.)*
- **since something happened**

- It's **two years since** I last saw Joe. or **It's been two years since** ...
  *(= I haven't seen Joe for two years)*
- It's **ages since** we went to the cinema. or **It's been ages since** ...
  *(= We haven't been to the cinema for ages)*
- **How long is it** since Mrs Hill died? or **How long has it been since** ... ?
  *(= When did Mrs Hill die?)*

**How long have you (been) ... ? → Unit 11**
Exercises

12.1 Write for or since.
1. It’s been raining since lunchtime.
2. Sarah has lived in Paris since 1995.
3. Paul has lived in Brazil ten years.
4. I’m tired of waiting. We’ve been sitting here an hour.
5. Kevin has been looking for a job he left school.
6. I haven’t been to a party ages.
7. I wonder where Joe is. I haven’t seen him last week.
8. Jane is away. She’s been away Friday.
9. The weather is dry. It hasn’t rained a few weeks.

12.2 Write questions with how long and when.
1. It’s raining.
   (how long?) How long has it been raining?
   (when?) When did it start raining?
2. Kate is learning Japanese.
   (how long / learn?)
   (when / start?)
3. I know Simon.
   (how long / you / know?)
   (when / you / first / meet?)
4. Rebecca and David are married.
   (how long?)
   (when?)

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.
1. It’s raining. It’s been raining since lunchtime. It started raining at lunchtime.
2. Ann and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They’ve known each other for years.
3. Mark is ill. He became ill on Sunday. He has Sunday.
4. Mark is ill. He became ill a few days ago. He has a few days.
5. Sarah is married. She’s been married for a year. She got .
6. You have a headache. It started when you woke up.
   I’ve I woke up.
7. Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks.
   She went .
8. You’re working in a hotel. You started six months ago.
   I’ve .

12.4 Write B’s sentences using the words in brackets.
1. A: Do you often go on holiday?
   B: No, I haven’t had a holiday for five years.
2. A: Do you often see Laura?
   B: No, about a month.
3. A: Do you often go to the cinema?
   B: No, a long time.
4. A: Do you often eat in restaurants?
   B: No, ages.

Now write B’s answers again. This time use It’s … since ….
5. (1) No, it’s five years since I had a holiday.
6. (2) No, its
7. (3) No,
8. (4)
Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it.
He **has lost** his key. **(present perfect)**
This means that he doesn’t have his key **now**.

Ten minutes later:

Now Tom **has found** his key. He has it now.
**Has he lost** his key? No, he **has found** it.
**Did he lose** his key? Yes, he **did**.
He **lost** his key **(past simple)** but now he **has found** it. **(present perfect)**

The present perfect (something **has happened**) is a **present** tense. It always tells us about the situation **now**. ‘Tom **has lost** his key’ = he doesn’t have his key **now** (see Unit 7).

The past simple (something **happened**) tells us only about the **past**. If somebody says ‘Tom **lost** his key’, this doesn’t tell us whether he has the key **now** or not. It tells us only that he lost his key at some time in the past.

Do **not** use the present perfect if the situation **now** is different. Compare:

- They’ve **gone** away. They’ll be back on Friday. (they are away **now**)
  They **went** away, but I think they’re back at home now. (**not** They’ve gone)
- It **has stopped** raining now, so we don’t need the umbrella. (it isn’t raining **now**)
  It **stopped** raining for a while, but now it’s raining again. (**not** It has stopped)

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

- I’ve **repaired** the washing machine. It’s working **OK** now. ‘Oh, that’s good.’
- Sally **has had** a baby! It’s a boy. ‘That’s great news.’

Usually, you can also use the past simple:

- I repaired the washing machine. It’s working **OK** now.

Use the past simple (**not** the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart **was** a composer. He **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
  (**not** has been ... has written)
- My mother **grew** up in Italy. (**not** has grown)

Compare:

- Did you know that somebody **has invented** a new type of washing machine?
- Who **invented** the telephone? (**not** has invented)

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple:

- A: Ow! I’ve **burnt** myself.
  B: How **did** you **do** that? (**not** have you done)
- A: I **picked** up a hot dish. (**not** have picked)
- A: Look! Somebody **has spilt** something on the sofa.
  B: Well, it **wasn’t** me. I **didn’t** do it. (**not** hasn’t been ... haven’t done)
Exercises

13.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

1. I can't get in. I've lost my key. (lose)

2. The office is empty now. Everybody (go) home.

3. I meant to call you last night, but I forgot. (forget)

4. Helen (go) to Egypt for a holiday, but she's back home in England now.

5. Are you OK? Yes, I have a headache, but I'm fine now. (have)


13.2 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Did you hear about Sue? She's given up her job. OK

2. My mother has grown up in Italy. grew

3. How many poems has William Shakespeare written? has

4. Ow! I've cut my finger. It's bleeding. have

5. Drugs have become a big problem everywhere. has

6. Who has invented paper? invented

7. Where have you been born? have

8. Ellie isn't at home. She's gone shopping. has

9. Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity. been

13.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1. It stopped raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (it / stop)

2. The town where I live is very different now. It has changed a lot. (it / change)

3. I studied German at school, but I've forgotten most of it now. (I / forget)

4. The police arrested three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)

5. What do you think of my English? Do you think it has improved? (it / improve)

6. A: Are you still reading the paper?
   B: No, I've finished with it. You can have it. (I / finish)

7. I applied for a job as a tourist guide, but I wasn't successful. (I / apply)

8. Where's my bike? It's outside the house, but it's not there now. (it / be)

9. Quick! We need to call an ambulance. There's been an accident. (there / be)

10. A: Have you heard about Ben? He broke his arm. (he / break)
    B: Really? How did that happen?
    A: He fell off a ladder. (he / fall)
### Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)

Do not use the present perfect (I have done) when you talk about a finished time (for example, yesterday / ten minutes ago / in 2005 / when I was a child). Use a past tense:

- It was very cold yesterday. *(not has been)*
- Paul and Lucy arrived ten minutes ago. *(not have arrived)*
- Did you eat a lot of sweets when you were a child? *(not have you eaten)*
- I got home late last night. I was very tired and went straight to bed.

Use the past to ask When ...? or What time ...?:

- When did your friends arrive? *(not have ... arrived)*
- What time did you finish work?

**Compare:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom has lost his key. He can’t get into the house.</td>
<td>Tom lost his key yesterday. He couldn’t get into the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Carla here or has she left?</td>
<td>When did Carla leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compare:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect (have done)</th>
<th>Past simple (did)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ve done a lot of work today.</td>
<td>I did a lot of work yesterday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues until now. For example: today / this week / since 2007.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unfinished</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It hasn’t rained this week.
- Have you seen Anna this morning? *(it is still morning)*
- Have you seen Tim recently?
- I don’t know where Lisa is. I haven’t seen her. *(= I haven’t seen her recently)*
- We’ve been waiting for an hour. *(we are still waiting now)*
- Jack lives in Los Angeles. He has lived there for seven years.
- I have never played golf. *(in my life)*
- It’s the last day of your holiday. You say: It’s been a really good holiday. I’ve really enjoyed it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unfinished</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It didn’t rain last week.
- Did you see Anna this morning? *(it is now afternoon or evening)*
- Did you see Tim on Sunday?
- A: Was Lisa at the party on Sunday? B: I don’t think so. I didn’t see her.
- We waited *(or were waiting)* for an hour. *(we are no longer waiting)*
- Jack lived in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.
- I didn’t play golf last summer.
- After you come back from holiday you say: It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed it.
Exercises

14.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. I’ve lost my key. I can’t find it anywhere. OK
2. Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child? Did you eat
3. I’ve bought a new car. You must come and see it.
4. I’ve bought a new car last week.
5. Where have you been yesterday evening?
6. Lucy has left school in 1999.
7. I’m looking for Mike. Have you seen him?
8. ‘Have you been to Paris?’ ‘Yes, many times.’
9. I’m very hungry. I haven’t eaten much today.
10. When has this book been published?

14.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

1. (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn’t rained this week.
2. (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather...
3. (it / cold / last week) It...
4. (I / not / read / a newspaper yesterday) I...
5. (I / not / read / a newspaper today)
6. (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year)
7. (she / not / earn / so much / last year)
8. (you / have / a holiday recently?)

14.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1. ‘What’s Madrid like?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t been (I / not / be) there.’
2. When (I / get) home last night, very tired and (I / go) straight to bed.
3. a: (you / see) Lisa recently?
   b: Yes, (I / saw) her a few days ago.
4. I’m tired. (I / not / sleep) well last night.
5. The bus drivers were on strike last week. (there / be) no buses.
6. Mr Lee (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then (he / give) it up. Now he works as a gardener.
7. Mary lives in Dublin. (she / live) there all her life.
8. a: (you / go) to the cinema last night?
   b: Yes, but (it / be) a mistake. The film (be) awful.
9. My grandfather (die) before I was born. (I / never / meet) him.
10. I don’t know Karen’s husband. (I / never / meet) him.
11. It’s nearly lunchtime, and (I / not / see) Martin all morning. I wonder where he is.
12. ‘Where do you live?’ ‘In Boston.’
   ‘How long (you / live) there?’ ‘Five years.’
   ‘Where (you / live) before that?’ ‘In Chicago.’
   ‘And how long (you / live) in Chicago?’ ‘Two years.’

14.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1. (something you haven’t done today) I haven’t eaten any fruit today
2. (something you haven’t done today)
3. (something you didn’t do yesterday)
4. (something you did yesterday evening)
5. (something you haven’t done recently)
6. (something you’ve done a lot recently)
Past perfect (I had done)

Study this example situation:

Sarah went to a party last week. Paul went to the party too, but they didn’t see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o’clock. So: When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn’t there.

He had gone home.

**Had gone** is the past perfect (simple):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Perfect Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/they</td>
<td>had (= I’d etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had (= he’d etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gone</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past perfect simple is **had + past participle** (gone/seen/finished etc).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

- Sarah arrived at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened before this time, we use the past perfect (**had** ...):

- When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

Some more examples:

- When we got home last night, we found that somebody had broken into the flat.
- Karen didn’t want to go to the cinema with us because she’d already seen the movie.
- At first I thought I’d done the right thing, but I soon realised that I’d made a big mistake.
- The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He hadn’t flown before. 
or ... He had never flown before.

---

**Compare the present perfect (have seen etc.) and the past perfect (had seen etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have seen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who is that woman? I’ve seen her before, but I can’t remember where.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We aren’t hungry. We’ve just had lunch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The house is dirty. They haven’t cleaned it for weeks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Compare the past simple (left, was etc.) and the past perfect (had left, had been etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Past Perfect Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: Yes, but he left soon afterwards.</td>
<td>A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: No, he had already left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate wasn’t at home when I phoned. She was at her mother’s house.</td>
<td>Kate had just got home when I phoned. She had been at her mother’s house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

15.1 Read the situations and write sentences from the words in brackets.

1. You went to Sue’s house, but she wasn’t there.

   (she / go / out) She had gone out.

2. You went back to your home town after many years. It wasn’t the same as before.

   (it / change / a lot)

3. I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn’t come.

   (she / arrange / to do something else)

4. You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late.

   (the film / already / start)

5. It was nice to see Daniel again after such a long time.

   (I / not / see / him for five years)

6. I offered Sue something to eat, but she wasn’t hungry.

   (she / just / have / breakfast)

15.2 For each situation, write a sentence ending with never ... before. Use the verb in brackets.

1. The man sitting next to you on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight.

   (fly) He’d never flown before.

2. Somebody sang a song. I didn’t know it.

   (hear) I had never heard it before.

3. Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn’t very good at it because it was his first game.

   (play) He had never played before.

4. Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.

   (be there) We had never been there before.

15.3 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

1. (a) Somebody broke into the office during the night.

   We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken
   into the office during the night. So we called the police.

   (b) We arrived at work in the morning.

   (c) We called the police.

2. (a) Laura went out this morning.

   I went to Laura’s house this morning and rang her doorbell, but
   there was no answer. She had gone out.

   (b) I rang her doorbell.

   (c) There was no answer.

3. (a) Jim came back from holiday a few days ago.

   I met Jim a few days ago. I had just finished my holiday.

   (b) I met him the same day.

   (c) He looked very well.

4. (a) Kevin sent Sally lots of emails.

   Yesterday Kevin received lots of emails, but
   he had never replied to them.

   (b) She never replied to them.

   (c) Yesterday he got a phone call from her.

15.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).

1. ‘Was Paul at the party when you arrived?’ ‘No, he had gone (go) home.’

2. I felt very tired when I got home, so I went (go) straight to bed.

3. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody went (go) to bed.

4. Sorry I’m late. The car (break) down on my way here.

5. We were driving along the road when we (see) a car which (break) down, so we (stop) to help.
Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

Study this example situation:

yesterday morning

Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It had been raining.

It was not raining when I looked out of the window; the sun was shining. But it had been raining before.

Had been -ing is the past perfect continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>had</th>
<th>been</th>
<th>doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>(= I'd etc.)</td>
<td>(= he'd etc.)</td>
<td>working playing etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more examples:

- When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. They'd been fighting.
- I was very tired when I got home. I'd been working hard all day.
- When I went to Madrid a few years ago, I stayed with a friend of mine. She hadn't been living there very long, but she knew the city very well.

You can say that something had been happening for a period of time before something else happened:

- We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
- Paul went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

Compare have been -ing (present perfect continuous) and had been -ing (past perfect continuous):

Present perfect continuous

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have been -ing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (before now)
- James is out of breath. He has been running.

Past perfect continuous

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had been -ing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes. (before the bus came)
- James was out of breath. He had been running.

Compare was -ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

- It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
- Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working very hard.

Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in the continuous:

- We were good friends. We had known each other for years. (not had been knowing)
- I was surprised when Lisa cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her. (not she'd been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17.
### Exercises

**16.1 Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets.**

1. I was very tired when I arrived home.  
   \(\text{I/\ work/\ hard\ all\ day}\)  
   \(\text{I'd\ been\ working\ hard\ all\ day.}\)

2. The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.  
   \(\text{they/\ play/\ football}\)

3. I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.  
   \(\text{I/\ look/\ forward\ to\ it}\)

4. Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.  
   \(\text{she/\ dream}\)

5. When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.  
   \(\text{he/\ watch/\ a\ film}\)

**16.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.**

1. We played tennis yesterday. Half an hour after we began playing, it started to rain.  
   \(\text{We/\ had/\ been/\ playing/\ for/\ half/\ an/\ hour/\ when/\ it/\ started/\ to/\ rain.}\)

2. I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him. After 20 minutes I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant.  
   \(\text{I/\ arrived/\ and/\ waited/\ for/\ him/\ for/\ 20/\ minutes/\ when/\ I/\ arrived/\ at/\ the/\ wrong/\ restaurant.}\)

3. Sarah got a job in factory. Five years later the factory closed down.  
   \(\text{At/\ the/\ time/\ the/\ factory/\ closed/\ down/\ five/\ years/\ later/\ Sarah/\ was/\ there/\ for/\ five/\ years.}\)

4. I went to a concert last week. The orchestra began playing. After about ten minutes a man in the audience suddenly started shouting.  
   \(\text{The/\ orchestra/\ began/\ playing/\ when/\ a/\ man/\ in/\ the/\ audience/\ suddenly/\ started/\ shouting.}\)

This time make your own sentence:

5. I began walking along the road.  
   \(\text{When/\ I/\ arrived/\ home/\ I/\ began/\ walking/\ along/\ the/\ road.}\)

**16.3 Put the verb into the most suitable form, past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).**

1. It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours \text{were having} (have) a party.

2. We were good friends. \text{We'd known} (we / know) each other for years.

3. John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because \text{he / walk} so fast.

4. Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. \text{(she / run)}.

5. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full. \text{(they / eat)}.

6. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty, but their stomachs were full. \text{(they / eat)}.

7. James was on his hands and knees on the floor. \text{(he / look) for his} contact lens.

8. When I arrived, Kate \text{was waiting} (wait) for me. She was annoyed because I was late and \text{(she / wait)} for a long time.

9. I was sad when I sold my car. \text{(I / have) it} for a very long time.

10. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. \text{(we / travel) for} more than 24 hours.
Have and have got (= for possession, relationships, illnesses etc.)

You can use have or have got. There is no difference in meaning:

- They have a new car. or They've got a new car.
- Lisa has two brothers. or Lisa's got two brothers.
- I have a headache. or I've got a headache.
- Our house has a small garden. or Our house has got a small garden.
- He has a few problems. or He's got a few problems.

With these meanings (possession etc.), you cannot use continuous forms (am having etc.):

- We're enjoying our holiday. We have / We've got a nice room in the hotel. (not We're having a nice room)

For the past we use had (without got):

- Lisa had long hair when she was a child. (not Lisa had got)

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you have any questions?</th>
<th>I don't have any questions.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have you any questions? (less usual)</td>
<td>I haven't any questions. (less usual)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does she have a car?</td>
<td>She doesn't have a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has she got a car? (less usual)</td>
<td>She hasn't got a car. (less usual)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In past questions and negative sentences we use did/didn't:

- Did you have a car when you were living in Paris?
- I didn't have my phone, so I couldn't call you.
- Lisa had long hair, didn't she?

Have breakfast / have a shower / have a good time etc.

We also use have (but not have got) for many actions and experiences. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>breakfast / dinner / a cup of coffee / something to eat etc.</th>
<th>have a look (at something)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bath / a shower / a swim / a break / a rest / a party / a holiday</td>
<td>a chat / a conversation / a discussion (with somebody)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an accident / an experience / a dream</td>
<td>trouble / difficulty / fun / a good time etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a baby (= give birth to a baby)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Have got is not possible in the expressions in the box. Compare:

- Sometimes I have (= eat) a sandwich for my lunch. (not I've got) but I've got / I have some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (am having etc.) with the expressions in the box:

- We're enjoying our holiday. We're having a great time. (not We have)
- Mark is having a shower at the moment. He has a shower every day.

In questions and negative sentences we use do/does/did:

- I don't usually have a big breakfast. (not I usually haven't)
- What time does Chris have lunch? (not has Chris lunch)
- Did you have trouble finding a place to live?
Exercises

17.1 Write negative sentences with have. Some are present and some are past.

1. I can’t get into the house. (a key) I haven’t got a key.
2. I couldn’t read the letter. (my glasses) I didn’t have my glasses.
3. I can’t get onto the roof. (a ladder) I
4. We couldn’t visit the museum. (enough time) We
5. He couldn’t find his way to our house. (a map)
6. She can’t pay her bills. (any money)
7. I can’t go swimming today. (enough energy)
8. They couldn’t take any pictures. (a camera)

17.2 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes two alternatives are possible, sometimes only one.

1. Excuse me, ______________ a pen I could borrow?
   A have you got   B are you having   C do you have (both A and C are correct)
2. ______________ time to go to the bank yesterday?
   A Had you got   B Did you have   C Had you
3. I need a stamp for this letter. ______________ one?
   A Do you have   B Are you having   C Have you got
4. What does Jack do? ______________ a job?
   A Does he have   B Is he having   C Has he got
5. ______________ a lot of friends when you were a child?
   A Did you have   B Were you having   C Had you
6. When you worked in your last job, ______________ your own office?
   A had you   B have you got   C did you have

17.3 Are the underlined verbs OK? Change them where necessary.

1. Is there anything you want to ask? Do you have any questions?
   OK
   Lisa had long hair.
2. Lisa had got long hair when she was a child.
3. Tom couldn’t contact us because he hadn’t our number.
4. ‘Are you feeling OK?’ ‘No, I’m having a toothache.’
5. Are you enjoying yourself? Are you having a good time?
6. It started to rain. I got wet because I hadn’t an umbrella.
7. Will can’t drive. He doesn’t have a driving licence.
8. Did your trip go OK? Had you any problems?
9. My friend called me when I was having breakfast.

17.4 Complete the sentences. Use an expression from the list with have in the correct form.

have a baby  have a break  have a chat  have trouble  have a good flight
have a look  have lunch  have a party  have a nice time  have a shower

1. I don’t eat much during the day. I never have lunch.
2. David starts work at 8 o’clock and ______________ at 10.30.
3. We ______________ last week. It was great – we invited lots of people.
4. Excuse me, can I ______________ at your newspaper, please?
5. Jim is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he ______________
6. I met Ann in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and ______________
7. A: ______________ finding the book you wanted?
   B: No, I found it OK.
8. Suzanne ______________ a few weeks ago. It’s her second child.
9. A: Why didn’t you answer the phone?
   B: I ______________
10. You meet your friend Sally at the airport. She has just arrived. You say:
   Hi, Sally. How are you? ______________?
Used to (do)

Study this example situation:

A few years ago
Nicola doesn’t travel much these days. She prefers to stay at home.

But she used to travel a lot. She used to go away two or three times a year.

She used to travel a lot = she travelled a lot often in the past, but she doesn’t do this any more.

Something used to happen = it happened often in the past, but no longer happens:

- I used to play tennis a lot, but I don’t play very much now.
- David used to spend a lot of money on clothes. These days he can’t afford it.
- ‘Do you go to the cinema much?’ ‘Not now, but I used to.’ (= I used to go)

We also use used to … for things that were true, but are not true any more:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- I used to think Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he’s a very nice person.
- I’ve started drinking tea recently. I never used to like it before.
- Lisa used to have very long hair when she was a child.

‘I used to do something’ is past. There is no present. You cannot say ‘I use to do’.

To talk about the present, use the present simple (I do).

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>he used to play</th>
<th>we used to live</th>
<th>there used to be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>he plays</td>
<td>we live</td>
<td>there is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We used to live in a small village, but now we live in London.
- There used to be four cinemas in the town. Now there is only one.

The normal question form is did (you) use to … ?:  

- Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?

The negative form is didn’t use to … (used not to … is also possible):

- I didn’t use to like him. (or I used not to like him)

Compare I used to do and I was doing:

- I used to watch TV a lot. (= I watched TV often in the past, but I no longer do this)
- I was watching TV when Rob called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

Do not confuse I used to do and I am used to doing (see Unit 61). The structures and meanings are different:

- I used to live alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone)
- I am used to living alone. (= I live alone, and I don’t find it strange or difficult because I’ve been living alone for some time)
Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences with use(d) to + a suitable verb.
1 Nicola doesn’t travel much now. She ________ to travel a lot, but she prefers to stay at home these days.
2 Sophie ________ a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
3 We moved to Spain a few years ago. We ________ in Paris.
4 I rarely eat ice-cream now, but I ________ it when I was a child.
5 Jackie ________, my best friend, but we aren’t good friends any more.
6 It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open. It ________ more than an hour.
7 There ________ a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
8 When you lived in New York, ________ to the theatre very often?

18.2 Compare what Karen said five years ago and what she says today:

FIVE YEARS AGO
I travel a lot.
I’ve got lots of friends.
I’m very lazy.
I don’t like cheese.
I go to a lot of parties.

TODAY
I eat lots of cheese now.
I work very hard these days.
I don’t know many people these days.
I work in a bookshop now.

Now write sentences about how Karen has changed. Use used to / didn’t use to / never used to in the first part of your sentence.
1 ________ she doesn’t go away much these days.
2 ________
3 ________
4 ________
5 ________
6 ________
7 ________
8 ________
9 ________
10 ________

18.3 Write sentences about yourself like the examples. Begin I used to ... (I used to be/work/like/play/read etc).
1 I used to live in a small village, but now I live in London.
2 I used to play tennis a lot, but I don’t play any more.
3 I used ________, but
4 ________
5 ________

Now begin with I didn’t use to ... 
6 ________
7 ________
8 ________
Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future

A

Present continuous (I am doing) with a future meaning

This is Ben’s diary for next week.
He is playing tennis on Monday afternoon.
He is going to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He is having dinner with Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I’m doing something (tomorrow) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

A: What are you doing on Saturday evening? (not What do you do)
B: I’m going to the theatre. (not I go)

A: What time is Katherine arriving tomorrow?
B: Half past ten. I’m meeting her at the station.

I’m not working tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
Steve isn’t playing football next Saturday. He’s hurt his leg.

I’m going to (do)’ is also possible in these sentences:

What are you going to do on Saturday evening?

But the present continuous is more natural when we talk about arrangements. See Unit 20B.

Do not use will to talk about what you have arranged to do:

What are you doing this evening? (not What will you do)
Alex is getting married next month. (not will get)

You can also use the present continuous for an action just before you begin to do it. This happens especially with verbs of movement (go/come/leave etc.):

I’m tired. I’m going to bed now. Goodnight. (not I go to bed now)
Jess, are you ready yet? ‘Yes, I’m coming.’ (not I come)

B

Present simple (I do) with a future meaning

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables, programmes etc. (for public transport, cinemas etc.):

My train leaves at 11.30, so I need to be at the station by 11.15.
What time does the film start this evening?
It’s Wednesday tomorrow. / Tomorrow is Wednesday.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable:

I start my new job on Monday.
What time do you finish work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for personal arrangements:

What time are you meeting Ann tomorrow? (not do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous
What time are you arriving?
I’m going to the cinema this evening.

Present simple
What time does the train arrive?
The film starts at 8.15 (this evening).
Exercises

19.1  A friend of yours is planning to go on holiday soon. You ask her about her plans. Use the words in brackets to make your questions.

1. (where / go?) Where are you going?  
2. (how long / go for?)  
3. (when / leave?)  
4. (go / alone?)  
5. (travel / by car?)  
6. (where / stay?)  

10.14 12

19.2  Tom wants you to visit him, but you are very busy. Look at your diary for the next few days and explain to him why you can’t come.

Tom: Can you come on Monday evening?
You: Sorry, but I’m playing volleyball.  
Tom: What about Tuesday evening then?
You: No, not Tuesday.  
Tom: And Wednesday evening?
You:  
Tom: Well, are you free on Thursday?
You: I’m afraid not.  

19.3  Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1. (this evening) I’m going out this evening... or I’m not doing anything this evening.  
2. (tomorrow morning) I  
3. (tomorrow evening)  
4. (next Sunday)  
5. (choose another day or time)  

19.4  Put the verb into the more suitable form, present continuous or present simple.

1. I’m going (I / go) to the cinema this evening.  
2. Does the film start (the film / start) at 3.30 or 4.30?  
3. (we / have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?  
4. The art exhibition (finish) on 3 May.  
5. (I / not / go) out this evening.  
6. ‘(you / do) anything tomorrow morning? ‘No, I’m free. Why?’  
7. (we / go) to a concert tonight.  
8. (I / leave) now. I’ve come to say goodbye.  
9. A: Have you seen Liz recently?
   B: No, but (we / meet) for lunch next week.  
10. You are on the train to London and you ask another passenger:
    Excuse me. What time (this train / get) to London?  
11. You are talking to Helen:
    Helen, (I / go) to the supermarket. (you / come) with me?  
12. You and a friend are watching television. You say:
    I’m bored with this programme. What time (it / end)?  
13. (I / not / use) the car this evening, so you can have it.  
14. Sue (come) to see us tomorrow. (she / travel) by train and her train (arrive) at 10.15.
(I'm) going to (do)

I am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:

- 'Are you going to eat anything?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- A: I hear Sarah has won some money. What is she going to do with it?
  B: She's going to buy a new car.
- I'm just going to make a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?
- This cheese smells horrible. I'm not going to eat it.

I am doing and I am going to do

We use I am doing (present continuous) when we say what we have arranged to do – for example, arranged to meet somebody, arranged to go somewhere:

- What time are you meeting Ann this evening?
- I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it (but perhaps not arranged to do it):

- 'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.' (= I've decided to clean them, but I haven't arranged to clean them)
- I've decided not to stay here any longer. Tomorrow I'm going to look for somewhere else to stay.

Often the difference is very small and either form is possible.

You can also say that 'something is going to happen' in the future. For example:

The man isn't looking where he is going.
He is going to walk into the wall.

When we say that 'something is going to happen', the situation now makes this clear. The man is walking towards the wall now, so we can see that he is going to walk into it.

Some more examples:

- Look at those black clouds! It's going to rain. (the clouds are there now)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (I feel terrible now)
- The economic situation is bad now and things are going to get worse.

I was going to do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:

- We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
- Peter was going to do the exam, but he changed his mind.
- I was just going to cross the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something was going to happen' (but didn't happen):

- I thought it was going to rain, but it didn't.
Exercises

20.1 Write a question with going to for each situation.

1. Your friend has won some money. You ask:
   (what / do with it?) What are you going to do with it?
2. Your friend is going to a party tonight. You ask:
   (what / wear?)
3. Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
   (where / put it?)
4. Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
   (who / invite?)

20.2 Read the situations and complete the dialogues. Use going to.

1. You have decided to clean your room this morning.
   FRIEND: Are you going out this morning?
   YOU: No, I’m going to clean my room.
2. You bought a sweater, but it doesn’t fit you very well. You have decided to take it back to the shop.
   FRIEND: That sweater is too big for you.
   YOU: I know.
3. You have been offered a job, but you have decided not to accept it.
   FRIEND: I hear you’ve been offered a job.
   YOU: That’s right, but
4. You have to phone Sarah. It’s morning now, and you have decided to phone her tonight.
   FRIEND: Have you phoned Sarah yet?
   YOU: No,
5. You are in a restaurant. The food is awful and you’ve decided to complain.
   FRIEND: This food is awful, isn’t it?
   YOU: Yes, it’s disgusting.

20.3 What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

1. There are a lot of black clouds in the sky. (rain) It’s going to rain.
2. It is 8.30. Tom is leaving his house. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes 30 minutes. (late) He
3. There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole. (sink) The boat
4. Lucy and Chris are driving. There is very little petrol left in the tank. The nearest petrol station is a long way away. (run out) They

20.4 Complete the sentences with was/were going to + the following verbs:

buy give up phone play say travel

1. We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
2. I some new clothes yesterday, but I was very busy and didn’t have time to go to the shops.
3. Oliver and I tennis last week, but he had to cancel because he’d hurt his knee.
4. I Jane, but I decided to email her instead.
5. A: When I last saw Tim, he his job.
   B: That’s right, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.
6. I’m sorry I interrupted you. What you?
Will/shall 1

We use I’ll (= I will) when we’ve just decided to do something. When we say ‘I’ll do something’, we announce our decision:

☐ Oh, I’ve left the door open. I’ll go and shut it.
☐ ‘What would you like to drink?’ I’ll have an orange juice, please.’
☐ ‘Did you phone Lucy?’ ‘Oh no, I forgot. I’ll phone her now.’

You cannot use the present simple (I do / I go etc.) in these sentences:

☐ I’ll go and shut the door. (not I go and shut)

We often use I think I’ll ... and I don’t think I’ll ... :

☐ I feel a bit hungry. I think I’ll have something to eat.
☐ I don’t think I’ll go out tonight. I’m too tired.

In spoken English the negative of will is usually won’t (= will not):

☐ I can see you’re busy, so I won’t stay long.

Do not use will to talk about what you decided before (see Units 19–20):

☐ I’m going on holiday next Saturday. (not I’ll go)
☐ Are you working tomorrow? (not Will you work)

We often use will in these situations:

Offering to do something
☐ That bag looks heavy. I’ll help you with it. (not I help)

Agreeing to do something
☐ a: Can you give Tim this book?
☐ b: Sure, I’ll give it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something
☐ Thanks for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back on Friday.
☐ I won’t tell anyone what happened. I promise.

Asking somebody to do something (Will you ... ?)
☐ Will you please turn the music down? I’m trying to concentrate.

You can use won’t to say that somebody refuses to do something:

☐ I’ve tried to give her advice, but she won’t listen.
☐ The car won’t start. (= the car ‘refuses’ to start)

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?

Shall is used mostly in the questions shall I ... ? / shall we ... ?

We use shall I ... ? / shall we ... ? to ask somebody’s opinion (especially in offers or suggestions):

☐ Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)
☐ I’ve got no money. What shall I do? (= What do you suggest?)
☐ ‘Shall we go?’ ‘Just a minute. I’m not ready yet.’
☐ ‘Where shall we have lunch?’ ‘Let’s go to Marino’s.’

Compare shall I ... ? and will you ... ?:

☐ Shall I shut the door? (= Do you want me to shut it?)
☐ Will you shut the door? (= I want you to shut it)
Exercises

21.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.

1. I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll take a taxi.
2. 'It's cold in this room.' 'Is it ______________________ on the heating then.'
3. 'Bye! Have a nice holiday!' 'Thanks. ______________________ you a postcard.'
4. 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right. ______________________ it later.'
5. 'I don't know how to shut down this computer.' 'OK, ______________________ you.'
6. 'Would you like tea or coffee?' 'I'd like coffee, please.'
7. 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I think ______________________ here.'
8. Thanks for lending me the money. ______________________ it back as soon as possible, OK?
9. A: I know you're busy, but can you finish this report this afternoon?
   B: Well, ______________________ , but I can't promise.

21.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... .

1. It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say:
   I think I'll close the window.
2. You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
   I think I'll go to bed.
3. A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car, but you decide to walk. You say:
   Thank you, but I don't think I'll take the lift.
4. You were going to have lunch. Now you decide that you don't want to eat anything. You say:
   I don't think I'll have lunch.
5. You planned to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go. You say:
   I don't think I'll go swimming.

21.3 Which is correct? (If necessary, study Units 19–20 first.)

1. 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'No, I forgot. ______________________ her now.' (I'll phone is correct)
2. I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm playing / I'll play tennis. (I'm playing is correct)
3. 'I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
4. 'I need some money.' 'OK, I'm lending / I'll lend you some. How much do you need?'
5. I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6. 'Remember to get a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK, I don't forget / I won't forget.'
7. What time does your train leave / will your train leave tomorrow?
8. I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
9. 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
10. I don't want to go out alone. Do you come / Will you come with me?

21.4 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ... ? or shall we ... ?

1. You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what.
   You ask your friend: What shall we do this evening?
2. You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.
   You ask a friend for advice: ______________________ it?
3. It's Helen's birthday next week. You want to give her a present, but you don't know what.
   You ask a friend for advice:
   What ______________________
4. You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you have to decide where.
   You ask him/her: ______________________
5. You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to go by car or to walk.
   You ask him/her: ______________________ or ______________________
6. Your friend wants you to come and see her. You don't know what time to come.
   You ask her: ______________________
We do not use will to say what somebody has already arranged or decided to do:

- Diane is working next week. (not Diane will work)
- Are you going to watch anything on TV this evening? (not Will you watch)

For 'is working' and 'Are you going to ... ?', see Units 19–20.

But often, when we talk about the future, we are not talking about what somebody has decided to do. For example:

Kate is doing an exam next week. Chris and Joe are talking about it.

- Do you think Kate will pass the exam?
- Yes, she'll pass easily.

She'll pass does not mean 'she has decided to pass'. Joe is saying what he knows or believes will happen. He is predicting the future. When we predict a future happening or situation, we use will/won't.

Some more examples:

- They've been away a long time. When they return, they'll find a lot of changes here.
- 'Where will you be this time next year?' 'I'll be in Japan.'
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you'll burn yourself.
- Tom won't pass the exam. He hasn't studied hard enough.
- Anna looks completely different now. You won't recognise her.
- When will you get your exam results?

We often use will ('ll) with:

- probably
- (I'm) sure
- (I) think
- (I) don't think
- I wonder

I'll probably be home late tonight.
Don't worry about the exam. I'm sure you'll pass.
Do you think Sarah will like the present we bought her?
I don't think the exam will be very difficult.
I wonder what will happen.

After I hope, we generally use the present (will is also possible):

- I hope Kate passes the exam. (or I hope Kate will pass ...)
- I hope it doesn't rain tomorrow.

Generally we use will to talk about the future, but sometimes we use will to talk about now.

For example:

Don't phone Ann now. She'll be busy. (= she'll be busy now)

I shall ... / we shall ...

Normally we use shall only with I and we. You can say:

- I shall or I will (I'll) we shall or we will (we'll)
- I shall be late this evening. (or I will be)
- We shall probably go to France in June. (or We will probably go)

In spoken English we normally use I'll and we'll:

- We'll probably go to France.

The negative of shall is shall not or shan't:

- I shan't be here tomorrow. (or I won't be)

Do not use shall with he/she/it/you/they:

- She will be very angry. (not She shall be)
Exercises

22.1 Which form of the verb is better in these sentences? The verbs are underlined.

1. Diane isn’t free on Saturday. She’ll work / She’s working. (She’s working is correct)
2. I’ll go / I’m going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
3. I think Amy will get / is getting the job. She has a lot of experience.
4. I can’t meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
5. a: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
   b: Yes, we’ll go / we’re going to Italy.
6. Don’t be afraid of the dog. It won’t hurt / It isn’t hurting you.

22.2 Put in will (‘ll) or won’t.

1. Can you wait for me? I won’t be long.
2. Don’t ask Amanda for advice. She doesn’t know what to do.
3. I’m glad you’re coming to see us next week. It will be good to see you again.
4. I’m sorry about what happened yesterday. It shouldn’t happen again.
5. You don’t need to take an umbrella with you. I don’t think it will rain.
6. I’ve got some incredible news! You can’t believe it.

22.3 Complete the sentences using will (‘ll). Choose from the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>it / be</th>
<th>she / come</th>
<th>you / get</th>
<th>you / like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>people / live</td>
<td>it / look</td>
<td>you / -pass</td>
<td>we / meet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don’t worry about your exam. I’m sure you’ll pass.
2. Why don’t you try on this jacket? It’ll look nice on you.
4. It’s raining. Don’t go out. It will get wet.
5. Do you think he’ll be longer in the future?
6. Bye! I’m sure we’ll meet again before long.
7. I’ve invited Anna to the party, but I don’t think she’ll come.
8. It takes me an hour to get to work at the moment, but when the new road is finished, it will be much quicker.

22.4 Write questions using do you think … will … ? + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be back</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>get married</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>rain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I’ve bought this picture for Karen. Do you think she’ll like it?
2. The weather doesn’t look very good. Do you?
3. The meeting is still going on. When do you?
4. My car needs to be repaired. How much?
5. Sally and David are in love. Do?
6. ‘I’m going out now.’ ‘OK. What time’?
7. The future situation is uncertain. What?

22.5 Where do you think you will be at these times? Write true sentences about yourself. Use:

I’ll be … or I’ll probably be … or I don’t know where I’ll be

1. (next Monday evening at 7.45) I’ll be at home, or I’ll probably be at home, or I don’t know where I’ll be.
2. (at 5 o’clock tomorrow morning)
3. (at 10.30 tomorrow morning)
4. (next Saturday afternoon at 4.15)
5. (this time next year)
I will and I'm going to

Future actions

Study the difference between will and (be) going to:

Sarah is talking to Helen:
- Let's have a party.
- That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people.

will ('ll): We use will to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.

Later that day, Helen meets Dan:
- Sarah and I have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people.

(be) going to: We use (be) going to when we have already decided to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people before she spoke to Dan.

Compare:
- 'Gary phoned while you were out.'  'OK. I'll call him back.'
  'Gary phoned while you were out.'  'Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back.'
- 'Anna is in hospital.'  'Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her.'
  'Anna is in hospital.'  'Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening.'

Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both will and going to to predict future happenings and situations. So you can say:
- I think the weather will be nice later.  or
- I think the weather is going to be nice later.
- Those shoes are well-made. They'll last a long time.  or
- Those shoes are well-made. They're going to last a long time.

When we say something is going to happen, we know this from the situation now. What is happening now shows that something is going to happen in the future. For example:
- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.  (not It will rain)
- (We can see that it is going to rain from the clouds that are in the sky now.)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.  (not I think I'll be sick)
- (I think I'm going to be sick because I feel terrible now.)

Do not use will in this type of situation.
## Exercises
### 23.1 Complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. A: Why are you turning on the TV?
   B: I’m going to watch the news. (I / watch)
   B: Haven’t you? Well, don’t worry. I’ll lend you some. (I / lend)
3. A: I’ve got a headache.
   B: Have you? Wait a second and take an aspirin for you. (I / get)
4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
   B: I’m going to wash the car. (I / wash)
5. A: I’ve decided to repaint this room.
   B: Oh, have you? What colour..? (you / paint)
6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
   B: Yes, I’m going to buy some things for dinner. (I / buy)
7. A: I don’t know how to use the washing machine.
   B: It’s easy. I’ll show you. (I / show)
8. A: What would you like to eat?
   B: I’d like a pizza, please. (I / have)
9. A: Did you call Lisa?
   B: Oh, no. I completely forgot. Can you call her now. (I / call)
10. A: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?
    B: Yes. Everything is planned. He’s going to take a holiday for a few weeks. (he / do)

### 23.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to John.
   CALLER: Hello. Can I speak to John, please?
   YOU: Just a moment. I’ll get him. (I / get)
2. It’s a nice day, so you have decided to take a walk. Just before you go, you tell your friend.
   YOU: The weather’s too nice to stay in. I’m going to take a walk. (I / take)
   FRIEND: Good idea! I think I’ll join you. (I / join)
3. Your friend is worried because she has lost her driving licence.
   YOU: Don’t worry. I’m sure you’ll find it. (you / find)
   FRIEND: I hope so.
4. There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested, but then you decided not to apply.
   FRIEND: Have you decided what to do about that job you were interested in?
   YOU: Yes, I’ve decided not to apply for it. (I / not / apply)
5. You and a friend are stuck in traffic. You have to be in a meeting in five minutes and you need at least another 20 minutes to get there.
   YOU: The meeting begins in five minutes. We’ll be late. (we / be late)
6. Ann and Sam are staying at a hotel. Their room is in very bad condition, especially the ceiling.
   ANN: The ceiling doesn’t look very safe, does it?
   SAM: No, it looks as if it had fallen down. (it / fall down)
7. Paul has to go to the airport to catch a plane tomorrow morning.
   PAUL: Kate, I need somebody to take me to the airport tomorrow morning.
   KATE: That’s no problem. I’ll take you. (I / take) What time is your flight?
   PAUL: 10.30.
   KATE: OK, I’ll pick you up at your house at about 8 o’clock then. (I / pick)
   Later that day, Joe offers to take Paul to the airport.
   JOE: Paul, do you want me to take you to the airport?
   PAUL: No thanks, Joe. (Kate / take)
Will be doing and will have done

Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full.
Everyone will be watching the film.

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty.
The film will have finished.
Everyone will have gone home.

I will be doing something (future continuous) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

☐ This time next week I’ll be on holiday. I’ll be lying on the beach or swimming in the sea.
☐ You have no chance of getting the job. You’ll be wasting your time if you apply for it.

Compare will be (do)ing and will (do):

☐ Don’t phone between 7 and 8. We’ll be having dinner.
☐ Let’s wait for Liz to arrive and then we’ll have dinner.

Compare will be -ing with other continuous forms:

☐ At 10 o’clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working. (past)
It’s 10 o’clock now. She is in her office. She is working. (present)
At 10 o’clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working.

We also use will be -ing to talk about complete actions in the future.
For example:

☐ The government will be making a statement about the crisis later today.
☐ Will you be going away this summer?
☐ Later in the programme, I’ll be talking to the Minister of Education ...
☐ Our best player is injured and won’t be playing in the game on Saturday.

In these examples will be -ing is similar to (be) going to ...

We use will have (done) (future perfect) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future. For example:

☐ Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won’t be at home at 9 o’clock – she’ll have gone to work.
☐ We’re late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare will have (done) with other perfect forms:

☐ Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
Next year they will have been married for 25 years.
When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (past perfect)
Exercises

24.1 Read about Andy. Then tick (√) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o'clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

1 At 7.45
   a he'll be leaving the house ✓
   b he'll have left the house
   c he'll be at home ✓
   d he'll be having breakfast ✓

2 At 8.15
   a he'll be leaving the house
   b he'll have left the house
   c he'll have arrived at work
   d he'll be arriving at work

3 At 9.15
   a he'll be working
   b he'll start work
   c he'll have started work
   d he'll be arriving at work

4 At 12.45
   a he'll have lunch
   b he'll be having lunch
   c he'll have finished his lunch
   d he'll have started his lunch

5 At 4 o'clock
   a he'll have finished work
   b he'll finish work
   c he'll be working
   d he won't have finished work

6 At 4.45
   a he'll leave work
   b he'll be leaving work
   c he'll have left work
   d he'll have arrived home

24.2 Put the verb into the correct form, will be (do)ing or will have (done).

1 Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner then. (we / have)
2 Phone me after 8 o'clock. We'll be finishing dinner by then. (we / finish)
3 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we'll be playing tennis. (we / play)

4 A: Can we meet tomorrow?
   B: Yes, but not in the afternoon. I'll be working by then. (I / work)

5 B has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o'clock. It will last about an hour.
   A: Will you be free at 11.30?
   B: Yes, I'll be back by then. (the meeting / end)

6 Ben is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, he'll have spent all his money before the end of his holiday. (he / spend)

7 Do you think you'll be doing the same job in ten years' time? (you / still / do)

8 Lisa is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, she'll have travelled more than 3,000 miles. (she / travel)

9 If you need to contact me, please stay at the Lion Hotel until Friday. (I / stay)

10 A: Are you going to see Laura tomorrow? (you / see)
    B: Yes, probably. Why?
    A: I borrowed this DVD from her. Can you give it back to her?
When I do / When I’ve done  When and if

Study this example:

Will you phone me tomorrow?

Yes, I’ll phone you when I get home from work.

‘I’ll phone you when I get home’ is a sentence with two parts:

the main part: I’ll phone you
and the when-part: when I get home

The time in the sentence is future (tomorrow), but we use a present tense (I get) in the when-part of the sentence.

We do not use will in the when-part of the sentence.

Some more examples:

☐ We’ll go out when it stops raining. (not when it will stop)
☐ When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
☐ (said to a child) What do you want to be when you grow up? (not will grow)

The same thing happens after while / before / after / as soon as / until or till:

☐ What are you going to do while I’m away? (not while I will be)
☐ I’ll probably go back home on Sunday. Before I go, I’d like to visit the museum.
☐ Wait here until (or till) I come back.

You can also use the present perfect (have done) after when / after / until / as soon as:

☐ Can I borrow that book when you’ve finished with it?
☐ Don’t say anything while lan is here. Wait until he has gone.

If you use the present perfect, one thing must be complete before the other (so the two things do not happen together):

☐ When I’ve phoned Kate, we can have dinner.
  (= First I’ll phone Kate and after that we can have dinner.)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

☐ When I phone Kate, I’ll ask her about the party. (not When I’ve phoned)

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

☐ I’ll come as soon as I finish. or I’ll come as soon as I’ve finished.
☐ You’ll feel better after you have something to eat. or You’ll feel better after you’ve had something to eat.

After if, we normally use the present simple (if I do / if I see etc.) for the future:

☐ It’s raining hard. We’ll get wet if we go out. (not if we will go)
☐ I’ll be angry if it happens again. (not if it will happen)
☐ Hurry up! If we don’t hurry, we’ll be late.

When and if

We use when for things which are sure to happen:

☐ I’m going out later. (for sure) When I go out, I’ll get some bread.

We use if (not when) for things that will possibly happen:

☐ I might go out later. (it’s possible) If I go out, I’ll get some bread.
☐ If it is raining this evening, I won’t go out. (not When it is raining)
☐ Don’t worry if I’m late tonight. (not when I’m late)
☐ If they don’t come soon, I’m not going to wait. (not When they don’t come)
Exercises

25.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. All the sentences are about the future. Use will/won’t or the present simple (I see / he plays / it is etc.).

1. When you are (you / be) in London again, come and see us.
2. I want to see Sophie before (she / go) out.
3. Call me when (you / know) what time you’re going to get here.
4. I’m going out now. (you / be) here when (I / get) back?
5. I think everything will be fine, but if (there / be) any problems, (I / call) you, OK?
6. We must do something soon before (it / be) too late.
7. Anna looks very different now. When (you / see) her again, (you / not / recognise) her.
8. Steve has applied for the job, but he isn’t really qualified for it. (I / be) surprised if (he / get) it.
9. I’m going to be away for a few days. If (you / need) to contact me while (I / be) away, here’s my mobile number.
10. I don’t want to go without you. (you / be) ready.

25.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. It will stop raining soon. Then we’ll go out.
   We’ll go out when it stops raining.
2. I’ll find somewhere to live. Then I’ll give you my address.
   I’ll find somewhere to live when I know your address.
3. I’ll do the shopping. Then I’ll come straight back home.
   After doing the shopping I’ll come straight back home.
4. It’s going to get dark. Let’s go home before that.
   Let’s go home before it gets dark.
5. She must apologise to me first. I won’t speak to her until then.
   I won’t speak to her until she has apologised to me.

25.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. A friend of yours is going on holiday. You want to know what she is going to do.
   You ask: What are you going to do when you are on holiday?
2. A friend is visiting you. She has to go soon, but you’d like to show her some pictures.
   You ask: Do you have time to look at some pictures before you leave?
3. You want to sell your car. Mark is interested in buying it, but he hasn’t decided yet.
   You ask: Can you let me know as soon as you have decided?
4. Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they’re going to stay.
   You ask: Where are you going to stay when you get there?
5. The traffic is very bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.
   You say: I think things will be better when they have finished building the road.

25.4 Put in when or if.

1. Don’t worry if I’m late tonight.
2. Be careful. You’ll hurt yourself if you fall.
3. I’m going to Rome next week. If I’m there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.
4. I’m going shopping. If you want anything, I can get it for you.
5. If I don’t see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?
6. I’m going away for a few days. I’ll call you when I get back.
7. I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame if she can’t come.
8. We can eat at home or, if you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.
Can, could and (be) able to

We use *can* to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use *can + infinitive (can do / can see etc.)*:

- We **can see** the lake from our hotel.
- 'I don't have a pen.' 'You **can use** mine.'
- **Can** you speak any foreign languages?
- I **can come** and see you tomorrow if you like.
- The word 'dream' **can be** a noun or a verb.

The negative is **can't** (= cannot):
- I'm afraid I **can't come** to the party on Friday.

You can say that somebody is **able to** do something, but *can* is more usual:
- We **are able to see** the lake from our hotel.

But *can* has only two forms: **can** (present) and **could** (past). So sometimes it is necessary to use **(be) able to**. Compare:

- I **can't** sleep.
- Tom **can** come tomorrow.
- Maria **can** speak French, Spanish and English.
- I **haven't been able to** sleep recently.
- Tom **might be able to** come tomorrow.
- Applicants for the job **must be able to** speak two foreign languages.

### Could

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can**. We use **could** especially with:

- see hear smell taste feel remember understand

- We had a lovely room in the hotel. We **could see** the lake.
- As soon as I walked into the room, I **could smell** gas.
- I was sitting at the back of the theatre and **couldn't hear** very well.

We also use **could** to say that somebody had the general ability or permission to do something:

- My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
- We were totally free. We **could do** what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

### Could and was able to

We use **could** for **general** ability. But if you want to say that somebody did something in a specific situation, use **was/were able to** or **managed to** (not **could**):

- The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody **was able to escape / managed to escape**. (not could escape)
- We didn't know where David was, but we **managed to find / were able to find** him in the end. (not could find)

Compare:

- Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He **could beat** anybody.
  (= he had the **general** ability to beat anybody)

**but** Jack and Andy played a match yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack **managed to beat** him.
  (= he managed to beat him this time)

The negative **couldn't** (could not) is possible in all situations:

- My grandfather **couldn't swim**.
- We looked for David everywhere, but we **couldn't find** him.
- Andy played well, but he **couldn't beat** Jack.
Exercises

26.1 Complete the sentences using can or (be) able to. Use can if possible; otherwise use (be) able to.

1. Gary has travelled a lot. He ... can ... speak five languages.
2. I haven’t ... been able to ... sleep very well recently.
3. Nicole ... drive, but she doesn’t have a car.
4. I used to ... stand on my head, but I can’t do it any more.
5. I can’t understand Mark. I’ve never ... understand him.
6. I can’t see you on Friday, but I ... meet you on Saturday morning.
7. Ask Katherine about your problem. She might ... help you.

26.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1. (something you used to be able to do)
   I ... to be able to sing well.
2. (something you used to be able to do)
   I ... to be able to sing well.
3. (something you would like to be able to do)
   I’d ... to be able to sing well.
4. (something you have never been able to do)
   I’ve ... to be able to sing well.

26.3 Complete the sentences with can/can’t/could/couldn’t + the following:

- come - eat - hear - run - sleep - wait

1. I’m afraid I ... to your party next week.
2. When Dan was 16, he ... 100 metres in 11 seconds.
3. ‘Are you in a hurry?’ ‘No, I’ve got plenty of time. I ...’
4. I was feeling sick yesterday. I ... anything.
5. Can you speak a little louder? I ... you very well.
6. ‘You looked tired.’ ‘Yes, I ... last night.’

26.4 Complete the answers to the questions with was/were able to ...

1. a. Did everybody escape from the fire?
   b. Yes, although the fire spread quickly, everybody ... escape.
2. a. Did you finish your work this afternoon?
   b. Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I ...
3. a. Did you have problems finding our house?
   b. Not really. Your directions were good and we ...
4. a. Did the thief get away?
   b. Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief ...

26.5 Complete the sentences using could, couldn’t or managed to.

1. My grandfather travelled a lot. He ... speak five languages.
2. I looked everywhere for the book, but I ... find it.
3. They didn’t want to come with us at first, but we ... persuade them.
4. Laura had hurt her leg and ... walk very well.
5. I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I ... finish.
6. I looked very carefully and I ... see somebody in the distance.
7. I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn’t have any, but I ... get some in the next shop.
8. My grandmother loved music. She ... play the piano very well.
9. A girl fell into the river, but fortunately we ... pull her out.
10. I had forgotten to bring my camera, so I ... take any pictures.
**Could (do) and could have (done)**

We use *could* in a number of ways. Sometimes *could* is the past of *can* (see Unit 26):
- Listen. I *can hear* something.  *(now)*
- I listened. I *could hear* something.  *(past)*

But *could* is not only used in this way. We also use *could* to talk about possible actions now or in the future (especially to make suggestions). For example:
- A: What shall we do tonight?
  B: We *could go* to the cinema.
- A: When you go to Paris next month, you *could stay* with Sarah.
  B: Yes, I suppose I *could*.

*Can* is also possible in these sentences ('We *can* go to the cinema.' etc.). *Could* is less sure than *can*.

We also use *could* (*not can*) for actions that are not realistic. For example:
- I'm so tired, I *could sleep* for a week.  *(not I can sleep for a week)*

Compare *can* and *could*:
- I *can stay* with Sarah when I go to Paris.  *(realistic)*
- Maybe I *could stay* with Sarah when I go to Paris.  *(possible, but less sure)*
- This is a wonderful place. I *could stay* here for ever.  *(unrealistic)*

We also use *could* (*not can*) to say that something (a situation or a happening) is possible now or in the future. The meaning is similar to *might* or *may* (see Unit 29):
- The story *could be* true, but I don't think it is.  *(not can be true)*
- I don't know what time Lisa is coming. She *could get* here at any time.

Compare *can* and *could*:
- The weather *can change* very quickly in the mountains.  *(in general)*
- The weather is nice now, but it *could change*.  *(the weather now, not in general)*

We use *could have* (done) to talk about the past. Compare:
- I'm so tired, I *could sleep* for a week.  *(now)*
- I was so tired, I *could have slept* for a week.  *(past)*
- The situation is bad, but it *could be* worse.  *(now)*
- The situation was bad, but it *could have been* worse.  *(past)*

Something *could have* happened = it was possible but did *not* happen:
- Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You *could have stayed* with Sarah. (you didn't stay with her)
- David was lucky. He *could have hurt* himself when he fell, but he's OK.

We use *couldn't* to say that something would not be possible:
- I *couldn't live* in a big city. I'd hate it.  (= it wouldn't be possible for me)
- Everything is fine right now. Things *couldn't be* better.

For the past we use *couldn’t have* (done):
- We had a really good holiday. It *couldn't have been* better.
- The trip was cancelled last week. Paul *couldn't have gone* anyway because he was ill.  (= it would not have been possible for him to go)
## Exercises

### 27.1 Answer the questions with a suggestion. Use could.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Where shall we go for our holidays?</th>
<th>(to Scotland) We <strong>could</strong> go to Scotland.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>What shall we have for dinner tonight?</td>
<td>(fish) We <strong>could</strong> have fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>When shall I phone Vicky?</td>
<td>(now) You <strong>could</strong> phone Vicky now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Where shall we hang this picture?</td>
<td>(in the kitchen) We <strong>could</strong> hang this picture in the kitchen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 27.2 In some of these sentences, you need could (not can). Change the sentences where necessary.

**1.** The story can be true, but I don’t think it is. _**could** be true_ OK. (_could_ go _is also possible)_

**2.** It’s a nice day. We can go for a walk. _**could** go_ OK. (_could_ go _is also possible)_

**3.** I’m so angry with him. I can kill him! _**could** kill_ OK. (_could_ kill _is also possible)_

**4.** If you’re hungry, we can have dinner now. _**can** have_ OK. (_can_ have _is also possible)_

**5.** It’s so nice here. I can stay here all day, but unfortunately I have to go. _**could** stay_ OK. (_could_ stay _is also possible)_

**6.** A: Where’s my bag? Have you seen it?  
   B: No, but it can be in the car. _**could** be_ OK. (_could_ be _is also possible)_

**7.** Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he can also play the piano. _**can** play_ OK. (_can_ play _is also possible)_

**8.** A: I need to borrow a camera.  
   B: You can borrow mine. _**could** borrow_ OK. (_could_ borrow _is also possible)_

**9.** Be careful climbing that tree. You can fall. _**could** fall_ OK. (_could_ fall _is also possible)_

### 27.3 Complete the sentences. Use could or could have + a suitable verb.

**1.** A: What shall we do this evening?  
   B: I don’t mind. We _**could** go_ to the cinema.

**2.** A: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday.  
   B: Why did you stay at home? You _**could** have gone_ out with us.

**3.** A: Have you seen this job advertised in the paper?  
   B: You _**could** have_ applied for it.  
   A: What sort of job? Show me the advertisement. _**could have** applied for it._

**4.** A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?  
   B: It wasn’t so bad. It _**could** have been_ worse.

**5.** A: I got very wet walking home in the rain last night.  
   B: Why did you walk? You _**could** have_ taken a taxi.

**6.** A: Where shall we meet tomorrow?  
   B: Well, I _**could** have_ taken you to your house if you like.

### 27.4 Complete the sentences. Use couldn’t or couldn’t have + these verbs (in the correct form):

- **be**  
- **be**  
- **come**  
- **find**  
- **get**  
- **live**  
- **wear**

**1.** I _**couldn’t** have _live in a big city. I’d hate it.

**2.** We had a really good holiday. It _**couldn’t have been** better.

**3.** I _**wore**_ that hat. I’d look silly and people would laugh at me.

**4.** We managed to find the restaurant you recommended, but we _**found**_ it without the map that you drew for us.

**5.** Paul has to get up at 4 o’clock every morning. I don’t know how he does it. I _**cannot** have_ got up at that time every day.

**6.** The staff at the hotel were really nice when we stayed there last summer. They _**were**_ more helpful.

**7.** A: I tried to phone you last week. We had a party and I wanted to invite you.  
   B: That was nice of you, but I _**shouldn’t have**_ anyway. I was away all last week.
Study this example:

My house is very near the motorway. It must be very noisy.

You can use must to say that you believe something is certain:
- You’ve been travelling all day. You must be tired. (Travelling is tiring and you’ve been travelling all day, so you must be tired.)
- ‘Joe is a hard worker.’ ‘Joe? You must be joking. He doesn’t do anything.’
- Louise must get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
- I’m sure Sally gave me her address. I must have it somewhere.

You can use can’t to say that you believe something is not possible:
- You’ve just had lunch. You can’t be hungry already. (People are not normally hungry just after eating a meal. You’ve just eaten, so you can’t be hungry.)
- They haven’t lived here for very long. They can’t know many people.

Study the structure:

| I/you/he (etc.) | must can’t | be (tired / hungry / at work etc.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>do / get / know / have etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the past we use must have (done) and can’t have (done).

Study this example:

Martin and Lucy are standing at the door of their friends’ house. They have rung the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:

They must have gone out.

- ‘We used to live very near the motorway.’ ‘Did you? It must have been noisy.’
- ‘I’ve lost one of my gloves.’ ‘You must have dropped it somewhere.’
- Sarah hasn’t contacted me. She can’t have got my message.
- Tom walked into a wall. He can’t have been looking where he was going.

Study the structure:

| I/you/he (etc.) | must can’t | have been (asleep / at work etc.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>been (doing / looking etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gone / got / known etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use couldn’t have instead of can’t have:
- Sarah couldn’t have got my message.
- Tom couldn’t have been looking where he was going.
Exercises

**28.1 Put in must or can't.**

1. You've been travelling all day. You _________ be tired.
2. That restaurant _________ be very good. It's always full of people.
3. That restaurant _________ be very good. It's always empty.
4. I'm sure I gave you the key. You _________ have it. Have you looked in your bag?
5. I often see that woman walking along this street. She _________ live near here.
6. It rained every day during their holiday, so they _________ have had a very nice time.
7. Congratulations on passing your exam. You _________ be very pleased.
8. You got here very quickly. You _________ have walked very fast.
9. Bill and Sue always stay at luxury hotels, so they _________ be short of money.

**28.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).**

1. I've lost one of my gloves. I must _________ dropped it somewhere.
2. Their house is very near the motorway. It must _________ very noisy.
3. Sarah knows a lot about films. She must _________ to the cinema a lot.
4. I left my bike outside the house last night and now it's gone. Somebody must _________ it.
5. 'How old is Ted?' ‘He's older than me. He must _________ at least 40.’
6. I didn't hear the phone ring. I must _________ asleep.
7. A: You're going on holiday soon. You must _________ forward to it.
   B: Yes, it will be really good to get away.
8. The police have closed the road, so we have to go a different way. There must _________ an accident.
9. I'm sure you know this song. You must _________ it before.
10. There is a man walking behind us. He has been walking behind us for the last 20 minutes. He must _________ us.

**28.3 Read the situations and use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.**

1. We went to their house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out)
   They must have gone out.
2. Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
   She can't have got my message.
3. The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / very expensive)
4. I haven't seen our neighbours for ages. (they / go away)
5. I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)
6. Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / easy for her)
7. There was a man standing outside the cafe. (he / wait / for somebody)
8. Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)
9. When I got back to my car, the door was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
10. I was woken up in the night by the noise next door. (my neighbours / have / a party)
11. The light was red, but the car didn’t stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
May and might 1

Study this example situation:

You are looking for Ben. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.

Where's Ben?

He may be in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office)

He might be having lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch)

Ask Ann. She might know. (= perhaps she knows)

We use may or might to say that something is possible. Usually you can use may or might, so you can say:

- It may be true. or It might be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She might know. or She may know.

The negative forms are may not and might not (or mightn't):

- It may not be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)
- She might not work here any more. (= perhaps she doesn't work here)

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>may</th>
<th>might</th>
<th>(not)</th>
<th>be (true / in his office etc.)</th>
<th>be (doing / working / having etc.)</th>
<th>know / work / want etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

For the past we use may have (done) or might have (done):

- A: I wonder why Kate didn’t answer her phone.
  - B: She may have been asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- A: I can’t find my phone anywhere.
  - B: You might have left it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)
- A: Why wasn’t Amy at the meeting yesterday?
  - B: She might not have known about it. (= perhaps she didn’t know)
- A: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
  - B: He may not have been feeling well. (= perhaps he wasn’t feeling well)

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>may</th>
<th>might</th>
<th>(not) have</th>
<th>been (asleep / at home etc.)</th>
<th>been (doing / working / feeling etc.)</th>
<th>known / had / wanted / left etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Could is similar to may and might:

- It’s a strange story, but it could be true. (= it is possible that it’s true)
- You could have left your phone at work. (= it’s possible that you left it there)

But couldn’t (negative) is different from may not and might not. Compare:

- Sarah couldn’t have got my message. Otherwise she would have replied. (= it is not possible that she got my message)
- I wonder why Sarah hasn’t replied to my message. I suppose she might not have got it. (= it’s possible that she didn’t get it – so perhaps she did, perhaps she didn’t)
Exercises

29.1 Write these sentences in a different way using **might**.
1. Perhaps Helen is in her office.  
   She might be in her office.
2. Perhaps Helen is busy.
3. Perhaps she is working.
4. Perhaps she wants to be alone.
5. Perhaps she had to go home early.
6. Perhaps she was working yesterday.

In sentences 9–11 use **might not**.
9. Perhaps she doesn’t want to see me.
10. Perhaps she isn’t working today.
11. Perhaps she wasn’t feeling well yesterday.

29.2 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form.
1. ‘Where’s Ben?’ ‘I’m not sure. He might be having lunch.’
2. ‘Who is that man with Anna?’ ‘I’m not sure. It might be her brother.’
3. A: Who was the man we saw with Anna yesterday?
   B: I’m not sure. It may be her brother.
4. A: What are those people doing by the side of the road?
   B: I don’t know. I suppose they might be looking for a bus.
5. ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘I can’t see her. She may not be there yet.’

29.3 Read the situation and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use **might**.
1. I can’t find Jeff anywhere. I wonder where he is.
   a. (he / go / shopping) He might have gone shopping.
   b. (he / play / tennis) He might be playing tennis.
2. I’m looking for Sophie. Do you know where she is?
   a. (she / watch / TV)
   b. (she / go / out)
3. I can’t find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
   a. (it / be / in the car)
   b. (you / leave / in the restaurant)
4. Why didn’t Dan answer the doorbell? I’m sure he was at home at the time.
   a. (he / go / to bed early)
   b. (he / not / hear / the doorbell)
   c. (he / be / in the shower)

29.4 Complete the sentences using **might not have ... or couldn’t have ...**.
1. A: Do you think Sarah got the message I sent her?
   B: No, she would have replied. She couldn’t have got it.
2. A: I was surprised Amy wasn’t at the meeting. Perhaps she didn’t know about it.
   B: That’s possible. She might not have known about it.
3. A: I wonder why they haven’t replied to the email I sent. Do you think they received it?
   B: Maybe not. They...
4. A: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?
   B: No, the police say it...
5. A: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
   B: Well, he...
6. A: The man you spoke to – are you sure he was American?
   B: No, I’m not sure. He...

Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)
May and might 2

We use may and might to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:
- I haven't decided yet where to go on holiday. I may go to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn't always on time. We might have to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are may not and might not (mightn't):
- Amy may not go out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There might not be enough time to discuss everything at the meeting. (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare will and may/might:
- I’ll be late this evening. (for sure)
- I may/might be late this evening. (possible)

Usually you can use may or might. So you can say:
- I may go to Ireland. or I might go to Ireland.
- Jane might be able to help you. or Jane may be able to help you.

But we use only might (not may) when the situation is not real:
- If they paid me better, I might work harder. (not I may work)

The situation here is not real because they do not pay me well, so I'm not going to work harder.

There is a continuous form: may/might be -ing. Compare this with will be -ing:
- Don't phone at 8.30. I'll be watching the football on television.
- Don't phone at 8.30. I might be watching (or I may be watching) the football on TV. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use may/might be -ing for possible plans. Compare:
- I'm going to Ireland in July. (for sure)
- I might be going (or I may be going) to Ireland soon. (possible)

But you can also say 'I might go / I may go ...' with little difference in meaning.

 Might as well

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

What shall we do? Shall we walk?

We might as well. It's a nice day and I don't want to wait here for an hour.

We might as well do something = We should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

May as well is also possible.

A: What time are you going out?
B: Well, I'm ready, so I might as well go now.
B: Buses are so expensive these days, you might as well get a taxi. (= taxis are as good, no more expensive)
Exercises

30.1 Write sentences with might.
1. Where are you going for your holidays? (to Ireland???)
   I haven't decided yet. I might go to Ireland.
2. What sort of car are you going to buy? (a Honda???)
   I'm not sure yet. I
3. When is Tom coming to see us? (on Saturday???)
   He hasn't said yet.
4. Where are you going to hang that picture? (in the dining room???)
   I haven't made up my mind yet.
5. What is Tanya going to do when she leaves school? (go to university???)
   She's still thinking about it.

30.2 Complete the sentences using might + the following:
   bite break need rain slip wake

   1. Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It ______ rain ______ later.
   2. Don't make too much noise. You ____________ the baby.
   3. Be careful of that dog. It ____________ you.
   4. Don't throw that letter away. We ____________ it later.
   5. Be careful. The footpath is very icy. You ____________ something.
   6. Don't let the children play in this room. They ____________ something.

30.3 Complete the sentences. Use might be able to or might have to + one of the following:
   fix help leave meet sell work

   1. Tell me about your problem. I ______ be able to help ______ you.
   2. I'm not free this evening, but I ______ you tomorrow.
   3. I don't know if I'll be free on Sunday. I ______ ______ ______.
   4. I can come to the meeting, but I ______ ______ ______.
   5. I'm short of money. I want to keep my car, but I ______ ______ ______.
   6. A: There's something wrong with my bike.
      B: Let me have a look. I ______ ______ ______.

30.4 Write sentences with might not.
1. I'm not sure that Liz will come to the party.
   Liz ______ ______ ______ ______.
2. I'm not sure that I'll go out this evening.
   I ______ ______ ______ ______.
3. I'm not sure that we'll be able to get tickets for the game.
   We ______ ______ ______ ______.
4. I'm not sure that Sam will be able to go out with us tonight.

30.5 Read the situations and make sentences with might as well.
1. You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
   You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We ______ ______ ______ ______.
2. You've been invited to a party. You're not very excited about it, but you decide to go.
   You say: I'm not doing anything else, so I ______ ______ ______ ______ to the party.
3. You've just painted your kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
   You say: We ______ ______ ______ ______. There's plenty of paint left.
4. You and a friend are at home. You're bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
   You say: ______ ______ ______ ______. There's nothing else to do.
**Have to and must**

I have to do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it:
- You can’t turn right here. You **have to turn** left.
- I **have to wear** glasses for reading.
- Robert can’t come out with us this evening. He **has to work** late.
- Last week Tina broke her arm and **had to go** to hospital.
- I haven’t **had to go** to the doctor for ages.

We use **do/d/ed** in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple):
- What do I **have to do** to get a new driving licence? (not What have I to do?)
- Karen **doesn’t have to work** Saturdays. (not Karen hasn’t to)
- Why did you **have to leave** early?

You can say I’ll have to ... , I’m going to have to ... and I might / I may have to ...
- They can’t fix my computer, so I’ll **have to buy** a new one. or
- I’m going to **have to buy** a new one.
- Tom **might have to work** late tomorrow. or Tom **may have to work** ...

(= it’s possible that he will have to)

**Must** is similar to have to:
- It’s later than I thought. I **must go**. or I **have to go**.

You can use **must** or **have to** to give your own opinion (for example, to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):
- I haven’t spoken to Sue for ages. I **must phone** her. / I **have to phone** her.
  (= I say this is necessary)
- Mark is a really nice person. You **must meet** him. / You **have to meet** him.
  (I recommend this)

We use **have to** (not usually must) to say what someone is **obliged** to do. The speaker is not giving his/her own opinion:
- I **have to work** from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (a fact, not an opinion)
- Jane **has to travel** a lot for her work.

But **must** is used in written rules and instructions:
- Applications for the job **must be received** by 18 May.
- (exam instruction) Answer all the questions. You **must write** your answers in ink.

You cannot use **must** to talk about the past:
- We didn’t have much time. We **had** to hurry. (not we must hurry)

**Mustn’t** and **don’t have to** are completely different:

You **mustn’t** do something = it is necessary that you do **not** do it (so don’t do it):
- You **must keep** this a secret. You **mustn’t tell** anyone. (= don’t tell anyone)
- I promised I would be on time. I **mustn’t be** late. (= I must be on time)

You **don’t have to** do something = you don’t need to do it (but you can if you want):
- You **don’t have to tell** Tom what happened. I can tell him myself.
- I **don’t have to be** at the meeting, but I think I’ll go anyway.

You can use **have got to** instead of **have to**. So you can say:
- I’ve **got to** work tomorrow. or **I have** to work tomorrow.
- When **has** Helen **got to** go? or **When does** Helen **have to** go?
Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences using have to / has to / had to.
1 Bill starts work at 5 a.m. ... He has to get up ... at four. (he / get up)
2 ‘I broke my arm last week.’ ‘Did you have to go ... to hospital?’ (you / go)
3 There was a lot of noise from the street. ... the window. (we / close)
4 Karen can’t stay for the whole meeting. ... early. (she / leave)
5 How old ... to drive in your country? (you / be)
6 I don’t have much time. ... soon. (I / go)
7 How is Paul enjoying his new job? ... a lot? (he / travel)
8 ‘I’m afraid I can’t stay long.’ ‘What time ... ?’ (you / go)
9 ‘The bus was late again.’ ‘How long ... ?’ (you / wait)
10 There was nobody to help me. ... everything by myself. (I / do)

31.2 Complete the sentences using have to + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are positive (I have to ... etc.) and some are negative (I don’t have to ... etc.):

- ask
- do
- drive
- get-up
- go
- make
- make
- pay
- show

1 I’m not working tomorrow, so I ... don’t have to get up ... early.
2 Steve didn’t know how to turn off the computer, so I ... had to show ... him.
3 Excuse me a moment – I ... a phone call. I won’t be long.
4 I’m not too busy. I have a few things to do, but I ... them now.
5 I couldn’t find the street I wanted. ... somebody for directions.
6 The car park is free. You ... to park your car there.
7 A man was injured in the accident, but he ... to hospital because it wasn’t serious.
8 Jane has a senior position in the company. She ... important decisions.
9 When Patrick starts his new job next month, he ... 50 miles to work every day.

31.3 In some of these sentences, must is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 It’s later than I thought. I must go. OK (have to is also correct)
2 I must work every day from 8.30 to 5.30.
3 You must come and see us again soon.
4 Tom can’t meet us tomorrow. He must work.
5 I must work late yesterday evening.
6 I must get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
7 Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses since she was very young.

31.4 Complete the sentences with mustn’t or don’t/doesn’t have to.

1 I don’t want anyone to know about our plan. You ... tell anyone.
2 Richard ... wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
3 I can sleep late tomorrow morning because I ... go to work.
4 Whatever you do, you ... touch that switch. It’s very dangerous.
5 There’s a lift in the building, so we ... climb the stairs.
6 You ... forget what I told you. It’s very important.
7 Silvia ... get up early, but she usually does.
8 Don’t make so much noise. We ... wake the children.
9 I ... eat too much. I’m supposed to be on a diet.
10 You ... be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.
Must  mustn’t  needn’t

Must and mustn’t
You **must** do something = it is necessary that you do it:
- Don’t tell anybody what I said. You **must** keep it a secret.
- We haven’t got much time. We **must** hurry.

You **mustn’t** do something = it is necessary that you **do not** do it (so don’t do it):
- You **must** keep it a secret. You **mustn’t** tell anyone. (= don’t tell anyone)
- We **must** be very quiet. We **mustn’t** make any noise.

Needn’t and don’t need to
You **needn’t** do something = it’s not necessary to do it (but you can if you like):
- We’ve got plenty of time. We **needn’t** hurry. (= it is not necessary to hurry)
- Joe can stay here. He **needn’t** come with us. (= it is not necessary for him to come)

You can also use **don’t**/**doesn’t need to**:
- We **don’t** need to hurry.

Remember that we say **don’t need to do** / **doesn’t need to do**, but **needn’t do** (without to).

Needn’t have (done)
Study this example situation:

Hello, can I reserve a table for two, please?

Paul and Sue decided to go to a restaurant. They reserved a table.

![Restaurant scene]

But the restaurant was almost empty. So they **needn’t have reserved** a table.

They **needn’t have reserved** a table. = They reserved a table, but this was not necessary.

Compare **needn’t (do)** and **needn’t have (done)**:
- Everything will be OK. You **needn’t worry**. (it is not necessary)
- Everything was OK. You **needn’t have worried**. (you worried, but it was not necessary)

Needn’t have (done) and **didn’t need to** (do)
He **needn’t have done** something = he did it, but now we know that it was not necessary:
- Why did he get up at 5 o’clock? He **needn’t have got** up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

He **didn’t need to** do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn’t matter whether he did it or not:
- He **didn’t need to** get up early, so he didn’t.
- He **didn’t need to** get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

He **didn’t have to** ... is also possible in these examples.
Exercises

32.1 Which is correct?
1. We haven’t got much time. We must/mustn’t hurry. (must is correct)
2. We’ve got plenty of time. We mustn’t/don’t need to hurry.
3. I have to talk to Gary. I must/mustn’t remember to call him.
4. I have to talk to Gary. I mustn’t/needn’t forget to call him.
5. There’s plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You mustn’t/don’t need to
decide now.
6. We needn’t/mustn’t wash these tomatoes. They’ve already been washed.
7. This is a valuable book. You must/needn’t take good care of it and you
mustn’t/don’t need to lose it.
8. a: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
   b: Well, it mustn’t/needn’t be big – that’s not so important. But it must/mustn’t
have a nice garden – that’s essential.

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use needn’t + one of these verbs:
ask        come     explain   leave    walk
1. We’ve got plenty of time. We needn’t leave yet.
2. I can manage the shopping alone. You shouldn’t go with me.
3. We needn’t come all the way home. We can get a taxi.
4. Just help yourself if you’d like more to eat. You needn’t ask first.
5. I understand the situation perfectly. You needn’t explain further.

32.3 Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn’t have in the first sentence and
could have in the second (as in the example). For could have, see Unit 27.
1. Why did you rush? Why didn’t you take your time?
   You needn’t have rushed. You could have taken your time.
2. Why did you walk home? Why didn’t you take a taxi?
   You needn’t have walked. You could have taken a taxi.
3. Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn’t you stay with us?
   You needn’t have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.
4. Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn’t she wait until the morning?
   You needn’t have phoned. You could have phoned another day.
5. Why did you shout at me? Why weren’t you more patient?
   You needn’t have shouted. You could have been more patient.
6. Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn’t you say goodbye to me?
   You needn’t have left. You could have said goodbye.

32.4 Correct the sentences where necessary.
1. We have plenty of time. We don’t need hurry. We don’t need to hurry
2. You must keep it a secret. You mustn’t tell anybody else. OK
3. I’ll be all right. You needn’t to worry about me.
4. You mustn’t wait for me. You go on and I’ll join you later.
5. You don’t need to keep these emails. You can delete them.
6. I needn’t have gone out, so I stayed at home.
7. I needn’t have bought eggs. We had some already.

→ Additional exercises 16–17 (pages 311–12)
You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do. You can use **should** to give advice or to give an opinion:

- You look tired. You **should** go to bed.
- The government **should** do more to improve education.
- 'Should we invite Stephanie to the party?' ‘Yes, I think we should.’

We often use **should** with **I think** / **I don't think** / **Do you think** ... ?:

- I think the government **should** do more to improve education.
- I **don't think** you **should** work so hard.
- 'Do you think I **should** apply for this job?' ‘Yes, I think you should.’

You **shouldn't** do something = it isn’t a good thing to do:

- You **shouldn't** believe everything you read in the newspapers.

**Should** is not as strong as **must** or **have to**:

- You **should** apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)
- You **must** apologise. / You **have to** apologise. (= you have no alternative)

You can use **should** when something is not right or what you expect:

- Where’s Tina? She **should be** here by now. (= she isn’t here yet, and this is not normal)
- The price on this packet is wrong. It **should be** £2.50, not £3.50.
- That man on the motorbike **should be wearing** a helmet.

We also use **should** to say that we expect something to happen:

- Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she **should pass**. (= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotels in the town. It **shouldn't be** hard to find a place to stay. (= I don't expect it to be hard)

You **should have done** something = you didn’t do it, but it would have been the right thing to do:

- You missed a great party last night. You **should have come**. Why didn’t you? (= you didn’t come, but it would have been good to come)
- I wonder why they’re so late. They **should have got** here long ago.

You **shouldn't have done** something = you did it, but it was the wrong thing to do:

- I’m feeling sick. I **shouldn’t have eaten** so much. (= I ate too much)
- She **shouldn’t have been listening** to our conversation. It was private. (= she was listening)

Compare **should** (do) and **should have** (done):

- You look tired. You **should** go to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night. You **should have gone** to bed earlier.

**Ought to** ...

You can use **ought to** instead of **should** in the sentences on this page. We say ‘ought to do’ (with to):

- Do you think I **ought to apply** for this job? (Do you think I **should apply** ... ?)
- Jack **ought not to go** to bed so late. (= Jack **shouldn’t go** ...)
- It was a great party last night. You **ought to have come**.
- Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she **ought to pass**.
Exercises

33.1 For each situation, write a sentence with should or shouldn’t + one of the following:

- go away for a few days
- put some pictures on the walls
- go to bed so late
- take a photo
- look for another job
- use her car so much

1. Anna needs a change. She should go away for a few days.
2. Your salary is very low. You should...
3. Jack always finds it hard to get up. He...
4. What a beautiful view! You...
5. Sue drives everywhere. She never walks. She...
6. Dan’s room isn’t very interesting.

33.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think / I don’t think … should ….

1. Joe and Catherine are planning to get married. You think it’s a bad idea. I don’t think they should get married.
2. Jane has a bad cold, but plans to go out tonight. You don’t think this is a good idea. You say to her:...
3. Peter needs a job. He’s just seen an advert for a job which you think would be ideal for him, but he’s not sure whether to apply or not. You say to him:
4. The government wants to increase taxes, but you don’t think this is a good idea.

33.3 Complete the sentences with should (have) + the verb in brackets.

1. Helen should pass the exam. She’s been studying very hard. (pass)
2. You missed a great party last night. You should have come. (come)
3. We don’t see you enough. You should come and see us more often. (come)
4. I’m in a difficult position. What do you think I should do now? (do)
5. I’m sorry that I didn’t take your advice. I wonder what you said. (do)
6. We lost the game yesterday, but we should have won. We were the better team. (win)
7. Tanya has a tennis match against Jane tomorrow. Jane should win – she’s much better than Tanya. (win)
8. ‘Is Joe here yet?’ ‘Not yet, but he should be here soon.’ (be)
9. We went the wrong way and got lost. We should have turned right, not left. (turn)

33.4 Read the situations and write sentences with should/shouldn’t. Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1. I’m feeling sick. I ate too much. I shouldn’t have eaten so much.
2. That man on the motorbike isn’t wearing a helmet. That’s dangerous. He should be wearing a helmet.
3. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn’t reserved one. We...
4. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o’clock now, but the shop isn’t open yet.
5. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50. She...
6. Laura told me her address, but I didn’t write it down. Now I can’t remember the house number. I...
7. I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn’t my fault. The driver in front...
8. I walked into a wall. I was looking behind me. I wasn’t looking where I was going.
## Should 2

You can use **should** after:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>insist</th>
<th>recommend</th>
<th>suggest</th>
<th>demand</th>
<th>propose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I insisted that he <em>should</em> apologise.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctors <em>recommend</em> that everyone <em>should</em> eat plenty of fruit.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you <em>suggest</em> we <em>should</em> do?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many people are <em>demanding</em> that something <em>should be done</em> about the problem.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*It's important/vital/necessary/essential* that ... *should* ... :
- It's *essential* that everyone *should be* here on time.

You can also leave out *should* in the sentences in section A. So you can say:
- It's *essential* that everyone *be* here on time. (= ... that everyone *should be* here)
- I insisted that he *apologise.* (= ... that he *should* apologise)
- What do you *suggest* we do?
- Many people are *demanding* that something *be done* about the problem.

This form (*be/do/apologise* etc.) is called the **subjunctive.** It is the same as the infinitive (without to). You can also use normal present and past tenses:
- It's *essential* that everyone is *here* on time.
- I insisted that he *apologised."

After *suggest,* you cannot use *to* ... ('to do / to buy' etc.). You can say:
- What do you *suggest* we *should* do?
- or What do you *suggest* we do? (*but not* What do you suggest us to do?)
- Jane won the lottery.
  - I suggested that she *should buy* a car with the money she'd won.
  - or I suggested that she *buy* a car.
- or I suggested that she *bought* a car. (*but not* I suggested her to buy)

You can also use *-ing* after *suggest* (What do you *suggest doing*?). See Unit 53.

You can use **should** after a number of adjectives, especially:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strange</th>
<th>odd</th>
<th>funny</th>
<th>typical</th>
<th>natural</th>
<th>interesting</th>
<th>surprised</th>
<th>surprising</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's <em>strange</em> that he <em>should be</em> late. He's usually on time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was <em>surprised</em> that he <em>should say</em> such a thing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say 'If something *should* happen ...'. For example:
- We have no jobs at present, but if the situation *should change,* we will contact you.

You can also begin with *should* (*Should* something happen ...):
- *Should* the situation *change,* we will contact you.

This means the same as 'If the situation *changes,* ...'. With *should,* the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller.

You can use **I should** ... / **I shouldn't** ... to give somebody advice. For example:
- 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, I *should wait* a bit.'

Here, *I should wait* = I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait.

More examples:
- 'I'm going out now. Is it cold out?' 'Yes, I *should wear* a coat.'
- *I shouldn't stay* up too late. You have to be up early tomorrow.
Exercises

34.1 Write a sentence (beginning in the way shown) that means the same as the first sentence.

1 'I think it would be a good idea to see a specialist,' the doctor said to me.
   The doctor recommended that I should see a specialist.
2 You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me.
   She insisted that I should stay a little longer.
3 'Why don’t you visit the museum after lunch?’ I said to them.
   I suggested that they should visit the museum.
4 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us.
   The landlord demanded that we should pay the rent by Friday.
5 'Why don’t we go away for a few days?’ Jack said to me.
   Jack suggested that we should go away for a few days.

34.2 Are these sentences right or wrong?

1 a Tom suggested that I should look for another job. OK
   b Tom suggested that I look for another job.
   c Tom suggested that I looked for another job.
   d Tom suggested me to look for another job.
2 a Where do you suggest I go for my holiday?
   b Where do you suggest me to go for my holiday?
   c Where do you suggest I should go for my holiday?

34.3 Complete the sentences using should + the following:
ask    be    leave    listen    say    worry

1 It’s strange that he should be late. He’s usually on time.
2 It’s funny that you should think that. I was going to say the same thing.
3 It’s only natural that parents should worry about their children.
4 Isn’t it typical of Joe that he should go without saying goodbye to anybody?
5 I was surprised that they should ask me for advice. What advice could I give them?
6 I’m going to give you all some essential information, so it’s important that everybody should listen very carefully.

34.4 Use the words in brackets to complete these sentences. Use If ... should ....

1 We have no jobs at present. (the situation / change)
   If the situation should change, we will contact you.
2 I’ve hung the washing out to dry on the balcony. (it / rain)
   If it should rain, can you bring the washing in, please?
3 I think everything will be OK. (there / be / any problems)
   If there should be any problems, I’m sure we’ll be able to solve them.
4 I don’t want anyone to know where I’m going. (anyone / ask)
   If anyone should ask, just say that you don’t know.

Write sentences 3 and 4 again, this time beginning with Should.

1 (3) Should ____________________, I’m sure we’ll be able to solve them.
2 (4) ________________________________, just say that you don’t know.

34.5 (Section F) Complete the sentences using I should + the following:
get    keep    phone    wait

1 'Shall I leave now?’ ‘No, I should wait a bit.’
2 'Shall I throw these things away?’ ‘No, __________________ them. You may need them.’
3 'Shall I go and see Paul?’ ‘Yes, but __________________ him first.’
4 'Is it worth getting this TV repaired?’ ‘No, __________________ a new one.’
### Had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger:
- I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late.
- 'Shall I take an umbrella?' ‘Yes, you'd better. It might rain.’
- We'd better stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is I'd better not (= I had better not):
- 'The jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?’ ‘I'd better not. It's too expensive.’
- You don't look very well. You'd better not go out tonight.

Remember that:

The form is 'had better' (usually 'I'd better / you'd better' etc. in spoken English).
- I'd better phone Chris, hadn't I?

**Had** is normally past, but the meaning of had better is present or future, not past.
- I'd better go to the bank now / tomorrow.

We say 'I'd better do' (not to do):
- It might rain. We'd better take an umbrella. (not We'd better to take)

### Had better and should

**Had better** is similar to should, but not exactly the same. We use had better only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use should in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:
- It's late. You'd better go. / You should go. (a specific situation)
- You're always at home. You should go out more often. (in general - not 'had better go')

Also, with had better, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice. **Should** means only 'it is a good thing to do'. Compare:
- It's a great film. You should go and see it. (but no problem if you don’t)
- The film starts at 8.30. You'd better go now or you'll be late.

### It's time ...

You can say It's time (for somebody) to ...:
- It's time to go home. / It's time for us to go home.

But you can also say:
- It's late. It's time we went home.

When we use it's time + past (we went / I did / they were etc.), the meaning is present, not past:
- It's time they were here. Why are they so late? (not It's time they are here)

**It's time** somebody did something = they should have already done it or started it. We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:
- This situation can't continue. It's time you did something about it.
- He's very selfish. It's time he realised that he isn't the most important person in the world.

You can also say It's about time .... This makes the criticism stronger:
- Jack is a great talker. But it's about time he did something instead of just talking.
Exercises

35.1 Read the situations and write sentences with **had better** or **had better not**. Use the words in brackets.

1. You’re going out for a walk with Tom. It looks as if it might rain. You say to Tom:
   (an umbrella) **We’d better take an umbrella.**

2. Oliver has just cut himself. It’s a bad cut. You say to him:
   (a plaster) **I had better bandage it.**

3. You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant this evening. It’s a popular restaurant. You say to Kate:
   (reserve) **We had better book a table.**

4. Rebecca doesn’t look very well this morning – not well enough to go to work. You say to her:
   (work) **You had better stay in.**

5. You received your phone bill four weeks ago, but you haven’t paid it yet. If you don’t pay soon, you could be in trouble. You say to yourself:
   (pay) **I had better pay it now.**

6. You want to ask your boss something, but he’s very busy and you know he doesn’t like to be disturbed. You say to a colleague:
   (disturb) **I had better ask him later.**

35.2 Put in **had better** where suitable. If **had better** is not suitable, use **should**.

1. I have an appointment in ten minutes. I’d better go now or I’ll be late.
2. It’s a great film. You should go and see it. You’ll really like it.
3. You had better set your alarm. You’ll never wake up on time if you don’t.
4. When people are driving, they had better keep their eyes on the road.
5. I’m glad you came to see us. You had better come more often.
6. She’ll be upset if we don’t invite her to the party, so we had better invite her.
7. These biscuits are delicious. You had better try one.
8. I think everybody had better learn a foreign language.

35.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need only one word, sometimes two.

1. a. I have a toothache. I’d better **go** to the dentist.
   b. John is expecting you to phone him. You had better **call** him now.
   c. ‘Shall I leave the window open?’ ‘No, you’d better **not**.’
   d. We’d better **go** as soon as possible, **let’s** go.

2. a. It’s time the government **do** something about the problem.
   b. It’s time something **happen** about the problem.
   c. I think it’s about time you **do** about other people instead of only thinking about yourself.

35.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It’s time (somebody did something)**.

1. You think the oil in the car needs to be changed. It hasn’t been changed for a long time.
   **It’s time we changed the oil in the car.**

2. You haven’t had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
   **It’s time I had a holiday.**

3. You’re sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It’s already five minutes late.
   **It’s time the train left.**

4. You enjoy having parties. You haven’t had one for a long time.

5. The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.
   **It’s time the company changed.**

6. Andrew has been doing the same job for the last ten years. He should try something else.
We use would ('d) / wouldn't when we imagine a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):
- It would be nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it.
- I'd love to live by the sea.
- A: Shall I tell Chris what happened?  
  B: No, I wouldn't say anything.  
  (= I wouldn't say anything in your situation)

We use would have (done) when we imagine situations or actions in the past (= things that didn't happen):
- They helped us a lot. I don't know what we'd have done  
  (= we would have done) without their help.
- I didn't tell Sam what happened. He wouldn't have been pleased.

Compare would (do) and would have (done):
- I would call Lisa, but I don't have her number. (now)  
  I would have called Lisa, but I didn't have her number. (past)  
- I'm not going to invite them to the party. They wouldn't come anyway.  
  I didn't invite them to the party. They wouldn't have come anyway.

We often use would in sentences with if (see Units 38-40):
- I would call Lisa if I had her number.  
- I would have called Lisa if I'd had her number.

Compare will ('ll) and would ('d):
- I'll stay a little longer. I've got plenty of time. 
  I'd stay a little longer, but I really have to go now. (so I can't stay longer)  
- I'll call Lisa. I have her number.  
  I'd call Lisa, but I don't have her number. (so I can't call her)

Sometimes would/wouldn't is the past of will/won't. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TOM: I'll call you on Sunday.</td>
<td>Tom said he'd call me on Sunday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMY: I promise I won't be late.</td>
<td>Amy promised that she wouldn't be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LISA: Damn! The car won't start.</td>
<td>Lisa was annoyed because her car wouldn't start.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Somebody wouldn't do something = he/she refused to do it:
- I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen to me. (= he refused to listen)  
- The car wouldn't start. (= it 'refused' to start)

You can also use would to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:
- When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we would all get up early and go for a swim. (= we did this regularly)  
- Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.

With this meaning, would is similar to used to (see Unit 18):
- Whenever Richard was angry, he used to walk out of the room.
Exercises

36.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn’t like.
1 (a place you’d love to live) I’d love to live by the sea.
2 (a job you wouldn’t like to do)
3 (something you would love to do)
4 (something that would be nice to have)
5 (a place you’d like to go to)

36.2 Complete the sentences using would + the following verbs (in the correct form):
be be do do enjoy enjoy have pass stop
1 They helped us a lot. I don’t know what we would have done without their help.
2 You should go and see the film. You it.
3 It’s a pity you couldn’t come to the party last night. You it.
4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What you in my position?
5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I to talk.
6 We took a taxi home last night, but got stuck in the traffic. It quicker to walk.
7 Why don’t you go and see Clare? She very pleased to see you.
8 Why didn’t you do the exam? I’m sure you it.
9 In an ideal world, everybody enough to eat.

36.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?
1 I’d like to go to Australia one day.
2 I wouldn’t like to live on a busy road.
3 I’m sorry the trip was cancelled.
4 I’m looking forward to going out tonight.
5 I’m glad we didn’t go out in the rain.
6 I’m not looking forward to the trip.

36.4 Write sentences using promised + would/ wouldn’t.
1 I wonder why Laura is late. She promised she wouldn’t be late.
2 I wonder why Steve hasn’t called me. He promised
3 Why did you tell Jane what I said? You
4 I’m surprised they didn’t wait for us. They

36.5 Complete the sentences. Use wouldn’t + a suitable verb.
1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn’t listen to me.
2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she me.
3 Paul was very angry about what I’d said and me for two weeks.
4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She me help her.

36.6 These sentences are about things that often happened in the past. Complete the sentences using would + these verbs:
forget help shake share walk
1 Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.
2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house
3 Alan was a very kind man. He always you if you had a problem.
4 Katherine was always very generous. She didn’t have much, but she what she had with everyone else.
5 You could never rely on Joe. It didn’t matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he always.
Can/Could/Would you ...? etc.
(Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

Asking people to do things (requests)

We use can or could to ask people to do things:
- Can you wait a moment, please?
- Could you wait a moment, please?
- Helen, can you do me a favour?
- Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the airport?

Note that we say Do you think you could ...? (not can):
- Do you think you could take me to the station?

We also use will and would to ask people to do things (but can/could are more usual):
- Helen, will you do me a favour?
- Would you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

Asking for things

To ask for something, we use Can I have ...? / Could I have ...? or Can I get ...?:
- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Can I get these postcards, please?
- (during a meal) Could I have the salt, please?

May I have ...? is also possible:
- May I have these postcards, please?

Asking to do things

To ask to do something, we use can, could or may:
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Steve, please?
- 'Could I use your phone?' 'Sure.'
- Do you think I could borrow your bike?
- 'May I come in?' 'Yes, please do.'

May is more formal than can or could.

To ask to do something, you can also say Do you mind if I ...? or Is it all right / Is it OK if I ...?:
- 'Do you mind if I use your phone?' 'Sure. Go ahead.'
- 'Is it all right if I come in?' 'Yes, of course.'

Offering to do things

To offer to do something, we use Can I ...?:
- 'Can I get you a cup of coffee?' 'That would be nice.'
- 'Can I help you?' 'No, it's all right. I can manage.'

Offering and inviting

To offer or to invite, we use Would you like ...? (not Do you like):
- 'Would you like a cup of coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like to eat with us tonight?' 'I'd love to.'

I'd like ... is a polite way of saying what you want:
- (at a tourist information office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- (in a shop) I'd like to try on this jacket, please.
**Exercises**

**37.1 Read the situations and write questions beginning Can ... or Could ... .**

1. You’re carrying a lot of things. You can’t open the door yourself. There’s a man standing near the door. You say to him: **Could you open the door, please?**

2. You phone Kate’s office, but somebody else answers. Kate isn’t there. You want to leave a message for her. You say: **Can you leave a message for her?**

3. You’re a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don’t know how to get there. You ask at your hotel: **Could you tell me how to get to the station?**

4. You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on. You say to the shop assistant: **Could I try these on?**

5. You have a car. You have to go the same way as Steve, who is on foot. You offer him a lift. You say to him: **Could you come to my car?**

**37.2 Read the situation and write a question using the word in brackets.**

1. You want to borrow your friend’s bike. What do you say to him?

   (think) **Do you think I could borrow your bike?**

2. You are staying at a friend’s house and you would like to make some coffee. What do you say?

   (all right) **Is it all right if I make some coffee?**

3. You’ve filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you. What do you ask?

   (think) **Could you check these forms?**

4. You want to leave work early. What do you ask your boss?

   (mind) **Could I leave work early?**

5. The woman in the next room is playing music. It’s very loud. You want her to turn it down.

   What do you say to her?

   (think) **Could you turn the music down?**

6. You’re on a train. The window is open and you’re feeling cold. You’d like to close it, but first you ask the woman next to you.

   (OK) **Could you close the window?**

7. You’re still on the train. The woman next to you has finished reading her paper, and you’d like to have a look at it. You ask her.

   (think) **Could I have a look at your paper?**

**37.3 What would you say in these situations?**

1. Paul has come to see you in your flat. You offer him something to eat.

   **YOU:** Would you like something to eat?

   **PAUL:** No, thank you. I’ve just eaten.

2. You need help to charge the battery in your camera. You ask Kate.

   **YOU:** I don’t know how to charge the battery.

   **KATE:** Sure. It’s easy. All you have to do is this.

3. You’re on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.

   **YOU:**

   **MAN:** Oh, that’s very kind of you. Thank you very much.

4. You’re the passenger in a car. Your friend is driving very fast. You ask her to slow down.

   **YOU:** You’re making me very nervous.

   **DRIVER:** Oh, I’m sorry. I didn’t realise I was going so fast.

5. You’ve finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill. You ask the waiter:

   **YOU:**

   **WAITER:** Sure. I’ll get it for you now.

6. A friend of yours is interested in one of your books. You invite him to borrow it.

   **FRIEND:** This looks very interesting.

   **YOU:** Yes, it’s a good book.
If I do ... and If I did ...

Compare these examples:

(1) USA: Shall we go by bus or by train?
JESS: If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

For Jess, it is possible that they will go by bus, so she says:

If we go by bus, it will be ...

(2) Lisa and Jess decide to go by train.
Later, Jess talks to Joe.

JOE: How are you going to travel?
JESS: We're going by train. If we went by bus, it would be cheaper, but the train is quicker.

Now Jess knows they are not going to travel by bus, so she says:

If we went by bus, it would be ... (not If we go ...)

When we imagine something that will not happen, or we don't expect that it will happen, we use if + past (if we went / if there was / if you found etc.).
But the meaning is not past:

- What would you do if you won a lot of money?
  (we don't really expect this to happen)
- If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?

For if ... was/were, see Unit 39C.

Compare if I find and if I found:

- I think I left my watch at your house. If you find it, can you call me?
  but If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

- I'd be very scared if somebody pointed a gun at me. (not if somebody would point)
- If we went by bus, it would be cheaper. (not If we would go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

- (from a formal letter) I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.

In the other part of the sentence (not the if-part) we use would (‘d) / wouldn’t:

- What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?
- I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I wouldn’t sleep.
- Would you mind if I used your phone?

Could and might are also possible:

- If I won a lot of money, I might buy a house. (= it is possible that I would buy a house)
- If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)
Exercises

38.1 What do you say in these situations?
1. Of course you don’t expect to win the lottery. Which do you say?
   a. If I win the lottery, I’ll buy a big house.  
   b. If I won the lottery, I’d buy a big house.  (b is correct)
2. You’re not going to sell your car because it’s old and not worth much. Which do you say?
   a. If I sell my car, I won’t get much money for it.  
   b. If I sold my car, I wouldn’t get much money for it.
3. You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say?
   a. If I see Sarah, I’ll tell her to call you.  
   b. If I saw Sarah, I’d tell her to call you.
4. You don’t expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say?
   a. What will you do if there is a fire in the building?  
   b. What would you do if there was a fire in the building?
5. You’ve never lost your passport. You can only imagine it.
   a. I don’t know what I’ll do if I lose my passport.  
   b. I don’t know what I’d do if I lost my passport.
6. Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?
   a. If you go right at the end of this street, you’ll see a bank on your left.  
   b. If you went right at the end of this street, you’d see a bank on your left.
7. You’re in a lift. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to press it. Which do you say?
   a. What will happen if somebody presses that button?  
   b. What would happen if somebody pressed that button?

38.2 Put the verb into correct form.
1. I’d be very scared if somebody pointed a gun at me.
2. I can’t afford to buy a car. If I bought a car, I’d have to borrow the money.
3. Don’t lend Amy your car. If she asks me, I wouldn’t lend her mine.
4. If the computer factory closed down, many people would lose their jobs.
5. I don’t think Gary and Emma will get married. I’d be amazed if they did.
6. What would you do if you were in a lift and it stopped between floors?
7. If somebody gave me £10,000, I’d have a very long holiday.

38.3 Write sentences beginning If ...
1. We’ve decided not to catch the 10.30 train. (arrive too early)
   If we caught the 10.30 train, we’d arrive too early.
2. Kevin is not going to do his driving test now. (pass)
   If he
3. We’ve decided not to stay at a hotel. (cost too much)
   If
4. Sally isn’t going to leave her job. (not / get another one)

5. We’ve decided not to invite Ben to the party. (have to invite his friends too)

6. I’m not going to tell him what happened. (not / believe me)

38.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1. If I won a lot of money, I’d buy a house.
2. I’d be very angry if
3. If you bought a car, you’d
4. I’d be surprised if
5. Would you mind if
Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can’t do this because she doesn’t know his number. She says:

If I knew his number, I would phone him.

Sarah says: If I knew his number … . This tells us that she doesn’t know his number. She is imagining the situation. The real situation is that she doesn’t know his number.

When we imagine a situation like this, we use if + past (if I knew / if you were / if we didn’t etc.). But the meaning is present, not past:

- There are many things I’d like to do if I had more time. (but I don’t have time)
- If I didn’t want to go to the party, I wouldn’t go. (but I want to go)
- We wouldn’t have any money if we didn’t work. (but we work)
- If you were in my position, what would you do?
- It’s a pity he can’t drive. It would be useful if he could.

We use the past in the same way after wish (I wish I knew / I wish you were etc.). We use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I wish I knew Paul’s phone number.
- (= I don’t know it and I regret this)
- Do you ever wish you could fly? (you can’t fly)
- It rains a lot here. I wish it didn’t rain so much.
- It’s very crowded here. I wish there weren’t so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I wish I didn’t have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

If I were / if I was

After if and wish, you can use were instead of was (if I were / I wish it were etc.).

If I was / I wish it was are also possible. So you can say:

- If I were you, I wouldn’t buy that coat. or If I was you, ...
- I’d go for a walk if it weren’t so cold. or ... if it wasn’t so cold.
- I wish she were here. or I wish she was here.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence or after wish:

- If I were rich, I would travel a lot. (not if I would be rich)
- Who would you ask if you needed help? (not if you would need)
- I wish I had something to read. (not I wish I would have)

Sometimes wish … would is possible: I wish you would listen. See Unit 41.

Could sometimes means ‘would be able to’ and sometimes ‘was/were able to’:

- She could get a better job if she could speak English.
- I wish I could help you.

(she could get = she would be able to get)
(if she could speak = if she was/were able to speak)
(I wish I could = I wish I was able)
Exercises

39.1 Put the verb into the correct form.
1 If I knew (I / know) his number, I would phone him.
2 I wouldn’t buy (I / not / buy) that coat if I were you.
3 (I / help) you if I could, but I’m afraid I can’t.
4 We don’t need a car at present, but we would need a car if (we / live)
in the country.
5 If we had the choice, (we / live) in the country.
6 This soup isn’t very good. (it / taste) better if it wasn’t so salty.
7 I wouldn’t mind living in England if the weather (be) better.
8 If I were you, (I / not / wait). (I / go) now.
9 You’re always tired. If (you / not / go) to bed so late every night,
you wouldn’t be tired all the time.
10 I think there are too many cars. If (there / not / be) so many cars,
(tthere / not / be) so much pollution.

39.2 Write a sentence with if ... for each situation.
1 We don’t see you very often because you live so far away.
   If you didn’t live so far away, we’d see you more often.
2 It’s a nice book but it’s too expensive, so I’m not going to buy it.
   I (go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn’t be tired all the time.
3 We don’t go out very often – we can’t afford it.
   We (go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn’t be tired all the time.
4 I can’t meet you tomorrow – I have to work late.
   If I (go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn’t be tired all the time.
5 It would be nice to have lunch outside but it’s raining, so we can’t.
   We (go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn’t be tired all the time.
6 I don’t want his advice, and that’s why I’m not going to ask for it.
   If I (go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn’t be tired all the time.

39.3 Write sentences beginning I wish ... .
1 I don’t know many people (and I’m lonely). I wish I knew more people.
2 I don’t have a computer (and I need one). I wish I had a computer.
3 Helen isn’t here (and I need to see her).
   I wish I could see her.
4 It’s cold (and I hate cold weather).
   I wish it weren’t so cold.
5 I live in a big city (and I don’t like it).
   I wish I lived in a small town.
6 I can’t go to the party (and I’d like to).
   I wish I could go.
7 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I’d like to sleep late).
   I wish I didn’t have to get up early.
8 I don’t know anything about cars (and my car has just broken down).
   I wish I knew more about cars.
9 I’m not feeling well (and it’s not nice).
   I wish I felt better.

39.4 Write your own sentences beginning I wish ...
1 (somewhere you’d like to be now – on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)
   I wish I were there.
2 (something you’d like to have – a motorbike, more friends, lots of money etc.)
   I wish I had ...
3 (something you’d like to be able to do – sing, travel more, cook etc.)
   I wish I could ...
4 (something you’d like to be – beautiful, strong, younger etc.)
   I wish I were ...
Study this example situation:

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn’t know this, so she didn’t go to visit him. They met a few days ago.
Rachel said:

If I’d known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.

Rachel said: If I’d known (= if I had known) you were in hospital. This tells us that she didn’t know.

We use if + had (‘d) ... to talk about the past (if I had known/been/done etc.):
- I didn’t see you when you passed me in the street. If I’d seen you, of course I would have said hello. (but I didn’t see you)
- I didn’t go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn’t been so tired. (but I was tired)
- If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn’t have walked into the wall. (but he wasn’t looking)
- The view was wonderful. If I’d had a camera with me, I would have taken some pictures. (but I didn’t have a camera)

Compare:
- I’m not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- I wasn’t hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

Do not use would in the if-part of the sentence. We use would in the other part of the sentence:
- If I had seen you, I would have said hello. (not if I would have seen you)

Note that ‘d can be would or had:
- If I’d seen you, (I’d seen = I had seen)
- I’d have said hello. (I’d have said = I would have said)

We use had (done) in the same way after wish. I wish something had happened = I am sorry that it didn’t happen:
- I wish I’d known that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn’t know)
- I feel sick. I wish I hadn’t eaten so much cake. (I ate too much cake)
- Do you wish you’d studied science instead of languages? (you didn’t study science)

Do not use would have ... after wish:
- The weather was cold when we were on holiday. I wish it had been warmer. (not I wish it would have been)

Compare would (do) and would have (done):
- If I’d gone to the party last night, I would be tired now. (I am not tired now – present)
- If I’d gone to the party last night, I would have met lots of people. (I didn’t meet lots of people – past)

Compare would have, could have and might have:
- If the weather hadn’t been so bad, we would have gone out.
- We could have gone out.
- (= we would have been able to go out)
- We might have gone out.
- (= perhaps we would have gone out)
Exercises

40.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. I didn’t see you when you passed me in the street. If I’d seen (I / see) you, I would have said (I / say) hello.

2. Sam got to the station just in time to catch the train to the airport. If (he / miss) the train, (he / miss) his flight too.

3. I’m glad that you reminded me about Rachel’s birthday. (I / forget) if (you / not / remind) me.

4. I wanted to send you an email, but I didn’t have your email address. If (I / have) your address, (I / send) you an email.

5. a. How was your trip? Was it good?
   b. It was OK, but (we / enjoy) it more if the weather (be) better.

6. I took a taxi to the hotel, but the traffic was bad. (it / be) quicker if (I / walk).

7. I’m not tired. If (I / be) tired, I’d go home now.

8. I wasn’t tired last night. If (I / be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

40.2 For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.

1. I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat anything.
   If I’d been hungry, I would have eaten something.

2. The accident happened because the road was icy.
   If the road (be) icy, the accident (happen).

3. I didn’t know that Joe had to get up early, so I didn’t wake him up.
   If I (know) that he had to get up early,

4. Unfortunately I lost my phone, so I couldn’t call you.
   If

5. Karen wasn’t injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.

6. You didn’t have breakfast – that’s why you’re hungry now.

7. I didn’t get a taxi because I didn’t have enough money.

40.3 Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.

1. You’ve eaten too much and now you feel sick.
   You say: I wish I hadn’t eaten so much.

2. There was a job advertised in the paper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong.
   You say: I wish I

3. When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
   You say:

4. You’ve painted the gate red. Now you think that red was the wrong colour.
   You say:

5. You are walking in the country. You’d like to take some pictures, but you didn’t bring your camera.
   You say:

6. You have some unexpected guests. They didn’t phone you first to say they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them.
   You say (to yourself):
You can say 'I wish you luck / all the best / a happy birthday' etc.:
- I wish you all the best in the future.
- I saw Mark before the exam and he wished me luck.

We say 'wish somebody something' (luck / a happy birthday etc.). But you cannot say 'I wish that something happens'. We use hope in this situation. For example:
- I'm sorry you're not well. I hope you feel better soon. (not I wish you feel)

Compare I wish and I hope:
- I wish you a pleasant stay here.
- I hope you have a pleasant stay here. (not I wish you have)

We also use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it. When we use wish in this way, we use the past (knew/lived etc.), but the meaning is present:
- I wish I knew what to do about the problem. (I don't know and I regret this)
- I wish you didn't have to go so soon. (you have to go)
- Do you wish you lived near the sea? (you don't live near the sea)
- Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I was going too. (I'm not going)

To say that we regret something in the past, we use wish + had ... (had known / had said) etc.:
- I wish I'd known about the party. I would have gone if I'd known. (I didn't know)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I said it)

For more examples, see Units 39 and 40.

I wish I could (do something) = I regret that I cannot do it:
- I'm sorry I have to go. I wish I could stay longer. (but I can't)
- I've met that man before. I wish I could remember his name. (but I can't)

I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:
- I hear the party was great. I wish I could have gone. (but I couldn't go)

You can say 'I wish (somebody) would (do something)'. For example:

> I wish it would stop raining.

It's been raining all day. Tanya doesn't like it. She says:

> I wish it would stop raining.

Tanya would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

We use I wish ... would when we would like something to happen or change. Usually, the speaker doesn't expect this to happen.

We often use I wish ... would to complain about a situation:
- The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish somebody would answer it.
- I wish you'd do (= you would do) something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use I wish ... wouldn't ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:
- I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me. (= please don't interrupt me)

We use I wish ... would ... to say that we want something to happen. But we do not use I wish ... would ... to say how we would like things to be. Compare:
- I wish Sarah would come. (= I want her to come)
  - but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now. (not I wish Sarah would be)
- I wish somebody would buy me a car.
  - but I wish I had a car. (not I wish I would have)
Exercises

41.1 Put in wish(ed) or hope(d).
1 I ___ wish ___ you a pleasant stay here.
2 Enjoy your holiday. I __________ you have a great time.
3 Goodbye. I __________ you all the best.
4 We said goodbye to each other and __________ each other luck.
5 We’re going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I __________ the weather is nice.
6 I __________ you luck in your new job. I __________ it works out well for you.

41.2 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish ... would ...
1 It’s raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
   You say: I wish it would stop raining.
2 You’re waiting for Jane. She’s late and you’re getting impatient.
   You say to yourself: I wish _______
3 You’re looking for a job – so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
   You say: I wish somebody _______
4 You can hear a baby crying. It’s been crying for a long time and you’re trying to study.
   You say: _______
5 Brian has been wearing the same clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes.
   You say to Brian: _______

For the following situations, write sentences with I wish ... wouldn’t ...
6 Your friend drives very fast. You don’t like this.
   You say to your friend: I wish you _______
7 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
   You say to Joe: _______
8 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don’t like this.
   You say: _______

41.3 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 I wish Sarah would be here now. __________ I wish Sarah were here now.
2 I wish you would listen to me.
3 I wish I would have more free time.
4 I wish our flat would be a bit bigger.
5 I wish the weather would change.
6 I wish you wouldn’t complain all the time.
7 I wish everything wouldn’t be so expensive.

41.4 Put the verb into the correct form.
1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I __ hadn’t __ said __ it. (I / not / say)
2 I’m fed up with this rain. I wish it __ would __ stop __. (it / stop)
3 It’s a difficult question. I wish ___________ the answer. (I / know)
4 I should have listened to you. I wish ___________ your advice. (I / take)
5 You’re lucky to be going away. I wish ___________ with you. (I / can / come)
6 I have no energy at the moment. I wish ___________ so tired. (I / not / be)
7 Aren’t they ready yet? I wish ___________. (they / hurry up)
8 It would be nice to stay here longer. I wish ___________ to go now.
   (we / not / have)
9 When we were in London last year, we didn’t have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
   I wish ___________ longer. (we / can / stay)
10 It’s freezing today. I wish ___________ so cold. I hate cold weather.
   (it / not / be)
11 Joe still doesn’t know what he wants to do. I wish ___________. (he / decide)
12 I really didn’t enjoy the party. I wish ___________. (we / not / go)
Passive 1 (is done / was done)

Study this example:

This house **was built** in 1961.

**Was built** is passive.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **built** this house **in 1961.** (active)

This house **was built** in 1961. (passive)

When we use an active verb, we say **what the subject does:**

- My grandfather was a builder. **He built** this house in 1961.
- It's a big company. **It employs** two hundred people.

When we use a passive verb, we say **what happens to the subject:**

- 'How old is this house?' **It was built** in 1961.
- Two hundred people are employed by the company.

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

- A lot of money **was stolen** in the robbery. (somebody stole it, but we don't know who)
- Is this room **cleaned** every day? (does somebody clean it? – it's not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use **by:**

- This house was built **by my grandfather.**
- Two hundred people are employed **by the company.**

The passive is be (is/was etc.) + past participle (done/cleaned/seen etc.):

- (be) done
- (be) cleaned
- (be) damaged
- (be) built
- (be) seen etc.

For irregular past participles (done/seen/known etc.), see Appendix 1.

Study the active and passive forms of the present simple and past simple:

**Present simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clean(s) / see(s) etc.</td>
<td>am/is/are + cleaned/seen etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

- Somebody **cleans this room** every day.
- This room **is cleaned** every day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Many accidents are caused by careless driving.</td>
<td>How is this word pronounced?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cleaned/saw etc.</td>
<td>was/were + cleaned/seen etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

- Somebody **cleaned this room** yesterday.
- This room **was cleaned** yesterday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We were woken up by a loud noise during the night.</td>
<td>How much money was stolen in the robbery?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Did you go to the party?' 'No, I <strong>wasn't invited.</strong>'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

**42.1** Complete the sentences using one of these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cause</th>
<th>damage</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>invite</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>surround</td>
<td>translate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Many accidents _are caused_ by dangerous driving.
2. Cheese _is made_ from milk.
3. The roof of the building _has been surrounded_ in a storm a few days ago.
4. You _are invited_ to the wedding. Why didn’t you go?
5. A cinema is a place where films _are shown_.
6. In the United States, elections for president _were held_ every four years.
7. Originally the book _was translated_ into English, and a few years ago it _was published_.
8. Although we were driving fast, we _were overtaken_ by a lot of other cars.
9. You can’t see the house from the road. It _is hidden_ by trees.

**42.2** Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

1. Ask about glass. (how / make?) _How is glass made?_
2. Ask about television. (when / invent?) _When was television invented?_
3. Ask about mountains. (how / form?) _How were mountains formed?_
4. Ask about antibiotics. (when / discover?) _When were antibiotics discovered?_
5. Ask about silver. (what / use for?) _What is silver used for?_

**42.3** Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

1. It’s a big factory. Five hundred people _are employed_ (employ) there.
2. _Did_ somebody _clean_ (somebody / clean) this room yesterday?
3. Water _covers_ (cover) most of the earth’s surface.
4. How much of the earth’s surface _is covered_ (cover) by water?
5. The park gates _are locked_ (lock) at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
6. The letter _was sent_ (send) a week ago and it _arrived_ (arrive) yesterday.
7. The boat hit a rock and _sank_ (sink) quickly. Fortunately everybody _were rescued_ (rescue).
8. Robert’s parents _died_ (die) when he was very young. He and his sister _were brought up_ (bring up) by their grandparents.
9. I was born in London, but I _grew up_ (grow up) in Canada.
10. While I was on holiday, my camera _was stolen_ (steal) from my hotel room.
11. While I was on holiday, my camera _disappeared_ (disappear) from my hotel room.
12. Why _did Sue resign_ (Sue / resign) from her job? Didn’t she enjoy it?
13. Why _did Ben burn_ (Ben / fire) his job? Did he do something wrong?
14. The company is not independent. It _is owned_ (own) by a much larger company.
15. I saw an accident last night. Somebody _called_ (call) an ambulance but nobody _was injured_ (injure), so the ambulance _did not need_ (not / need).
16. Where _did you take_ (you / take) these pictures? In London?
17. Sometimes it’s quite noisy living here, but it’s not a problem for me – I _am not bothered_ (not / bother) by it.

**42.4** Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using _somebody, they, people_ etc., write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody cleans the room every day. _The room is cleaned every day._
2. They cancelled all flights because of fog. _All flights were cancelled because of fog._
3. People don’t use this road much. _This road is not used much._
4. Somebody accused me of stealing money. _I was accused of stealing money._
5. How do people learn languages? _Languages are learned._
6. People warned us not to go out alone. _We were warned not to go out alone._
Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

Study the following active and passive forms:

**Infinitive**

_active_ (to) _do/clean/see_ etc.  Somebody _will clean_ this room later.

_passive_ (to) _be + done/cleaned/seen_ etc.  This room _will be cleaned_ later.

- The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late.
- A mystery is something that can't be explained.
- The music was very loud and could be heard from a long way away.
- A new supermarket is going to be built next year.
- Please go away. I want to be left alone.

**Perfect infinitive**

_active_ (to) _have + done/cleaned/seen_ etc.  Somebody _should have cleaned_ the room.

_passive_ (to) _have been + done/cleaned/seen_ etc.  The room _should have been cleaned._

- I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
- If you had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen.
- There were some problems at first, but they seem to have been solved.

**Present perfect**

_active_ _have/has + done_ etc.  The room looks nice. Somebody _has cleaned_ it.

_passive_ _have/has been + done_ etc.  The room looks nice. _It has been cleaned._

- Have you heard? The trip has been cancelled.
- Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- 'Are you going to the party?' 'No, I haven't been invited.'

**Past perfect**

_active_ _had + done_ etc.  The room looked nice. Somebody _had cleaned_ it.

_passive_ _had been + done_ etc.  The room looked nice. _It had been cleaned._

- The vegetables didn't taste good. They had been cooked too long.
- The car was three years old, but hadn't been used very much.

**Present continuous**

_active_ _am/is/are + (do/doing)_  Somebody _is cleaning_ the room at the moment.

_passive_ _am/is/are + being (done)_  The room _is being cleaned_ at the moment.

- There's somebody walking behind us. I think we are being followed.
- (in a shop) 'Can I help you?' 'No, thanks. I'm being served.'

**Past continuous**

_active_ _was/were + (do)ing_  Somebody _was cleaning_ the room when I arrived.

_passive_ _was/were + being (done)_  The room _was being cleaned_ when I arrived.

- There was somebody walking behind us. I think we were being followed.
Exercises

43.1 What do these words mean? Use it can … or it can’t … . Use a dictionary if necessary.

If something is
1 washable, it can be washed .
2 unbreakable, it
3 edible, it
4 unusable, it
5 invisible, it
6 portable, it

43.2 Complete these sentences with the following verbs (in the correct form):

arrest, carry, cause, do, make, repair, send, spend, wake up

Sometimes you need have (might have, should have etc.).

1 The situation is serious. Something must be done before it’s too late.
2 I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
3 A decision will not be made until the next meeting.
4 Do you think that more money should be spent on education?
5 This road is in very bad condition. It should have been repaired a long time ago.
6 The injured man couldn’t walk and had to be taken to hospital.
7 I told the hotel receptionist I wanted to be sent to my room at 6.30 the next morning.
8 If you hadn’t pushed the policeman, you wouldn’t have been arrested.
9 It’s not certain how the fire started, but it might have been started by an electrical fault.

43.3 Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody or they etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody has cleaned the room.
   The room has been cleaned.
2 Somebody is using the computer right now.
   The computer is being used.
3 I didn’t realise that somebody was recording our conversation.
   I didn’t realise that it was being recorded.
4 When we got to the stadium, we found that they had cancelled the game.
   When we got to the stadium, we found that it had been cancelled.
5 They are building a new ring road round the city.

6 They have built a new hospital near the airport.

43.4 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1 There’s somebody behind us. (I think / we / follow) I think we’re being followed.
2 This room looks different. (you / paint / the walls?) Have you painted the walls?
3 My car has disappeared. (it / steal!) It
4 My umbrella has disappeared. (somebody / take) Somebody
5 Sam gets a higher salary now. (he / promote) He
6 Ann can’t use her office this week. (it / redecorate) It
7 There was a problem with the photocopier yesterday, but now it’s OK.
   (it / work) It
8 When I went into the room, I saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
   (the furniture / move) The
9 A neighbour of mine disappeared six months ago. (he / not / see / since then)
   He
10 I wonder how Jane is these days. (I / not / see / for ages)
   I
11 A friend of mine was mugged on his way home a few nights ago. (you / ever / mug?)
Passive 3

I was offered ... / we were given ... etc.

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, give:

- Somebody gave the police the information. (= somebody gave the information to the police)

So it is possible to make two passive sentences:

- The police were given the information. or
- The information was given to the police.

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

ask offer pay show teach tell

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the person:

- I've been offered the job, but I don't think I'll accept it. (= they have offered me the job)
- You will be given plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)
- I didn't see the original document but I was shown a copy. (= somebody showed me.)
- Tim has an easy job - he's paid a lot of money to do very little. (= they pay him a lot)

I don't like being ...

The passive of doing/seeing etc. is being done / being seen etc. Compare:

active I don't like people telling me what to do.

passive I don't like being told what to do.

- I remember being taken to the zoo when I was a child. (= I remember somebody taking me to the zoo)
- Steve hates being kept waiting. (= he hates people keeping him waiting)
- We managed to climb over the wall without being seen. (= without anybody seeing us)

I was born ...

We say 'I was born ...' (not I am born):

- I was born in Chicago. past
- Where were you born? (not Where are you born?)

but

- How many babies are born every day? present

Get

You can use get instead of be in the passive:

- There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt. (= nobody was hurt)
- I don't get invited to many parties. (= I'm not invited)
- I'm surprised Liz didn't get offered the job. (= Liz wasn't offered the job)

We use get only when things happen. For example, you cannot use get in these sentences:

- Jessica is liked by everybody. (not gets liked - this is not a 'happening')
- Peter was a mystery man. Very little was known about him. (not got known)

We use get mainly in informal spoken English. You can use be in all situations.

We also use get in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

get married, get divorced  get dressed (= put on your clothes)
get lost (= not know where you are)  get changed (= change your clothes)
Exercises

44.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning in the way shown.
1 They didn’t give me the information I needed.
   I wasn’t given the information I needed.
2 They asked me some difficult questions at the interview.
   I
3 Amy’s colleagues gave her a present when she retired.
   Amy
4 Nobody told me about the meeting.
   I wasn’t
5 How much will they pay you for your work?
   How much will you
6 I think they should have offered Tom the job.
   I think Tom
7 Has anybody shown you what to do?
   Have you

44.2 Complete the sentences using being + the following verbs (in the correct form):
give invite keep knock down stick treat

1 Steve hates ...being kept... waiting.
2 We went to the party without ...
3 I like giving presents and I also like ...
4 It’s a busy road and I don’t like crossing it. I’m afraid of ...
5 I’m an adult. I don’t like ...
6 You can’t do anything about ...

44.3 When were they born? Choose five of these people and write a sentence for each.
(Two of them were born in the same year.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ludwig van Beethoven</th>
<th>Mahatma Gandhi</th>
<th>Elvis Presley</th>
<th>1452</th>
<th>1869</th>
<th>1935</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
<td>Michael Jackson</td>
<td>William Shakespeare</td>
<td>1564</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galileo</td>
<td>Martin Luther King</td>
<td>Leonardo da Vinci</td>
<td>1770</td>
<td>1929</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Walt Disney was born in 1901.
2
3
4
5
6
7 And you? I

44.4 Complete the sentences using get/got + the following verbs (in the correct form):
ask damage hurt pay steal sting stop use

1 There was a fight at the party, but nobody ...got hurt...
2 Alex ...by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
3 These tennis courts don’t ...very often. Not many people want to play.
4 I used to have a bicycle, but it ...a few months ago.
5 Rachel works hard but doesn’t ...very much.
6 Last night I ...by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights ...on my car wasn’t working.
7 Please pack these things very carefully. I don’t want them to ...
8 People often want to know what my job is. I ...that question a lot.
It is said that ... He is said to ...
He is supposed to ...

Study this example situation:

George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

- **It is said that** he is 108 years old.
- **He is said to be** 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: 'People say that he is 108 years old.'

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

- alleged
- believed
- considered
- expected
- known
- reported
- thought
- understood

Compare the two structures:

- **It is said that** she runs ten miles a day.
  - **She is said to run** ten miles a day.

- The police are looking for a missing boy.
  - **It is believed that** the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.
  - **The boy is believed to be wearing** a white sweater and blue jeans.

- The strike started three weeks ago.
  - **It is expected that** the strike will end soon.
  - **The strike is expected to end** soon.

- A friend of mine has been arrested.
  - **It is alleged that** he hit a policeman.
  - **He is alleged to have hit** a policeman.

- The two houses belong to the same family.
  - **It is said that** there is a secret tunnel between them.
  - **There is said to be** a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

- **It is reported that** two people were injured in the explosion.
  - **Two people are reported to have been injured** in the explosion.

(Be) supposed to

Sometimes (it is) supposed to ... = (it is) said to ...

- I want to see that film. It's supposed to be good. (= it is said to be good)
- Fireworks are supposed to have been invented in China. Is it true?

But sometimes supposed to has a different meaning. We use supposed to to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

- The plan is supposed to be a secret, but everybody seems to know about it. (= the plan is intended to be a secret)
- What are you doing at work? You're supposed to be on holiday. (= you arranged to be on holiday)
- Our guests were supposed to come at 7.30, but they were late.
- Jane was supposed to phone me last night, but she didn't.
- I'd better hurry. I'm supposed to be meeting Chris in ten minutes.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advisable:

- You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
- Jeff is much better after his illness, but he's still not supposed to do any heavy work.
Exercises

45.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1. It is expected that the strike will end soon. The strike is expected to end soon.
2. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.
   The weather is
3. It is believed that the thieves got in through a window in the roof.
   The thieves
4. It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.
   Many people
5. It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall.
   The prisoner
6. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.
   The man
7. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.
   The building
8. a. It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.
    The company
   b. It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
    The company
   c. It is expected that the company will make a loss this year.
    The company

45.2 There are a lot of rumours about Alan. Here are some of the things people say about him:

1. Alan speaks ten languages.
2. He knows a lot of famous people.
3. He is very rich.
4. He has twelve children.
5. He was an actor when he was younger.

Nobody is sure whether these things are true. Write sentences about Alan using supposed to.

1. Alan is supposed to speak ten languages.
2. He
3.
4.
5.

45.3 Complete the sentences using supposed to be + the following:

on a diet a flower my friend a joke a secret working

1. How is it that everybody seems to know about the plan? It is supposed to be a secret.
2. You shouldn’t criticise me all the time. You
3. I shouldn’t be eating this cake really. I
4. I’m sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It
5. What’s this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it
6. You shouldn’t be reading the paper now. You

45.4 Write sentences with supposed to + the following verbs:

block depart park phone start

Use the negative (not supposed to) where necessary.

1. You’re not supposed to park here. It’s private parking only.
2. We’re supposed to work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
3. Oh, I’m supposed to have seen Helen last night, but I completely forgot.
4. This door is a fire exit. You’re supposed to use it.
5. My flight was supposed to leave at 11.30, but it was an hour late.

Additional exercises 22–24 (pages 314–15)
Have something done

Study this example situation:

The roof of Lisa’s house was damaged in a storm. So she called a builder, and yesterday a man came and repaired it.

Lisa had the roof repaired yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn’t repair it herself.

We use **have something done** to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us. Compare:

- Lisa repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
- Lisa had the roof repaired. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)
- ‘Did you make those curtains yourself?’ ‘Yes, I enjoy making things.’
- ‘Did you have those curtains made?’ ‘No, I made them myself.’

Be careful with word order. The **past participle** (*repaired/cut* etc.) is after the **object**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lisa had</td>
<td>the roof</td>
<td>repaired yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where did you have</td>
<td>your hair</td>
<td>cut?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your hair looks nice. Have you had</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>cut?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our neighbour has just had</td>
<td>a garage</td>
<td>built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are having</td>
<td>the house</td>
<td>painted this week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you have</td>
<td>your car</td>
<td>serviced?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think you should have</td>
<td>that coat</td>
<td>cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like having</td>
<td>my picture</td>
<td>taken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Get something done

You can also say ‘**get something done**’ instead of ‘**have something done**’:

- When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= have the roof repaired)
- I think you should get your hair cut really short.

Sometimes **have something done** has a different meaning. For example:

- Paul and Karen had their bags stolen while they were travelling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags. ‘They had their bags stolen’ means only: ‘Their bags were stolen’.

With this meaning, we use **have something done** to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings. Often what happens is not nice:

- Gary had his nose broken in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
- Have you ever had your bike stolen?
# Exercises

## 46.1
Tick (✓) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Picture</th>
<th>(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.</th>
<th>(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SARAH</td>
<td>![Image of a woman with scissors and a man with long hair]</td>
<td>![Image of a man with a hairdresser]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>BILL</td>
<td>![Image of a man with a hair dryer]</td>
<td>![Image of a man cutting hair]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>JOHN</td>
<td>![Image of a man cleaning a mirror]</td>
<td>![Image of a man cleaning shoes]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SUE</td>
<td>![Image of a woman taking a picture]</td>
<td>![Image of a woman fixing her hair]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 46.2
Put the words in the correct order.

1. had / a few weeks ago / the house / we / painted
   - We had the house painted a few weeks ago.
2. serviced / her car / Sarah / once a year / has
   - Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3. twelve pounds / have / cleaned / it / my suit / cost / to
   - It cost twelve pounds to have my suit cleaned.
4. my eyes / I / two years ago / had / tested / the last time / was
   - I had my eyes tested two years ago.
5. had / in the kitchen / fitted / some new cupboards / we've
   - We've fitted some new cupboards in the kitchen.
6. as soon as possible / need / translated / we / to get / this document
   - We need this document translated as soon as possible.

## 46.3
Write sentences in the way shown.

1. Lisa didn’t repair the roof herself. She _had it repaired._
2. I didn’t cut my hair myself. I _had it cut._
3. We didn’t clean the carpets ourselves. We _had them cleaned._
4. John didn’t build that wall himself. He _had it built._
5. I didn’t deliver the flowers myself. I _had them delivered._

## 46.4
Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use the structure **have something done**.

1. **We’re having the house painted** (we / the house / paint) this week.
2. I lost my key. I’ll have to _get another key._
3. When was the last time (you / your hair / cut)?
4. We’ve had the garage _built._
5. a: What’s happening in your garden?
   b: Oh, the garage _will be built._
6. a: Have the washing machine _been fixed_?
   b: Not yet. There’s someone coming to look at it next week.
7. If you want to wear earrings, why don’t you _have your ears pierced_?

Now use ‘**have something done**’ with its second meaning (see Section D).

8. Gary was in a fight last night. He _had his nose broken_.
9. Did I tell you about Jane? (she / her credit cards / steal).
10. Security was very strict at the airport. (we all / our bags / search).
Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)  

Study this example situation:

You want to tell somebody what Paul said. There are two ways of doing this:

- You can repeat Paul’s words (direct speech):
  Paul said ‘I’m feeling ill.’

- Or you can use reported speech:
  Paul said that he was feeling ill.

Compare:

- **direct** Paul said ‘I am feeling ill.’
- **reported** Paul said that he was feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul said that ... / I told her that ... etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

- Paul said that he was feeling ill.
- I told Lisa that I didn’t have any money.

You can leave out that. So you can say:

- Paul said he was feeling ill.  
  or  
  Paul said he was feeling ill.

In general, the present form in direct speech changes to the past form in reported speech:

- am/is → was  
- do/does → did  
- will → would  
- are → were  
- have/has → had  
- can → could  
- want/like/know/go etc. → wanted/liked/knew/went etc.

Compare direct speech and reported speech:

You met Anna. Here are some of the things she said in direct speech:

- My parents are fine.
- I’m going to learn to drive.
- I want to buy a car.
- John has a new job.
- I can’t come to the party on Friday.
- I don’t have much free time.
- I’m going away for a few days.
- I’ll phone you when I get back.

Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use reported speech:

- Anna said that her parents were fine.
- She said that she was going to learn to drive.
- She said that she wanted to buy a car.
- She said that John had a new job.
- She said that she couldn’t come to the party on Friday.
- She said she didn’t have much free time.
- She said that she was going away for a few days and would phone me when she got back.

The past simple (did/saw/knew etc.) can usually stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the past perfect (had done / had seen / had known etc.):

- **direct** Paul said ‘I woke up feeling ill, so I didn’t go to work.’  
- **reported** Paul said (that) he woke up feeling ill, so he didn’t go to work.  
  or  
  Paul said (that) he had woken up feeling ill, so he hadn’t gone to work.
Exercises

Yesterday you met a friend of yours, Steve. You hadn’t seen him for a long time. Here are some of the things Steve said to you:

1. I’m living in London.
2. My father isn’t very well.
3. Rachel and Mark are getting married next month.
4. My sister has had a baby.
5. I don’t know what Joe is doing.
6. I saw Helen at a party in June and she seemed fine.
7. I haven’t seen Amy recently.
8. I’m not enjoying my job very much.
9. You can come and stay at my place if you’re ever in London.
10. My car was stolen a few days ago.
11. I want to go on holiday, but I can’t afford it.
12. I’ll tell Chris I saw you.

Later that day you tell another friend what Steve said. Use reported speech.

1. Steve said that he was living in London.
2. He said that
3. He
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
11.
12.

Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.

A: It’s quite a long way from the hotel to the station.
B: Is it? The man on the reception desk said it was only five minutes’ walk.

A: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
B: Is she? I saw her a few days ago and she said she

A: Sarah gets on fine with Paul.
B: Does she? Last week you said each other.

A: Joe knows lots of people.
B: That’s not what he told me. He said anyone.

A: Jane will be here next week.
B: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said away.

A: I’m going out tonight.
B: Are you? I thought you said home.

A: John speaks French quite well.
B: Does he? He told me any other languages.

A: I haven’t seen Ben recently.
B: That’s strange. He told me last weekend.
Reported speech 2

It is not always necessary to change the verb in reported speech. If the situation is still the same, you do not need to change the verb to the past. For example:

- direct  Paul said ‘My new job is boring.’
- reported Paul said that his new job is boring.
  (The situation is still the same. His job is still boring now.)

- direct  Helen said ‘I want to go to Canada next year.’
- reported Helen told me that she wants to go to Canada next year.
  (Helen still wants to go to Canada next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

- Paul said that his new job was boring.
- Helen told me that she wanted to go to Canada next year.

But if the situation has changed or finished, you must use a past verb:

- Paul left the room suddenly. He said he had to go. (not has to go)

You need to use a past form when there is a difference between what was said and what is really true.

For example:

You met Sonia a few days ago.

She said: Joe is in hospital.

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:

Hi, Joe. I didn’t expect to see you. Sonia said you were in hospital.
(not ‘Sonia said you are in hospital’, because clearly he is not)

Say and tell

If you say who somebody is talking to, use tell:

- Sonia told me that you were in hospital. (not Sonia said me)
- What did you tell the police? (not say the police)

Otherwise use say:

- Sonia said that you were in hospital. (not Sonia told that …)
- What did you say?

But you can ‘say something to somebody’:

- Ann said goodbye to me and left. (not Ann said me goodbye)
- What did you say to the police?

Tell/ask somebody to do something

We also use the infinitive (to do / to be etc.) in reported speech, especially with tell and ask (for orders and requests):

- direct  ‘Drink plenty of water,’ the doctor said to me.
- reported The doctor told me to drink plenty of water.

- direct  ‘Don’t be late,’ I said to Joe.
- reported I told Joe not to be late.

- direct  ‘Can you help me, please,’ Jackie said to me.
- reported Jackie asked me to help her.

You can also say ‘Somebody said (not) to do something’:

- Paul said not to worry about him. (but not Paul said me)
Exercises

48.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you:

I’ve never been to the United States.
I don’t have any brothers or sisters.
I can’t drive.
I don’t like fish.
Jane has a very well-paid job.
I’m working tomorrow evening.
Jane is a friend of mine.
Dave is lazy.

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

Sarah

1. Dave works very hard. 
2. Let’s have fish for dinner. 
3. I’m going to buy a car. 
4. Jane is always short of money. 
6. I think New York is a great place. 
7. Let’s go out tomorrow evening. 
8. I’ve never spoken to Jane.

You

But you said he was lazy.

But

48.2 Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

1. Ann _____________ goodbye to me and left.
2. _____________ us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
3. Don’t just stand there! _____________ something!
4. I wonder where Sue is. She _____________ she would be here at 8 o’clock.
5. Dan _____________ me that he was bored with his job.
6. The doctor _____________ that I should rest for at least a week.
7. Don’t _____________ anybody what I _____________ . It’s a secret just between us.
8. ‘Did she _____________ you what happened?’ ‘No, she didn’t _____________ anything to me.’
9. Gary couldn’t help me. He _____________ me to ask Chris.
10. Gary couldn’t help me. He _____________ to ask Chris.

48.3 The following sentences are direct speech:

Mind your own business.
Don’t worry, Sue.
Could you get me a paper?

Don’t wait for me if I’m late.
Please slow down!
Can you open your bag, please?

Will you marry me?
Hurry up!

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1. Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I _____________ him to hurry up _____________ .
2. Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked _____________ 
3. Sue was nervous about the situation. I _____________ 
4. I couldn’t move the piano alone, so I _____________ 
5. The security guard looked at me suspiciously and _____________ 
6. Tom was going to the shop, so I _____________ 
7. The man started asking me personal questions, so I _____________ 
8. John was in love with Marianne, so he _____________ 
9. I didn’t want to delay Helen, so I _____________ .

→ Additional exercise 25 (page 316)
Questions 1

In questions we usually put the subject after the first verb:

\[
\text{subject + verb} \quad \text{verb + subject}
\]

- Tom will → will Tom?
- you have → have you?
- the house was → was the house?

Remember that the subject comes after the first verb:
- Is Katherine working today? (not Is working Katherine)

In present simple questions, we use **do**/**does**:

- you live → **do** you live?
- the film starts → **does** the film start?

In past simple questions, we use **did**:

- you sold → **did** you sell?
- the train stopped → **did** the train stop?

But do not use **do**/**does**/**did** if **who**/**what** etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

**who object**

Emma phoned **somebody**.

Who **did** Emma phone?

**who subject**

**somebody** phoned Emma.

Who **phoned** Emma?

In these examples, **who**/**what** etc. is the subject:
- Who wants something to eat? (not Who does want)
- What happened to you last night? (not What did happen)
- How many people came to the meeting? (not did come)
- Which bus goes to the centre? (not does go)

Note the position of prepositions in questions beginning **Who/What/Which/Where** ... ?:
- Who do you want to speak to?
- Which job has Tina applied for?
- What was the weather like yesterday?
- Where are you from?

You can use **preposition + whom** in formal style:
- To whom do you wish to speak?

Isn't it ... ? / Didn't you ... ? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:
- Didn't you hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.
- 'Haven't we met before?' 'Yes, I think we have.'

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:
- Don't you want to go?  Yes. (= Yes, I want to go)
- No. (= No, I don't want to go)

Note the word order in negative questions beginning **Why** ... ?:
- Why don't we eat out tonight? (not Why we don't eat)
- Why wasn't Emma at work yesterday? (not Why Emma wasn't)
Exercises

49.1 Ask Joe questions. (Look at his answers before you write the questions.)

1. (where / live?) Where do you live?
   - In Manchester.
2. (born there?) __________________________
   - No, I was born in London.
3. (married?) ____________________________
   - Yes.
4. (how long / married?) ___________________
   - 17 years.
5. (children?) ____________________________
   - Yes, two boys.
6. (how old / they?) _______________________
   - 12 and 15.
7. (what / do?) __________________________
   - I'm a journalist.
8. (what / wife / do?) _____________________
   - She's a doctor.

Joe

49.2 Make questions with who or what.

1. Somebody hit me.
   - Who hit you?
2. I hit somebody.
   - Who did you hit?
3. Somebody paid the bill.
   - Who paid the bill?
4. Something happened.
   - What happened?
5. Diane said something.
   - What did Diane say?
6. This book belongs to somebody.
   - What does this book belong to?
7. Somebody lives in that house.
   - Who lives in that house?
8. I fell over something.
   - What did you fall over?
9. Something fell off the shelf.
   - What fell off the shelf?
10. This word means something.
    - What does this word mean?
11. I borrowed the money from somebody.
    - Who did you borrow money from?
12. I'm worried about something.
    - What are you worried about?

49.3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (when / was / built / this house) When was this house built?
2. (how / cheese / is / made)
3. (when / invented / the computer / was)
4. (why / Sue / working / isn't / today)
5. (what time / coming / your friends / are)
6. (why / was / cancelled / the trip)
7. (where / your mother / was / born)
8. (why / you / to the party / didn't / come)
9. (how / the accident / did / happen)
10. (why / this machine / doesn't / work)

49.4 Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

1. A: We won't see Lisa this evening.
   B: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) Isn't she coming out with us?
   B: Why? (you / not / like / him?)
3. A: Don't go and see that film.
   B: Why not? (it / not / good?)
4. A: I'll have to borrow some money.
   B: Why? (you / not / have / any?)
Questions 2 (Do you know where ...? / He asked me where ...)

Do you know where ...? / I don’t know why ... / Could you tell me what ...? etc.
We say: Where has Tom gone?

but Do you know where Tom has gone? (not Do you know where has Tom gone?)

When the question (Where has Tom gone?) is part of a longer sentence (Do you know ...? / I don’t know ... / Can you tell me ...? etc.), the word order changes. We say:

- What time is it?
- Who are those people?
- Where can I find Louise?
- How much will it cost?
- Do you know what time it is?
- I don’t know who those people are.
- Can you tell me where I can find Louise?
- Do you have any idea how much it will cost?

Be careful with do/does/did questions. We say:

- What time does the film start?
- What do you mean?
- Why did she leave early?
- Do you know what time the film starts?
- Please explain what you mean.
- I wonder why she left early.

Use if or whether where there is no other question word (what, why etc.): Do you know if anybody saw you?

He asked me where ... (reported questions)
The same changes in word order happen in reported questions. Compare:

- direct The police officer said to us ‘Where are you going?’
- reported The police officer asked us where we were going.
- direct Clare said ‘What time do the banks close?’
- reported Clare wanted to know what time the banks closed.

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (were, closed etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had an interview for a job and these were some of the questions the interviewer asked you:

Are you willing to travel? Why did you apply for the job?

What do you do in your spare time? Can you speak any other languages?

How long have you been working in your present job? Do you have a driving licence?

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use reported speech:

- She asked if (or whether) I was willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what I did in my spare time.
- She asked how long I had been working in my present job.
- She asked why I had applied for the job. (or ... why I applied)
- She wanted to know if (or whether) I could speak any other languages.
- She asked if (or whether) I had a driving licence.

Reported speech → Units 47–48
50.1 Which is right? Tick (√) the correct alternative.

1 a Do you know what time the film starts? √
   b Do you know what time does the film start?
   c Do you know what time the film starts?

2 a Why Amy does get up so early every day?
   b Why Amy gets up so early every day?
   c Why does Amy get up so early every day?

3 a I want to know what this word means.
   b I want to know what does this word mean.
   c I want to know what means this word.

4 a I can’t remember where did I park the car.
   b I can’t remember where I parked the car.
   c I can’t remember where I did park the car.

5 a Why you didn’t phone me yesterday?
   b Why didn’t you phone me yesterday?
   c Why you not phoned me yesterday?

6 a Do you know where does Helen work?
   b Do you know where Helen does work?
   c Do you know where Helen works?

7 a How much it costs to park here?
   b How much does it cost to park here?
   c How much it does cost to park here?

8 a Tell me what you want.
   b Tell me what you do want.
   c Tell me what do you want.

50.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (don’t / Tom / where / know / gone / has) I don’t know where Tom has gone.

2 (is / to the airport / far / it) How don’t know where Tom has gone?

3 (wonder / is / how / old / Tom) I don’t know where Tom has gone.

4 (Lisa / on holiday / going / is) When don’t know where Tom has gone?

5 (tell / the post office / you / me / is / where) Could?

6 (in the accident / injured / anyone / don’t / whether / know / was) I.

7 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you) Do?

50.3 You have been away for a while and have just come back to your home town. You meet Tony, a friend of yours. He asks you a lot of questions:

1 How are you?
2 Where have you been?
3 How long have you been back?
4 What are you doing now?
5 Why did you come back?
6 Where are you living?
7 Are you glad to be back?
8 Do you have any plans to go away again?
9 Can you help me find a job?

Now you tell another friend what Tony asked you. Use reported speech.

1 He asked me how I was.
2 He asked me
3 He
4
5
6
7
8
9

→ Additional exercise 25 (page 316)
Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.)
I think so / I hope so etc.

In each of these sentences there is an auxiliary verb and a main verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>my keys.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>can't</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The hotel</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>ten years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>live?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these examples have/can't/was/do are auxiliary (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:
- 'Have you locked the door?'  'Yes, I have.' (= I have locked the door)
- Gary wasn't working, but Laura was. (= Laura was working)
- Jessica could lend me the money, but she won't. (= she won't lend me the money)

Use do/does/did for the present and past simple:
- 'Do you like onions?'  'Yes, I do.' (= I like onions)
- 'Does Simon live in London?'  'He did, but he doesn't any more.'

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):
- 'You're sitting in my place.'  'No, I'm not.' (= I'm not sitting in your place)
- 'You didn't lock the door before you left.'  'Yes, I did.' (= I locked the door)

We use have you? / isn't she? / do they? etc. to show interest in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:
- 'I've just seen Stephen.'  'Oh, have you? How is he?'
- 'Lisa isn't very well today.'  'Oh, isn't she? What's wrong with her?'
- 'It rained every day during our holiday.'  'Did it? What a shame!'
- 'James and Tanya are getting married.'  'Are they? Really?'

We use auxiliary verbs with so and neither:
- 'I'm tired.'  'So am I.' (= I'm tired too)
- 'I never read newspapers.'  'Neither do I.' (= I never read newspapers either)
- Sarah hasn't got a car and neither has Mark.

Note the word order after so and neither (verb before subject):
- I passed the exam and so did Paul. (not so Paul did)

Instead of neither, you can use nor. You can also use not ... either:
- 'I don't know.'  'Neither do I.'  or 'Nor do I.'  or 'I don't either.'

I think so / I hope so etc.

After some verbs we use so when we don't want to repeat something:
- 'Are those people Korean?'  'I think so.' (= I think they are Korean)
- 'Will you be at home this evening?'  'I expect so. (= I expect I'll be at home ...)
- 'Do you think Kate has been invited to the party?'  'I suppose so.'

In the same way we say: I hope so, I guess so and I'm afraid so.

The usual negative forms are:

- I think so / I expect so  →  I don't think so / I don't expect so
- I hope so / I'm afraid so / I guess so  →  I hope not / I'm afraid not / I guess not
- I suppose so  →  I don't suppose so  or  I suppose not
- 'Is that woman American?'  'I think so. / I don't think so.'
- 'Do you think it will rain?'  'I hope so. / I hope not.' (not I don't hope so)
Exercises

51.1 Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (don’t/wasn’t etc.).

1 I wasn’t tired, but my friends ______ were ______.
2 I like hot weather, but Ann ______.
3 ‘Is Andy here?’ ‘He _______ five minutes ago, but I think he’s gone home now.’
4 Liz said she might call me later this evening, but I don’t think she ______.
5 ‘Are you and Chris coming to the party?’ ‘I _______ , but Chris _______.’
6 I don’t know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I _______?
7 ‘Please don’t tell anybody what I said.’ ‘Don’t worry. I _______.’
8 ‘You never listen to me.’ ‘Yes, I _______ !’
9 I thought it was going to rain, but it _______.
10 ‘Please help me.’ ‘I’m sorry. I _______ if I _______, but I _______.’

51.2 You never agree with Sue. Answer in the way shown.

1 I’m hungry.
   I’m not.
2 I’m not tired.
   I’m not.
3 I like football.
   I don’t like football.
4 I didn’t enjoy the film.
   I’ve never been to Australia.
5 I’ve never been to Australia.
   I’ve never been to Australia.
6 I thought the exam was easy.
   I thought the exam was hard.

51.3 You are talking to Tina. If you’re in the same position as Tina, reply with So … or Neither … , as in the first example. Otherwise, ask questions as in the second example.

1 I’m tired.
   So am I.
2 I work hard.
   Do you? What do you do?
3 I watched television last night.
   I watched television last night.
4 I won’t be at home tomorrow.
   I won’t be at home tomorrow.
5 I like reading. I read a lot.
   I like reading?
6 I’d like to live somewhere else.
   Where would you like to live?
7 I can’t go out tonight.
   Why can’t you go out tonight?

51.4 In these conversations, you are B. Read the information in brackets and then answer with I think so, I hope not etc.

1 (You don’t like rain.)
   A: Is it going to rain?  B: (hope) I hope not.
2 (You need more money quickly.)
   A: Do you think you’ll get a pay rise soon?  B: (hope)
3 (You think Katherine will probably get the job that she applied for.)
   A: Do you think Katherine will get the job?  B: (expect)
4 (You’re not sure whether Amy is married – probably not.)
   A: Is Amy married?  B: (think)
5 (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
   A: Have you got a room for tonight?  B: (afraid)
6 (You’re at a party. You have to leave early.)
   A: Do you have to leave already?  B: (afraid)
7 (Ann normally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is Wednesday.)
   A: Is Ann working tomorrow?  B: (suppose)
8 (You are going to a party. You can’t stand John.)
   A: Do you think John will be at the party?  B: (hope)
9 (You’re not sure what time the concert is – probably 7.30.)
   A: Is the concert at 7.30?  B: (think)
Question tags (do you? isn’t it? etc.)

Study these examples:

You haven’t seen Lisa today, have you?
No, I haven’t.
It was a good film, wasn’t it?
Yes, it was great.

Have you? and wasn’t it? are question tags (= mini-questions that we often put on the end of a sentence in spoken English). In question tags, we use an auxiliary verb (have/was/will etc.).

We use do/does/did for the present and past simple (see Unit 51):
- ‘Karen plays the piano, doesn’t she?’ ‘Well, yes, but not very well.’
- ‘You didn’t lock the door, did you?’ ‘No, I forgot.’

Normally we use a negative question tag after a positive sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive sentence</th>
<th>Negative tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kate will be here soon,</td>
<td>won’t she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was a lot of traffic,</td>
<td>wasn’t there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe should pass the exam,</td>
<td>shouldn’t he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

... and a positive question tag after a negative sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative sentence</th>
<th>Positive tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kate won’t be late,</td>
<td>will she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They don’t like us,</td>
<td>do they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You haven’t eaten yet,</td>
<td>have you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice the meaning of yes and no in answer to a negative sentence:

- You’re not going out today, are you? Yes. (= Yes, I am going out)
  No. (= No, I am not going out)

The meaning of a question tag depends on how you say it. If your voice goes down, you are not really asking a question; you are only inviting the listener to agree with you:

- ‘It’s a nice day, isn’t it?’ ‘Yes, beautiful.’
- ‘Paul doesn’t look well today, does he?’ ‘No, he looks very tired.’
- ‘Lisa’s very funny. She’s got a great sense of humour, hasn’t she?’ ‘Yes, she has.’

But if the voice goes up, it is a real question:

- ‘You haven’t seen Lisa today, have you?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’
  (= Have you by chance seen Lisa today?)

You can use a negative sentence + positive tag to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes up at the end of the tag in sentences like these:

- ‘You haven’t got a pen, have you?’ ‘Yes, here you are.’
- ‘You couldn’t do me a favour, could you?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
- ‘You don’t know where Karen is, do you?’ ‘Sorry, I have no idea.’

After Let’s ..., the question tag is shall we:

- Let’s go for a walk, shall we? (the voice goes up)

After Don’t ..., the question tag is will you:

- Don’t be late, will you? (the voice goes down)

After I’m ..., the negative question tag is aren’t I (= am I not):

- I’m right, aren’t I? ‘Yes, you are.’

Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) → Unit 51
Exercises

52.1 Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.

1. Kate won’t be late, ____________?
   No, she’s never late.
2. You’re tired, ____________?
   Yes, a little.
3. You travel a lot, ____________?
   Yes, I love travelling.
4. You weren’t listening, ____________?
   Yes, I was!
5. Sarah doesn’t know Ann, ____________?
   No, they’ve never met.
6. Jack’s on holiday, ____________?
   Yes, he’s in Australia.
7. Kate’s been to China before, ____________?
   Yes, two or three times.
8. You can speak German, ____________?
   Yes, but not fluently.
9. They won’t mind if I take a photo, ____________?
   No, of course they won’t.
10. There are a lot of people here, ____________?
    Yes, more than I expected.
11. Let’s go out tonight, ____________?
    Yes, that would be great.
12. This isn’t very interesting, ____________?
    No, not really.
13. I’m too impatient, ____________?
    Yes, you are sometimes.
14. You wouldn’t tell anyone, ____________?
    No, of course not.
15. Ann has lived here a long time, ____________?
    Yes, 20 years.
16. I shouldn’t have lost my temper, ____________?
    No, but that’s all right.
17. He’d never met her before, ____________?
    No, that was the first time.
18. Don’t drop that vase, ____________?
    Don’t worry, I won’t.

52.2 Read the situation and write a sentence with a question tag. In each situation you are asking your friend to agree with you.

1. You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. What do you say to your friend? (beautiful day) ____________?
   It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?
2. You’re with a friend outside a restaurant. You’re looking at the prices, which are very high.
   What do you say? (expensive) ____________?
3. You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. What do you say to your colleague? (great) ____________?
4. Your friend’s hair is much shorter than when you last met. What do you say to her/him? (have / your hair / cut) ____________?
5. You and a friend are listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much.
   What do you say to your friend? (a good voice) ____________?
6. You are trying on a jacket in a shop. You look in the mirror and you don’t like what you see.
   What do you say to your friend? (not / look / very good) ____________?
7. You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is very old and some parts are broken. What do you say? (not / very safe) ____________?

52.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

1. You need a pen. Perhaps Jane has got one. Ask her.
   ____________?
2. You have to move a heavy table. You want Joe to give you a hand with it. Ask him.
   ____________?
3. You’re looking for Sarah. Perhaps Kate knows where she is. Ask her.
   ____________?
4. You need a bicycle pump. Perhaps Helen has got one. Ask her.
   ____________?
5. Ann has a car and you need a lift to the station. Perhaps she’ll take you. Ask her.
   ____________?
   ____________?
Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

Look at these examples:
- I enjoy reading. (not I enjoy to read)
- Would you mind closing the door? (not mind to close)
- Chris suggested going to the cinema. (not suggested to go)

After enjoy, mind and suggest, we use -ing (not to ...).

Some more verbs that are followed by -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stop</th>
<th>postpone</th>
<th>admit</th>
<th>avoid</th>
<th>imagine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>consider</td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>risk</td>
<td>fancy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Suddenly everybody stopped talking. There was silence.
- I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the flat.
- He tried to avoid answering my question.
- I don't fancy going out this evening. (= I'm not enthusiastic about it)
- Have you ever considered going to live in another country?
- They said they were innocent. They denied doing anything wrong.

The negative form is not -ing:
- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early.

We also use -ing after:
- give up (= stop)
- put off (= postpone)
- go on or carry on (= continue)
- keep or keep on (= do something continuously or repeatedly)

- I've given up reading newspapers. I think it's a waste of time.
- Catherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to go on working. (or ... to carry on working.)
- You keep interrupting when I'm talking! or You keep on interrupting ...

With some verbs you can use the structure verb + somebody + -ing:
- I can't imagine George riding a motorbike.
- You can't stop me doing what I want.
- Did you really say that? I don't remember you saying that.
- 'Sorry to keep you waiting so long.' 'That's all right.'

Note the passive form (being done/seen/kept etc.):
- I don't mind being kept waiting. (= I don't mind people keeping me ...)

When you are talking about finished actions, you can say having done/stolen/said etc.:
- They admitted having stolen the money.

But it is not necessary to use having (done). You can also say:
- They admitted stealing the money.
- I now regret saying (or having said) what I said.

After some of the verbs on this page (especially admit/deny/suggest) you can also use that ...:
- They denied that they had stolen the money. (or They denied stealing ...)
- Chris suggested that we went to the cinema. (or Sam suggested going ...)

Suggest → Unit 34  Being done (passive) → Unit 44B  Verb + to ... → Unit 54  Verb + to ... and -ing → Units 55C, 56B  Remember / regret / go on → Unit 56B  Go on / carry on / keep on → Unit 141A
53.1 Complete the sentences for each situation using -ing.

1. What shall we do? We could go to the zoo.
2. Do you want to play tennis? No, not really.
3. You were driving too fast. You’re right. Sorry!
4. Let’s go swimming. Good idea!
5. You broke the DVD player. No, I didn’t!
6. Can you wait a few minutes? Sure, no problem.

53.2 Complete each sentence with one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

- answer - apply - be - forget - listen - live

- lose - make - pay - read - try - use

1. He tried to avoid answering my question.
2. Could you please stop suffering so much noise?
3. I enjoy listening to music.
4. I considered applying for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished reading the newspaper yet?
6. We need to change our routine. We can’t go on losing like this.
7. I don’t mind you leaving my phone, but please ask me first.
8. My memory is getting worse. I keep losing things.
9. I’ve put off paying this bill so many times. I really must do it today.
10. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody being so stupid?
11. I’ve given up trying to lose weight – it’s impossible.
12. If you gamble, you risk losing your money.

53.3 Complete the sentences so that they mean the same as the first sentence.

1. I can do what I want and you can’t stop me.
   You can’t stop me doing what I want.
2. It’s not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.
   It’s better to avoid traveling during the rush hour.
3. Shall we paint the kitchen next weekend instead of this weekend?
   Shall we postpone painting until next weekend?
4. Could you turn the music down, please?
   Would you mind turning it down, please?
5. Please don’t interrupt all the time.
   Would you mind not interrupting all the time?

53.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1. She’s a very interesting person. I always enjoy talking to her.
2. I’m not feeling very well. I don’t fancy going anywhere.
3. I’m afraid there aren’t any chairs. I hope you don’t mind.
4. It was a beautiful day, so I suggested taking a walk.
5. It was very funny. I couldn’t stop laughing.
6. My car isn’t very reliable. It keeps breaking down.
Verb + **to** ... *(decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Offer</th>
<th>Agree</th>
<th>Decide</th>
<th>Hope</th>
<th>Deserve</th>
<th>Promise</th>
<th>Refuse</th>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Manage</th>
<th>Afford</th>
<th>Threaten</th>
<th>Learn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

After these verbs you can use **to** ... *(infinitive)*:
- It was late, so we **decided to take** a taxi home.
- Simon was in a difficult situation, so I **agreed to help** him.
- How old were you when you **learnt to drive**? *(or learnt how to drive)*
- I waved to Karen, but **failed to attract** her attention.

The negative is **not** **to** ... :
- We **decided not to go** out because of the weather.
- I **promised not to be** late.

After some verbs **to** ... is not possible. For example, **enjoy/think/suggest**:
- I **enjoy reading**. *(not enjoy to read)*
- Andy **suggested meeting** for coffee. *(not suggested to meet)*
- Are you **thinking of buying** a car? *(not thinking to buy)*

For verb + **-ing**, see Unit 53. For verb + preposition + **-ing**, see Unit 62.

After **dare** you can use the infinitive with or without **to**:
- I wouldn’t **dare to tell** him. *or* I wouldn’t **dare tell** him.

But after **dare not** *(or daren’t)*, you must use the infinitive without **to**:
- I **daren’t tell** him what happened. *(not I daren’t to tell him)*

We also use **to** ... after:
- *seem*  
- *appear*  
- *tend*  
- *pretend*  
- *claim*

For example:
- They **seem to have** plenty of money.
- I like Dan, but I think he **tends to talk** too much.
- Ann **pretended not to see** me when she passed me in the street.

There is also a **continuous** infinitive *(to be doing)* and a **perfect** infinitive *(to have done)*:
- I **pretended to be reading** the paper. *(= I pretended that I was reading)*
- You **seem to have lost** weight. *(= it seems that you have lost weight)*
- Joe **seems to be enjoying** his new job. *(= it seems that he is enjoying it)*

After some verbs you can use a question word *(what/whether/how etc.)* + **to** ... .

We use this structure especially after:
- ask  
- decide  
- know  
- remember  
- forget  
- explain  
- learn  
- understand  
- wonder

We **asked** how **to get** to the station.
- Have you **decided** where **to go** for your holidays?
- I don’t **know** whether **to apply** for the job or not.
- Do you **understand** what **to do**?

*Also*

**show/tell/ask/advice/teach** somebody *what/how/where* to do something:
- Can somebody **show me how to use** this camera?
- Ask Jack. He’ll **tell you what to do**.
Exercises

54.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1. Shall we get married? Yes, let’s.
   They decided to get married.

2. Please help me. OK.
   She agreed.

3. Can I carry your bag for you? No, thanks. I can manage.
   He offered.

4. Let’s meet at 8 o’clock. OK, fine.
   They arranged.

5. What’s your name? I’m not going to tell you.
   She refused.

6. Please don’t tell anyone. I won’t. I promise.
   She promised.

54.2 Complete each sentence with a suitable verb.

1. Don’t forget to lock the door when you go out.

2. There was a lot of traffic, but we managed to get to the airport in time.

3. We couldn’t afford to live in London. It’s too expensive.

4. We’ve got new computer software in our office. I haven’t learnt it yet.

5. Mark doesn’t know what happened. I decided not to tell him.

6. We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared to say anything.

54.3 Put the verb into the correct form, to ... or -ing. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)

1. When I’m tired, I enjoy watching television. It’s relaxing. (watch)

2. I’ve decided to apply for another job. I need a change. (look)

3. Let’s get a taxi. I don’t fancy walking home. (walk)

4. I’m not in a hurry. I don’t mind waiting. (wait)

5. Tina ran in a marathon last week, but she failed to finish it. (finish)

6. I wish that dog would stop barking. It’s driving me crazy. (bark)

7. Our neighbour threatened to call the police if we didn’t stop the noise. (call)

8. We were hungry, so I suggested having dinner early. (have)

9. Hurry up! I don’t want to risk missing the train. (miss)

10. They didn’t know I was listening to them. I pretended to be asleep. (be)

54.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.

1. You’ve lost weight. (seem) You seem to have lost weight.

2. Tom is worried about something. (appear) Tom appears worried.

3. You know a lot of people. (seem) You seem to know a lot of people.

4. My English is getting better. (seem) Our English seems to be improving.

5. That car has broken down. (appear) The car appears to be broken.


7. They have solved the problem. (claim) They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5 Complete each sentence using what/how/where/whether + these verbs:

1. Do you know how to get to John’s house?

2. Would you know what to do if there was a fire in the building?

3. You’ll never forget what you’ve learnt.

4. I’ve been invited to the party, but I haven’t decided whether or not.

5. My room is very untidy. I’ve got so many things and I don’t know where to put them.

6. I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me how to use the washing machine?
**Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>want</th>
<th>ask</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>would like</th>
<th>would prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>mean (= intend)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs are followed by to ... (infinitive). The structure can be:

- **verb + to ...**
- **verb + object + to ...**

- We expected to be late.
- Would you like to go now?
- He doesn’t want to know.

- We expected Dan to be late.
- Would you like me to go now?
- He doesn’t want anybody to know.

Do not say 'want that':

- Do you want me to come with you? (not Do you want that I come)

After help you can use the infinitive with or without to. So you can say:

- Can you help me to move this table? or Can you help me move this table?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tell</th>
<th>remind</th>
<th>force</th>
<th>encourage</th>
<th>teach</th>
<th>enable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>warn</td>
<td>invite</td>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>get (= persuade)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs have the structure verb + object + to ...:

- Can you remind me to call Sam tomorrow?
- Who taught you to drive?
- I didn’t move the piano by myself. I got somebody to help me.
- Joe said the switch was dangerous and warned me not to touch it.

In the next example, the verb is passive (I was warned / we were told etc.):

- I was warned not to touch the switch.

You cannot use suggest with the structure verb + object + to ...:

- Jane suggested that I ask your advice. (not Jane suggested me to ask)

**After advise and allow, two structures are possible. Compare:**

- **verb + -ing** (without an object)
- **verb + object + to**

- I wouldn’t advise staying in that hotel.
- They don’t allow parking in front of the building.

Study these examples with (be) allowed (passive):

- Parking isn’t allowed in front of the building.
- You aren’t allowed to park in front of the building.

**Make and let**

These verbs have the structure verb + object + infinitive (without to):

- I made him promise that he wouldn’t tell anybody what happened. (not to promise)
- Hot weather makes me feel tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- Her parents wouldn’t let her go out alone. (= wouldn’t allow her to go out)
- Let me carry your bag for you.

We say 'make somebody do' (not to do), but in the passive we say 'made to do' (with to):

- We were made to wait for two hours. (= They made us wait ...)
**Exercises**

55.1 Complete the questions. Use *do you want me to* ... ? or *would you like me* to ... ? with these verbs (+ any other necessary words):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>come-</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>repeat</th>
<th>show</th>
<th>shut</th>
<th>wait</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Do you want to go alone, or <em>do you want me to come</em> with you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you have enough money, or do you want?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Shall I leave the window open, or would you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Do you know how to use the machine, or would?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Did you hear what I said, or do?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Can I go now, or do?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

55.2 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1. Meet me at the station. **OK.**
   - She told him to meet her at the station.

2. Why don’t you come and stay with us? **That would be nice.**
   - They invited him.

3. Don’t forget to call Joe. **No, I won’t forget.**
   - He reminded her.

4. Be careful. **Don’t worry. I will.**
   - She warned.

5. Can you give me a hand? **Sure.**
   - He asked.

55.3 Complete each second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

1. My father said I could use his car. **My father allowed me to use his car.**
2. I was surprised that it rained. **I didn’t expect**
3. Don’t stop him doing what he wants. **Let**
4. Tim looks older when he wears glasses. **Tim’s glasses make**
5. I think you should know the truth. **I want**
6. At first I didn’t want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me. **Sarah persuaded**
7. My lawyer said I shouldn’t say anything to the police. **My lawyer advised**
8. I was told that I shouldn’t believe everything he says. **I was warned**
9. If you’ve got a car, you are able to get around more easily. **Having a car enables**

55.4 Put the verb into the correct form: infinitive (do/make/eat etc.), to + infinitive, or -ing.

1. They don’t allow people *to park* in front of the building. (park)
2. I’ve never been to Hong Kong, but I’d like *to go* there. (go)
3. I’m in a difficult position. What do you advise me *to do*? (do)
4. The film was very sad. It made me *cry*. (cry)
5. Lisa’s parents always encouraged her *to study* hard at school. (study)
6. If you want to get a cheap flight, I’d advise *to book* early. (book)
7. Sarah wouldn’t let me *borrow* her car. She doesn’t trust me. (borrow)
8. If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are normally not allowed *to work* there. (work)
9. ‘I don’t think Alex likes me.’ ‘What makes you *think* that?’ (think)
Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)

Some verbs are followed by -ing and some are followed by to ...

Verbs usually followed by -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>admit</th>
<th>fancy</th>
<th>postpone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>keep (on)</td>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For examples, see Unit 53.

Verbs usually followed by to ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afford</th>
<th>fail</th>
<th>offer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>promise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deserve</td>
<td>manage</td>
<td>threaten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For examples, see Unit 54.

Some verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with a difference of meaning:

**remember**

*I remember doing* something = I did it and now I remember this.

*You remember doing* something after you have done it.

☐ I know I locked the door. I clearly remember locking it. (= I locked it, and now I remember this)

☐ He could remember driving along the road just before the accident, but he couldn’t remember the accident itself.

*I remembered to do* something = I remembered that I had to do it, so I did it.

*You remember to do* something before you do it.

☐ I remembered to lock the door, but I forgot to shut the windows. (= I remembered that I had to lock it, and so I locked it)

☐ I must remember to pay the electricity bill. (= I must not forget to pay it)

**regret**

*I regret doing* something = I did it and now I’m sorry about it:

☐ I now regret saying what I said. I shouldn’t have said it.

☐ Do you regret not going to college?

*I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you* = I’m sorry that I have to say (etc.):

☐ (from a formal letter) We regret to inform you that your application has been unsuccessful.

**go on**

*Go on doing* something = continue with the same thing:

☐ The president paused for a moment and then went on talking.

☐ We need to change. We can’t go on living like this.

*Go on to do* something = do or say something new:

☐ After discussing the economy, the president then went on to talk about foreign policy.

The following verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with no difference of meaning:

begin start continue intend bother

So you can say:

☐ It started raining. or It started to rain.

☐ Andy intends buying a house. or Andy intends to buy ...

☐ Don’t bother locking the door. or Don’t bother to lock ...

But normally we do not use -ing after -ing:

☐ It’s starting to rain. (not It’s starting raining)
56.1 Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to ... .

1. They denied **stealing** the money. (steal)
2. I don’t enjoy **driving** very much. (drive)
3. I can’t afford **going** out tonight. I don’t have enough money. (go)
4. Has it stopped **raining** yet? (rain)
5. We were unlucky to lose the game. We deserved **winning**. (win)
6. Why do you keep **asking** me questions? Can’t you leave me alone? (ask)
7. Please stop **asking** me questions! (ask)
8. I refuse **answering** any more questions. (answer)
9. The driver of one of the cars admitted **causing** the accident. (cause)
10. Mark needed our help, and we promised **doing** what we could. (do)
11. I don’t mind **being** alone, but it’s better to be with other people. (be)
12. The wall was quite high, but I managed **climbing** over it. (climb)
13. ‘Does Sarah know about the meeting?’ ‘No, I forgot **telling** her.’ (tell)
14. I’ve enjoyed **seeing** you. I hope **seeing** you again soon. (talk, see)

56.2 Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can’t remember others. Complete the sentences.

1. He was in hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.
   **He can remember being in hospital** when he was a small child.
2. He went to Paris with his parents when he was eight. He remembers this.
   He remembers **going** to Paris with his parents when he was eight.
3. He cried on his first day at school. He doesn’t remember this.
   He doesn’t **remember** on his first day at school.
4. Once he fell into the river. He can remember this.
   He **remembered**.
5. He said he wanted to be a doctor. He can’t remember this.
   He **doesn’t remember** to be a doctor.
6. Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn’t remember this.
   He **doesn’t remember** a dog.

56.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to ... . Sometimes either form is possible.

1. a. Please remember **to lock** the door when you go out.
   b. A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
      b: Did I? Are you sure? I don’t remember **lending** you any money.
   c. A: Did you remember **telling** your sister?
      b: Oh no, I completely forgot. I’ll phone her tomorrow.
   d. When you see Steve, remember **talking** hello to him from me.
   e. Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember **taking** it by the window and now it has gone.
2. a. I believe that what I said was right. I don’t regret **saying** it.
   b. I knew they were in trouble, but I regret **not helping** them.
   c. It started to get cold, and he regretted not **wearing** his coat.
3. a. Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a few years later he went on **being** manager of the company.
   b. I can’t go on **staying** here any more. I want a different job.
   c. When I came into the room, Lisa was reading a newspaper. She looked up and said hello, and then went on **reading** her newspaper.
4. a. If the company continues **losing** money, the factory may be closed.
   b. Julia has been ill, but now she’s beginning **to feel** better.
   c. The baby started **crying** in the middle of the night.
Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)

Try to ... and try -ing

Try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:
- I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn’t.
- Please try to be quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

Try also means ‘do something as an experiment or test’. For example:
- These cakes are delicious. You should try one.
  (= you should have one to see if you like it)
- We couldn’t find anywhere to stay. We tried every hotel in the town, but they were all full.
  (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)

If try (with this meaning) is followed by a verb, we say try -ing:
- A: The photocopier doesn’t seem to be working.
  Try pressing the green button.
  (= press the green button – perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:
- I tried to move the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn’t move it)
- I didn’t like the way the furniture was arranged, so I tried moving the table to the other side of the room. But it didn’t look right, so I moved it back again.

Need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:
- I need to get more exercise.
- He needs to work harder if he wants to make progress.
- I don’t need to come to the meeting, do I?

Something needs doing = it needs to be done:
- My phone needs charging.
  (= it needs to be charged)
- Do you think this jacket needs cleaning?
  (= … needs to be cleaned)
- It’s a difficult problem. It needs thinking about very carefully. (= it needs to be thought about)

Help and can’t help

You can say help to do or help do (with or without to):
- Everybody helped to clean up after the party. or Everybody helped clean up …
- Can you help me to move this table? or Can you help me move …

I can’t help doing something = I can’t stop myself doing it:
- I don’t like him, but he has a lot of problems. I can’t help feeling sorry for him.
- She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help laughing.
  (= she couldn’t stop herself laughing)
- I’m sorry I’m so nervous. I can’t help it.
  (= I can’t help being nervous)
Exercises

57.1 Make suggestions. Use try + one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phone his office</th>
<th>restart it</th>
<th>change the batteries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn it the other way</td>
<td>take an aspirin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The radio isn’t working. Have you tried changing the batteries?
2. I can’t open the door. The key won’t turn. Try
3. The computer isn’t working properly. Have you tried
4. Fred isn’t answering his phone. What shall I do? You could
5. I’ve got a terrible headache. I wish it would go. Have you

57.2 For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs:

- clean - cut - empty - paint - tighten

1. This jacket is dirty. It needs cleaning.
2. The room isn’t very nice. It
3. The grass is very long. 
4. The screws are loose. 
5. The bin is full.

57.3 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. a I was very tired. I tried to keep (keep) my eyes open, but I couldn’t.
   b I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried (knock) on the door, but there was still no answer.
   c We tried (put) the fire out but without success. We had to call the fire brigade.
   d Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried (ask) Gary, but he was short of money too.
   e I tried (reach) the shelf, but I wasn’t tall enough.
   f Please leave me alone. I’m trying (concentrate).

2. a I need a change. I need (go) away for a while.
   b My grandmother isn’t able to look after herself any more. She needs (look) after.
   c The windows are dirty. They need (clean).
   d Your hair is getting very long. It needs (cut).
   e You don’t need (iron) that shirt. It doesn’t need (iron).

3. a They were talking very loudly. I couldn’t help (overhear) what they said.
   b Can you help me (get) the dinner ready?
   c He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can’t help (smile).
   d The fine weather helped (make) it a really nice holiday.
Like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use -ing or to ... after these verbs.
So you can say:

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- Stephanie hates flying. or Stephanie hates to fly.
- I love meeting people. or I love to meet people.
- I don't like being kept waiting. or ... like to be kept waiting.
- I don't like friends calling me at work. or ... friends to call me at work.

**but**

1. We use -ing (not to ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).
   - Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes living there. (He likes living in Berlin = He lives there and he likes it)
   - Do you like being a student? (You are a student – do you like it?)
   - The office I worked in was horrible. I hated working there. (I worked there and I hated it)

2. There is sometimes a difference between I like to do and I like doing:

   I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:
   - I like cleaning the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

   I like to do something = I think it is a good thing to do, but I don’t necessarily enjoy it:
   - It’s not my favourite job, but I like to clean the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that enjoy and mind are always followed by -ing (not to ...):

- I enjoy cleaning the kitchen. (not I enjoy to clean)
- I don't mind cleaning the kitchen. (not I don’t mind to clean)

Would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love etc. are usually followed by to ... :

- I'd like (= I would like) to go away for a few days.
- Would you like to come to dinner on Friday?
- I wouldn’t like to go on holiday alone.
- I'd love to meet your family.
- Would you prefer to have dinner now or later?

Compare I like and I would like (I’d like):

- I like playing tennis. / I like to play tennis. (= I like it in general)
- I’d like to play tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is always followed by -ing (not to ...):

- Would you mind closing the door, please?

I would like to have done something = I regret now that I didn’t or couldn’t do it:

- It’s a shame we didn’t see Anna when we were in London. I would like to have seen her again.
- We’d like to have gone away, but we were too busy at home.

You can use the same structure after would love / would hate / would prefer:

- Poor David! I would hate to have been in his position.
- I'd love to have gone to the party, but it was impossible.
Exercises

58.1 Write sentences about yourself. Say whether you like or don’t like these activities. Choose one of these verbs for each sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like / don’t like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>don’t mind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(fly)</td>
<td>I don’t like flying.</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>I don’t like to fly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(play cards)</td>
<td>(be alone)</td>
<td>(go to museums)</td>
<td>(cook)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use -ing or to … . Sometimes either form is possible.

1. Paul lives in Berlin now. It’s nice. He likes it.
   (he / like / live / there) … he likes living there.

2. Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job.
   (she / like / teach / biology) … she likes teaching biology.

3. Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures.
   (he / like / take / pictures)

4. I used to work in a supermarket. I didn’t like it much.
   (I / not / like / work / there)

5. Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
   (she / like / study / medicine)

6. Dan is famous, but he doesn’t like it.
   (he / not / like / be / famous)

7. Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn’t take many risks.
   (she / not / like / take / risks)

8. I don’t like surprises.
   (I / like / know / things / in advance)

58.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to … . In one sentence either form is possible.

1. It’s good to visit other places – I enjoy … travelling …

2. ‘Would you like … down?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ll stand.’

3. I’m not quite ready yet. Would you mind … a little longer?

4. When I was a child, I hated … to bed early.

5. When I have to catch a train, I’m always worried that I’ll miss it. So I like … to the station in plenty of time.

6. I enjoy … busy. I don’t like it when there’s nothing to do.

7. I would love … to your wedding, but I’m afraid it isn’t possible.

8. I don’t like … in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.

9. Do you have a minute? I’d like … to you about something.

10. If there’s bad news and good news, I like … the bad news first.

58.4 Write sentences using would … to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.

1. It’s a shame I couldn’t go to the party. (like)

2. It’s a shame I didn’t see the programme. (like)

3. I’m glad I didn’t lose my watch. (hate)

4. It’s too bad I didn’t meet your parents. (love)

5. I’m glad I wasn’t alone. (not / like)

6. It’s a shame I couldn’t travel by train. (prefer)
Prefer and would rather

Prefer to do and prefer doing

You can use 'prefer to (do)' or 'prefer -ing' to say what you prefer in general:

- I don't like cities. I prefer to live in the country. or I prefer living in the country.

Study the differences in structure after prefer. We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>something</th>
<th>to something else.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I prefer</td>
<td>doing something</td>
<td>to doing something else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but I prefer</td>
<td>doing to do something</td>
<td>rather than (do) something else.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I prefer this coat to the coat you were wearing yesterday.
- I prefer driving to travelling by train.
- but I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.
- Sarah prefers to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.

Would prefer (I'd prefer ...)

We use would prefer to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

- 'Would you prefer tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

We say 'would prefer to do something' (not usually would prefer doing):

- 'Shall we go by train?' 'I'd prefer to drive.' (not I'd prefer driving)
- I'd prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

Would rather (I'd rather ...)

Would rather (do) = would prefer (to do). We use would rather + infinitive (without to).

Compare:

- 'Shall we go by train?' 'I'd rather drive.'
- 'I'd rather drive.' (not to drive)
- 'Would you rather have tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

The negative is 'I'd rather not (do something)'.

- I'm tired. I'd rather not go out this evening, if you don't mind.
- 'Do you want to go out this evening?' 'I'd rather not.'

We say 'would rather do something than do something else':

- I'd rather stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.

I'd rather somebody did something

We say 'I'd rather you did something' (not I'd rather you do). For example:

- 'Who's going to drive, you or me?' 'I'd rather you drove.' (= I would prefer this)
- 'Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?' 'I'd rather he did it today.'
- Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you rather I told her?

In this structure we use the past (drove, did etc.), but the meaning is present not past.

Compare:

- I'd rather make dinner now.
- I'd rather you made dinner now. (not I'd rather you make)

I'd rather you didn't (do something) = I'd prefer you not to do it:

- I'd rather you didn't tell anyone what I said.
- 'Are you going to tell Anna what happened?' 'No. I'd rather she didn't know.'
- 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'I'd rather you didn't.'
Exercises

59.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using 'I prefer (something) to (something else)'. Put the verb into the correct form where necessary.

1. (drive / travel by train)
   I prefer driving to travelling by train.

2. (basketball / football)
   I prefer

3. (go to the cinema / watch DVDs at home)
   I

4. (be very busy / have nothing to do)
   I

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using the structure 'I prefer to (do something)'.

5. (1) I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

6. (3) I prefer to

7. (4) 

59.2 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

A

1. Shall we walk home?
2. Do you want to eat now?
3. Would you like to watch TV?
4. Do you want to go to a restaurant?
5. Let's leave now.
6. What about a game of tennis?
7. I think we should decide now.
8. Would you like to sit down?
9. Do you want me to come with you?

B

1. I'd rather get a taxi.
2. I'd prefer to wait till later.
3. I'd prefer to listen to some music.
4. I'd rather wait a few minutes.
5. I'd rather for a swim.
6. I'd rather think about it for a while.
7. I'd rather to stand.
8. I'd rather alone.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

10. I'd rather a taxi than walk home.
11. I'd prefer for a swim
12. I'd rather at home
13. I'd prefer about it for a while
14. I'd rather some music

59.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I . . .

1. Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I made it?
2. Are you going to tell Anna what happened or would you rather ?
3. Are you going to do the shopping or ?
4. Are you going to phone Tanya or

59.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. ‘Shall I tell Anna what happened?’ ‘No, I’d rather she didn’t know.’
2. Do you want me to go now or would you rather I here?
3. Do you want to go out this evening or would you rather at home?
4. This is a private matter. I’d rather you tell anybody else.
5. I don’t want to make a decision without Jack and Sue. I’d rather they here.
6. A: Do you mind if I put some music on?
   B: I’d rather you . . . . . . . . . . . . . I’m trying to study.
### Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing

If a preposition (in/for/about etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>verb (-ing)</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>for us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>inviting</td>
<td>me to your party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>meeting</td>
<td>for lunch tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>sitting</td>
<td>at home all the time?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of</td>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>ill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say 'instead of somebody doing something', 'fed up with people doing something' etc.:  
- I'm fed up with people telling me what to do.

### Note the use of the following prepositions + -ing:

**before -ing and after -ing:**
- Before going out, I phoned Sarah. (not Before to go out)  
- What did you do after finishing school?

You can also say 'Before I went out' and 'after you finished school'.

**by -ing** (to say how something happens):
- The burglars got into the house by breaking a window and climbing in.
- You can improve your English by reading more.
- She made herself ill by not eating properly.
- Many accidents are caused by people driving too fast.

**without -ing:**
- We ran ten kilometres without stopping.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I said it without thinking.
- She needs to work without people disturbing her. (or ... without being disturbed.)
- I have enough problems of my own without having to worry about yours.

### To -ing (look forward to doing something etc.)

To is often part of the *infinitive* (to do / to see etc.):
- We decided to travel by train.
- Would you like to meet for lunch tomorrow?

But **to** is also a **preposition** (like in/for/about/with etc.). For example:
- We went from Paris to Geneva.
- I prefer tea to coffee.
- Are you looking forward to the weekend?

If a preposition is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:
- I'm fed up with travelling by train.
- How about going away this weekend?

So, when **to** is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, you must say **to -ing**:
- I prefer driving to travelling by train. (not to travel)
- Are you looking forward to going on holiday? (not looking forward to go)
Exercises

60.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
1 Why is it useful to have a car?
   What are the advantages of having a car?
2 I don’t intend to apply for the job.
   I have no intention of
3 Helen has a good memory for names.
   Helen is good at
4 You probably won’t win the lottery. You have little chance.
   You have little chance of
5 Did you get into trouble because you were late?
   Did you get into trouble for
6 We didn’t eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
   Instead of
7 We got into the exhibition. We didn’t have to queue.
   We got into the exhibition without
8 We played very well, but we lost the game.
   We lost the game despite

60.2 Complete the sentences using by -ing. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>borrow too much money</th>
<th>break a window</th>
<th>drive too fast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put some pictures on the walls</td>
<td>stand on a chair</td>
<td>turn a key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The burglars got into the house by breaking a window.
2 I was able to reach the top shelf.
3 You start the engine of a car.
4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble.
5 You can put people’s lives in danger.
6 We made the room look nicer.

60.3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.
1 We ran ten kilometres without stopping.
2 He left the hotel without paying his bill.
3 It’s a nice morning. How about going for a walk?
4 We were able to translate the letter into English without needing a dictionary.
5 Before falling asleep, I like to have a hot drink.
6 It was a long trip. I was very tired after traveling on a train for 36 hours.
7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without consulting me.
8 After staying in the same job for ten years, I felt I needed a change.
9 We got lost because we went straight on instead of turning left.
10 I like these pictures you took. You’re good at taking pictures.

60.4 For each situation, write a sentence with I’m (not) looking forward to.
1 You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?
   I’m looking forward to going on holiday.
2 Kate is a good friend of yours and she is coming to visit you soon. So you will see her again soon. How do you feel? I’m
3 You are going to the dentist tomorrow. You don’t enjoy going to the dentist. How do you feel?
   I’m not
4 Rachel hates school, but she’s leaving next summer. How does she feel?
   I’m not
5 You’ve arranged to play tennis tomorrow. You haven’t played for a while and you like tennis a lot. How do you feel?
Unit 61

A

Study this example situation:

Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain. When she first drove a car in Britain, she found it very difficult because she had to drive on the left, not on the right. Driving on the left was strange and difficult for her because:

She wasn't used to it.
She wasn't used to driving on the left.

But after a lot of practice, driving on the left became less strange. So:
She got used to driving on the left.

Now it's no problem for Lisa:
She is used to driving on the left.

B

I'm used to something = it is not new or strange for me:

- Paul lives alone. He doesn't mind this because he has lived alone for 15 years. It is not strange for him. He is used to it. He is used to living alone.
- I bought some new shoes. They felt a bit strange at first because I wasn't used to them.
- Our new apartment is on a very busy street. I expect we'll get used to the noise, but at the moment it's very disturbing.
- Helen has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before - at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she isn't used to getting up so early.
- Katherine's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. She is used to him being away.

C

After be/get used you cannot use the infinitive (to do / to drive etc.). We say:

- She is used to driving on the left. (not She is used to drive)

When we say 'I am used to something', to is a preposition, not a part of the infinitive.

So we say:

- We're not used to the noise. / We're not used to it.
- Paul is used to living alone. (not Paul is used to live)
- Lisa had to get used to driving on the left. (not get used to drive)

D

Do not confuse I am used to doing and I used to do:

I am used to (doing) something = it isn't strange or new for me:

- I am used to the weather in this country.
- I am used to driving on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time.

I used to do something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. You can use this only for the past, not for the present. (See Unit 18.)

The structure is 'I used to do' (not I am used to do):

- I used to drive to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.
- We used to live just outside the town, but now we live near the centre.

122

Used to (do) → Unit 18 To + -ing → Unit 60C
Exercises

61.1 Look again at the situation in Section A on the opposite page ('Lisa is American ...'). The following situations are similar. Complete the sentences using used to.

1. Jack has to drive two hours to his work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was difficult for him. But now it's OK.
   When Jack started working in this job, he wasn't ________________________ driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he ________________________ it. Now it's no problem for him. He ________________________ two hours every morning.

2. Julia is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first she found it hard and didn't like it.
   She ________________________ nights and it took her a few months to ________________________ it. Now, after a year, it's OK for her.
   She ________________________ nights.

61.2 What do you say in these situations? Use I'm (not) used to ...

1. You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone.
   FRIEND: Do you get lonely sometimes?
   YOU: No, I'm used to living alone.

2. You sleep on the floor. You don't mind this. You have always slept on the floor.
   FRIEND: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?
   YOU: No, I...

3. You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem for you. You have always worked long hours.
   FRIEND: You have to work very long hours in your job, don't you?
   YOU: Yes, but I don't mind that. I...

4. You usually go to bed early. Last night you went to bed very late (for you) and as a result you are very tired this morning.
   FRIEND: You look tired this morning.
   YOU: Yes, ...

61.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences using get/got used to.

1. Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy.
   They'll have to ________________________ the noise.

2. The children at school got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon ________________________

3. Sue moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to ________________________ in a much smaller house.

4. Some people you know from Britain are going to live in your country. What will they have to get used to?
   They'll have to ________________________

61.4 Complete the sentences using only one word each time (see Section C).

1. Lisa had to get used to ________________________ on the left.

2. Dan used to ________________________ a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.

3. I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to ________________________ so much.

4. I wouldn't like to share an office. I'm used to ________________________ my own office.

5. I used to ________________________ a car, but I sold it a few months ago.

6. When we were children, we used to ________________________ swimming very often.

7. There used to ________________________ a school here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.

8. I'm the boss here! I'm not used to ________________________ told what to do.

9. We used to ________________________ in a village. We moved to London a few years ago and had to get used to ________________________ in a big city.
Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)

Many verbs have the structure verb + preposition (in/for/about etc.) + object.
For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + preposition + object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We talked about the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You must apologise for what you said.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the object is another verb, it ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + preposition + object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We talked about going to South America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You must not telling the truth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more verbs with this structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>approve (of)</th>
<th>decide (against)</th>
<th>dream (of)</th>
<th>feel (like)</th>
<th>insist (on)</th>
<th>look forward (to)</th>
<th>succeed (in)</th>
<th>think (of/about)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He doesn’t approve of swearing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have decided against moving to London.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wouldn’t dream of asking them for money.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you feel going out tonight?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They insisted on paying for the meal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m looking forward to meeting her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you succeeded in finding a job yet?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m thinking of/about buying a house.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say ‘approve of somebody doing something’, ‘look forward to somebody doing something’ etc:

- I don’t approve of people killing animals for fun.
- We are all looking forward to Andy coming home.

The following verbs can have the structure verb + object + preposition + -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + object + preposition + -ing (object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accuse (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They accused us of telling lies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We all congratulated Lisa on winning the first prize.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me for phoning you so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What prevented you from coming to see us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rain didn’t stop us from enjoying our holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nobody suspected the general of being a spy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I forgot to thank for helping me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say ‘stop somebody doing’ or ‘stop somebody from doing’:

- You can’t stop me doing what I want.  or  You can’t stop me from doing what I want.

The following examples are with not -ing:

- They accused us of not telling the truth.
- Excuse me for not replying to your email until now.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive. For example:

- We were accused of telling lies.
- The general was suspected of being a spy.

Note that we say ‘apologise to somebody for …’:

- I apologised to them for keeping them waiting. (not I apologised them)
62.1 Complete each sentence using only one word.

1. Our neighbours apologised for making so much noise.
2. I feel lazy. I don’t feel like doing any work.
3. I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on going with me.
4. Where are you thinking of going on your holiday this year?
5. We have decided against buying a car because we can’t really afford it.
6. It’s good Dan and Amy are coming to stay with us. I’m looking forward to seeing them again.
7. Some parents don’t approve of their children watching a lot of TV.
8. It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in solving the problem.
9. I’ve always dreamed of owning a small house by the sea.

62.2 Complete each sentence using a preposition + one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

be interrupt cause do eat escape go
invite tell use walk wear

1. Do you feel like going out this evening?
2. The driver of the other car accused me of causing the accident.
3. There’s a fence around the lawn to stop people walking on the grass.
4. Excuse me for interrupting you, but may I ask you something?
5. The man who has been arrested is suspected of using a false passport.
6. I’m fed up with my job. I’m thinking of doing something else.
7. The guards weren’t able to prevent the prisoner from escaping.
8. I didn’t want to hear the story, but Dan insisted on telling me.
9. I’m getting hungry. I’m really looking forward to eating something.
10. I think you should apologise to Sue for being so rude to her.
11. I’m sorry I can’t come to your party, but thank you very much for inviting me.
12. The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver of not wearing a seat belt.

62.3 Complete the sentences on the right.

1. It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.
   Kevin thanked me for helping him.

2. I’ll take you to the station. I insist.
   Tom insisted on taking Ann.

3. I hear you got married. Congratulations!
   Dan congratulated me on getting married.

4. It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.
   Jenny thanked Sue for coming to see her.

5. I’m sorry I didn’t phone earlier.
   Kate apologised for not phoning.

6. You’re selfish.
   Jane accused Kate of being selfish.
Expressions + -ing

When these expressions are followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

- It's no use / It's no good ...
  - There's nothing you can do about the situation, so it's no use worrying about it.
  - It's no good trying to persuade me. You won't succeed.

- There's no point in ...
  - There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
  - There was no point in waiting any longer, so we left.

- But we usually say 'the point of doing something':
  - What's the point of having a car if you never use it?

- It's (not) worth ...
  - I live only a short walk from here, so it's not worth taking a taxi.
  - Our flight was very early in the morning, so it wasn't worth going to bed.

- You can say that a film is worth seeing, a book is worth reading etc.:  
  - What was the film like? Was it worth seeing?
  - Thieves broke into the house, but didn't take anything. There was nothing worth stealing.

Have trouble -ing, have difficulty -ing etc.

- Have trouble / difficulty / a problem doing something:
  - I had no trouble finding a place to stay. (not trouble to find)
  - Did you have any difficulty getting a visa?
  - People sometimes have problems reading my writing.

Spend time / waste time / be busy

- spend/waste (time) doing something:
  - He spent hours trying to repair the clock.
  - I waste a lot of time doing nothing.

- (be) busy doing something:
  - She said she couldn't see me. She was too busy doing other things.

Go swimming / go fishing etc.

- We use go -ing for a number of activities (especially sports).
  - For example, you can say:

  go sailing  go swimming  go fishing  go skiing
  go camping  go surfing  go scuba diving  go jogging
  go riding  go hiking  go sightseeing  go shopping

- How often do you go swimming?
- I'd like to go skiing.
- When was the last time you went shopping?
- I've never been sailing. (For gone and been, see Unit 7D.)
Exercises

63.1 Make sentences beginning There's no point ...
1 Why have a car if you never use it?
   There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
2 Why work if you don't need money?
3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.
4 Why hurry if you've got plenty of time?

63.2 Complete the sentences on the right.

1 Shall we get a taxi home? No, it isn't far. It's not worth getting a taxi.
2 If you need help, why don't you ask David? It's no use asking David. He won't be able to do anything.
3 I don't really want to go out tonight. Well, stay at home! There's no point going out if you don't want to.
4 Shall I phone Lisa now? No, it's no good phoning Lisa now. She won't be at home.
5 Are you going to complain about what happened? No, it's not worth complaining about that.
6 Do you want to keep these old clothes? Nobody will do anything about it. No, let's throw them away. They're not worth keeping.

63.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult.
   I had difficulty getting a visa.
2 I find it hard to remember people's names.
   I have a problem remembering people's names.
3 Lucy managed to get a job. It wasn't a problem.
   She had no trouble getting a job.
4 It won't be difficult to get a ticket for the game.
   You won't have any problem getting a ticket.
5 Do you find it difficult to understand him?
   Do you have difficulty understanding him?

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 I waste a lot of time doing nothing.
2 Every morning I spend about an hour reading the newspaper.
3 'What's Karen doing?' 'She's going away tomorrow, so she's busy packing.'
4 I think you waste too much time watching TV.
5 There's a beautiful view from that hill. It's worth going up to the top.
6 Just stay calm. There's no point in getting angry.

63.5 Complete these sentences with the following (with the verb in the correct form):

- go riding  - go-sailing  - go shopping  - go skiing  - go swimming

1 Ben lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often goes sailing.
2 It was a very hot day, so we went swimming in the lake.
3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to go-skiing.
4 Helen has got two horses. She rides them regularly.
5 'Where's Dan?' 'He's gone shopping. There were a few things he needed to buy.'
Study these examples:

- I phoned the restaurant to reserve a table.
- What do you need to make bread?
- We shouted to warn everybody of the danger.
- This letter is to confirm the decisions we made at our meeting last week.
- The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.

In these examples to ... (to reserve ... / to make ... etc.) tells us the purpose of something: why somebody does something, has something etc., or why something exists.

We say 'a place to park', 'something to eat', 'work to do' etc.:

- It's difficult to find a place to park in the centre. (= a place where you can park)
- Would you like something to eat? (= something that you can eat)
- Do you have much work to do? (= work that you must do)
- I get lonely if there's nobody to talk to.
- I need something to open this bottle with.

Also money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage (etc.) to do something:

- They gave us money to buy food.
- Do you have much opportunity to practise your English?
- I need a few days to think about your proposal.

Compare for ... and to ...:

**for + noun**
- We stopped for petrol.
- I had to run for the bus.

**to + verb**
- We stopped to get petrol.
- I had to run to catch the bus.

You can say 'for somebody to do something':

- There weren't any chairs for us to sit on, so we sat on the floor.

You can use for -ing or to ... to talk about the general purpose of something, or what it is generally used for:

- I use this brush for washing the dishes. or ... to wash the dishes.

But we do not use for -ing to say why somebody does something:

- I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

You can use What ... for? to ask about purpose:

- What is this switch for?
- What did you do that for?

So that

We use so that (not to ...) especially when the purpose is negative (so that ... won't/wouldn't):

- I hurried so that I wouldn't be late. (= because I didn’t want to be late)
- Eat something now so that you won’t (or don’t) get hungry later.

with can and could (so that ... can/could):

- She’s learning English so that she can study in Canada.
- We moved to London so that we could see our friends more often.

You can leave out that. So you can say:

- I hurried so that I wouldn’t be late. or I hurried so I wouldn’t be late.
Exercises

64.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make a new sentence with to ....

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shouted</td>
<td>I want to keep warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I opened the box</td>
<td>I want to go to Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m saving money</td>
<td>I wanted to report the accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need a knife</td>
<td>I wanted to warn people of the danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m wearing two sweaters</td>
<td>I want to chop these onions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I phoned the police</td>
<td>I wanted to see what was in it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I shouted to warn people of the danger.
2. I opened the box.
3. I
4.
5.
6.

64.2 Complete these sentences using to + a suitable verb.

1. The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2. I didn’t have enough time to read the newspaper today.
3. I came home by taxi. I didn’t have the energy.
4. ‘Would you like something to drink?’ ‘Yes, please. A cup of coffee.’
5. We need a bag to carry these things in.
6. There will be a meeting next week to discuss the problem.
7. Do you need a visa to the United States?
8. I saw Helen at the party, but we didn’t have a chance to talk to each other.
9. I need some new clothes. I don’t have anything nice to wear.
10. They’ve just passed their exams. They’re having a party.
11. I can’t do all this work alone. I need somebody to help me.

64.3 Put in to or for.

1. We stopped for petrol.
2. You need a lot of experience to do this job.
3. You need a lot of experience to do this job.
4. We’ll need more time to make a decision.
5. I went to the dentist for a check-up.
6. I had to put on my glasses to read the paper.
7. Do you have to wear glasses for reading?
8. I wish we had a garden for the children to play in.

64.4 Make one sentence from two, using so that.

1. I hurried. I didn’t want to be late. I hurried so that I wouldn’t be late.
2. I wore warm clothes. I didn’t want to be cold.
3. I gave Dan my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
4. We whispered. We didn’t want anybody else to hear our conversation.
5. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
6. We made a list of things to do. We didn’t want to forget anything.
7. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake.
**Adjective + to ...**

**Difficult to understand** etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- James doesn’t speak very clearly.
- He is difficult to understand him.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:
- He is difficult to understand. (not He is difficult to understand him.)

You can use the same structures with:

- easy nice safe cheap exciting impossible
- hard good dangerous expensive interesting

Do you think it is safe (for us) to drink this water?
Do you think this water is safe (for us) to drink? (not to drink it)

The questions in the exam were very difficult. It was impossible to answer them.
The questions in the exam were very difficult. They were impossible to answer.

Nicola has lots of interesting ideas. It’s interesting to talk to her.
Nicola is interesting to talk to. (not to talk to her.)

You can also use this structure with adjective + noun:
- This is a difficult question (for me) to answer. (not to answer it)

**Nice of (you) to ...**

You can say ‘It’s nice of somebody to do something’:

- It was nice of you to take me to the airport. Thank you very much.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:

- kind (in)considerate generous mean careless silly stupid unfair
- It’s silly of Ruth to give up her job when she needs the money.
- I think it was unfair of him to criticise me.

**Sorry to ... / surprised to ... etc.**

You can use adjective + to ... to say how somebody reacts to something:

- I’m sorry to hear that your mother isn’t well.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:

- glad pleased relieved surprised amazed sad disappointed
- Was Julia surprised to see you?
- It was a long and tiring journey. We were glad to get home.

**The first / the next (etc.) + to ...**

You can use to ... after the first/second/third etc., and also after the last / the next / the only ... :

- If I have any more news, you will be the first (person) to know.
- The next train to arrive at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Liverpool.
- Everybody was late except me. I was the only one to arrive on time.

You can say that something is sure/certain/likely/bound to happen:

- Carla is a very good student. She’s bound to pass the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- I’m likely to get home late tonight. (= I will probably get home late)

Afraid/interested/sorry → Unit 66  It ... → Unit 84C  Enough and too + adjective → Unit 103
Exercises

65.1 (Section A) Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.
1 It’s difficult to understand him. He is difficult to understand.
2 It’s easy to use this machine. This machine is
3 It was very difficult to open the window. The window
4 It’s impossible to translate some words. Some words
5 It’s expensive to maintain a car. A
6 It’s not safe to stand on that chair. That

65.2 (Section A) Complete the second sentence. Use the adjective in brackets and to ... as in the example.
1 I couldn’t answer the question. (difficult) It was a difficult question to answer.
2 Everybody makes that mistake. (easy) It’s an
3 I like living in this place. (nice) It’s a
4 We enjoyed watching the game. (good) It was a

65.3 (Section B) Make a new sentence beginning It ... Use one of these adjectives each time:
careless inconsiderate kind nice

1 Sue has offered to help me. It’s kind of Sue to offer to help me.
2 You make the same mistake again and again.
   It careless
3 Dan and Jenny invited me to stay with them.
   It kind
4 The neighbours make so much noise.
   It careless

65.4 (Section C) Use the following words to complete these sentences:
+/-sorry/-hear I / glad / hear pleased / meet we / surprised / see

1 I’m sorry to hear that your mother isn’t well. I hope she gets better soon.
2 I got your message. That you’re keeping well.
3 Paula at the party last night. We didn’t expect her to come.
4 ‘Tom, this is Chris.’ ‘Hi Chris. you.’

65.5 (Section D) Complete the second sentence using the words in brackets + to ...

1 Nobody spoke before me. (the first) I was the first person to speak.
2 Everybody else arrived before Paul. (the last) Paul was the
3 Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed. (the only) Emily was
4 I complained to the restaurant manager about the service. Another customer had already complained. (the second) I was
5 Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him. (the first) Neil Armstrong was

65.6 (Section E) Complete these sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.
1 Carla is a very good student. She is bound to pass the exam. (bound)
2 I’m not surprised you’re tired. After such a long journey you tired. (bound)
3 Andy has a very bad memory. He what you tell him. (sure)
4 I don’t think you need to take an umbrella. It a lot of traffic on the roads. (likely)
To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

Afraid to (do) and afraid of (doing)

I am afraid to do something = I don’t want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

We use afraid to do for things we do intentionally; we can choose to do them or not:
- This part of town is dangerous. People are afraid to walk here at night.
- (= they don’t want to walk here because it is dangerous – so they don’t)
- James was afraid to tell his parents what had happened.
- (= he didn’t want to tell them because he knew they would be angry or worried)

I am afraid of something happening = it is possible that something bad will happen (for example, an accident).

We do not use afraid of -ing for things we do intentionally:
- The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid of falling.
- (= it was possible that we would fall – not we were afraid to fall)
- I don’t like dogs. I’m always afraid of being bitten. (not afraid to be bitten)

So, you are afraid to do something because you are afraid of something happening as a result:
- I was afraid to go near the dog because I was afraid of being bitten.

Interested in (doing) and interested to (do)

I’m interested in doing something = I’m thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:
- Let me know if you’re interested in joining the club. (not to join)
- I tried to sell my car, but nobody was interested in buying it. (not to buy)

We use interested to ... to say how somebody reacts to what they hear/see/read/learn/know/find. For example, ‘I was interested to hear it’ = I heard it and it was interesting for me:
- I was interested to hear that Tanya left her job.
- Ask Mike for his opinion. I would be interested to know what he thinks. (= it would be interesting for me to know it)

This structure is the same as surprised to ... / glad to ... etc. (see Unit 65C):
- I was surprised to hear that Tanya left her job.

Sorry to (do) and sorry for/about (doing)

We use sorry to ... to say we regret something that happens (see Unit 65C):
- I was sorry to hear that Nicky lost her job. (= I was sorry when I heard that ...)
- I’ve enjoyed my stay here. I’ll be sorry to leave.

We also say sorry to ... to apologise at the time we do something:
- I’m sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something.

You can use sorry for or sorry about (doing something) to apologise for something you did before:
- I’m sorry for (or about) shouting at you yesterday. (not sorry to shout)

You can also say:
- I’m sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

We say:
- I want to (do) / I’d like to (do) but I’m thinking of (doing) / I dream of (doing)
- I failed to (do) but I succeeded in (doing)
- I allowed them to (do) but I prevented them from (doing)
- I stopped them from (doing)

For examples, see Units 54–55 and 62.
Exercises

66.1 Use the words in brackets to write sentences. Use afraid to ... or afraid of -ing.
1. The streets are unsafe at night.
   (a lot of people / afraid / go / out) A lot of people are afraid to go out.
2. We walked very carefully along the icy path.
   (we / afraid / fall) We were afraid of falling.
3. I don’t usually carry my passport with me.
   (I / afraid / lose / it)
4. I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
   (I / afraid / tell / her)
5. We rushed to the station.
   (we / afraid / miss / our train)
6. In the middle of the film there was an especially horrifying scene.
   (we / afraid / look)
7. The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
   (I / afraid / drop / it)
8. I thought the food on my plate didn’t look fresh.
   a. (I / afraid / eat / it)
   b. (I / afraid / get / sick)

66.2 Complete the sentences using in ... or to .... Use these verbs:

- buy - get - know - look - read - start

1. I’m trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested in buying it.
2. Julia is interested in setting up her own business.
3. I was interested in reading your article in the newspaper last week. It was very well written.
4. Ben wants to stay single. He’s not interested in getting married.
5. I heard from Mark recently. You’ll be interested in knowing that he’s now working in Paris.
6. I don’t enjoy sightseeing. I’m not interested in looking at old buildings.

66.3 Complete each sentence using sorry for/about ... or sorry to .... Use the verb in brackets.

1. I’m sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something. (phone)
2. I was sorry to hear that you didn’t get the job you applied for. (hear)
3. I’m sorry for saying all those bad things about you. I didn’t mean them. (say)
4. I’m sorry to disturb you, but do you have a pen I could borrow? (disturb)
5. I’m sorry to lose the book you lent me. I’ll buy you another one. (lose)

66.4 Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

1. a. We wanted to leave the building. (leave)
   b. We weren’t allowed to leave the building. (leave)
   c. We were prevented from leaving the building. (leave)
2. a. Peter failed to solve the problem. (solve)
   b. Chris succeeded in solving the problem. (solve)
3. a. I’m thinking of going away next week. (go)
   b. I’m hoping to go away next week. (go)
   c. I’d like to go away next week. (go)
   d. I’m looking forward to going away next week. (go)
4. a. Helen wanted me to buy lunch. (buy)
   b. Helen insisted that I buy lunch. (buy)
   c. Helen promised to buy lunch. (buy)
   d. Helen wouldn’t dream of buying lunch. (buy)
See somebody do and see somebody doing

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove away. You saw this. You can say:

- I saw Tom get into his car and drive away.

In this structure we use get/drive/do etc. (not to get / to drive / to do).

I saw somebody do something + I saw this

But after a passive (‘he was seen’ etc.), we use to:

- He was seen to get in the car.

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus. You can say:

- I saw Kate waiting for a bus.

In this structure we use -ing (waiting/doing etc.):

I saw somebody doing something

Study the difference in meaning between the two structures:

I saw him do something = he did something (past simple) and I saw this. I saw the complete action from beginning to end:

- He fell off the wall. I saw this. → I saw him fall off the wall.
- The accident happened. Did you see it? → Did you see the accident happen?

I saw him doing something = he was doing something (past continuous) and I saw this. I saw him when he was in the middle of doing it. This does not mean that I saw the complete action:

- He was walking along the street. I saw this when I drove past in my car. → I saw him walking along the street.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I’ve never seen her dance. or I’ve never seen her dancing.

We use these structures with see and hear, and a number of other verbs:

- I didn’t hear you come in. (you came in – I didn’t hear this)
- Lisa suddenly felt somebody touch her on the shoulder.
- Did you notice anyone go out?
- I could hear it raining. (it was raining – I could hear it)
- A man was seen running away a short time after the break-in.
- Listen to the birds singing!
- Can you smell something burning?
- We looked everywhere for Paul, and finally we found him sitting under a tree in the garden and eating an apple.
Exercises

67.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1 Did anybody go out? I don’t think so. I didn’t see anybody go out.
2 Has Sarah arrived yet? Yes, I think I heard her.
3 How do you know I took the money? I know because I saw you.
4 Did the doorbell ring? I don’t think so. I didn’t hear.
5 Can Tom play the piano? I’ve never heard.
6 Did I lock the door when I went out? Yes, I saw.
7 How did the woman fall? I don’t know. I didn’t see.

67.2 In each of these situations you and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Look! There’s Kate. We saw Kate waiting for a bus.
2 Look! There’s David and Helen. We saw David and Helen.
3 Look! There’s Clare. We saw the two boys in a restaurant.
4 Listen! That’s Bill. We heard Bill singing.
5 Can you smell burning? We could smell something burning.
6 Look! There’s Linda. We could smell something burning.

67.3 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form):

climb come crawl cry explode ride
run say sing slam sleep tell

1 Listen to the birds singing!
2 I didn’t hear you come in.
3 We listened to the old man tell his story from beginning to end.
4 Listen! Can you hear a baby crying?
5 I looked out of the window and saw Dan running his bike along the road.
6 I thought I heard somebody say ‘Hi’, so I looked round.
7 We watched two men running across the garden and through an open window into the house.
8 Everybody heard the bomb explode. It was a tremendous noise.
9 Oh! I can feel something running up my leg! It must be an insect.
10 I heard somebody slam the door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
11 When we got home, we found a cat sleeping on the kitchen table.
-ing clauses  (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Study these situations:

Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee.
You can say:
- Joe hurt his knee playing football.

You were feeling tired. So you went to bed early.
You can say:
- Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

'Playing football' and 'feeling tired' are -ing clauses.
If the -ing clause is at the beginning of the sentence (as in the second example), we write a comma (,) after it.

When two things happen at the same time, you can use an -ing clause:
- Kate is in the kitchen making coffee. (= she is in the kitchen and she is making coffee)
- A man ran out of the house shouting. (= he ran out of the house and he was shouting)
- Do something! Don't just stand there doing nothing!

We also use -ing when one action happens during another action. We use -ing for the longer action:
- Joe hurt his knee playing football. (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself shaving? (= while you were shaving)

You can also use -ing after while or when:
- Joe hurt his knee while playing football.
- Be careful when crossing the road. (= when you are crossing)

When one action happens before another action, we use having (done) for the first action:
- Having found a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
- Having finished her work, she went home.

You can also say after -ing:
- After finishing her work, she went home.

If one short action follows another short action, you can use the simple -ing form (doing instead of having done) for the first action:
- Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

You can use an -ing clause to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.

The -ing clause usually comes at the beginning of the sentence:
- Feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)
- Being unemployed, he doesn't have much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- Not having a car, she finds it difficult to get around. (= because she doesn't have a car)

Use having (done) for something that happened before something else:
- Having already seen the film twice, I didn't want to see it again. (= because I had already seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
### Exercises

#### 68.1
Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use an -ing clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Kate was in the kitchen.</td>
<td>She was trying not to make a noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Amy was sitting in an armchair.</td>
<td>She looked at the sights and took pictures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sue opened the door carefully.</td>
<td>She said she would be back in an hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Sarah went out.</td>
<td>She was reading a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Lisa was in London for two years.</td>
<td>She was making coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Anna walked around the town.</td>
<td>She worked in a bookshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Kate was in the kitchen making coffee.
2. Amy was sitting
3. Sue
4.
5.
6.

#### 68.2
Make one sentence from two using an -ing clause.

1. Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee. Joe hurt his knee playing football.
2. I was watching TV. I fell asleep. I
3. A friend of mine slipped and fell. He was getting off a bus. A friend of mine
4. I was walking home in the rain. I got very wet. I
5. Laura was driving to work yesterday. She had an accident.
6. Two people were overcome by smoke. They were trying to put out the fire.

#### 68.3
Make sentences beginning Having ... . Put the words in the correct order.

1. (went / she / work / her / home / finished) Having finished her work, she went home.
2. (tickets / the theatre / bought / into / our / went / we) Having
3. (journey / their / had / they / lunch / continued) Having
4. (the / coffee / shopping / I / a cup / went / done / for / of) Having

#### 68.4
Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not -ing (like the examples in Section D). Sometimes you need to begin with Having (done something).

1. I felt tired. So I went to bed early. Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
2. I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
3. Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn’t eat any kind of meat.
4. I didn’t know his email address. So I wasn’t able to contact him.
5. Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
6. I wasn’t able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
7. We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn’t afford to stay at a hotel.
### Countable and Uncountable 1

A noun can be **countable** or **uncountable**:

**Countable**
- I eat a **banana** every day.
- I like **bananas**.

**Banana** is a **countable** noun.

A countable noun can be singular (**banana**) or plural (**bananas**).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say ‘one banana’, ‘two bananas’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:
- Kate was singing a **song**.
- There’s a nice **beach** near here.
- Do you have a ten-pound **note**?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was an **accident**.
- There are no **batteries** in the radio.
- We don’t have enough **cups**.

**Uncountable**
- I eat **rice** every day.
- I like **rice**.

**Rice** is an **uncountable** noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (**rice**).

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say ‘one rice’, ‘two rices’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:
- Kate was listening to (some) **music**.
- There’s **sand** in my shoes.
- Do you have any **money**?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was bad **luck**.
- There is no **electricity** in this house.
- We don’t have enough **water**.

---

You can use **a/an** with singular countable nouns:

- a **beach**
- a **student**
- an **umbrella**

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):
- I want a **banana**. (**not** I want banana)
- There’s been an **accident**. (**not** There’s been accident)

You can use **plural** countable nouns alone:
- I like **bananas**. (= bananas in general)
- **Accidents** can be prevented.

---

You cannot normally use **a/an** with uncountable nouns. We do not say ‘a sand’, ‘a music’, ‘a rice’.

But you can often use a ... of. For example:

- a **bowl** / a **packet** / a **grain** of **rice**

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without **the/my/some** etc.):
- I eat **rice** every day.
- There’s **blood** on your shirt.
- Can you hear **music**?

---

You can use **some** and **any** with plural countable nouns:

- We sang **some songs**.
- Did you buy **any apples**?

We use **many** and **few** with plural countable nouns:
- We didn’t take **many pictures**.
- I have a **few things** to do.

You can use **some** and **any** with uncountable nouns:
- We listened to **some music**.
- Did you buy **any apple juice**?

We use **much** and **little** with uncountable nouns:
- We didn’t do **much shopping**.
- I have a **little work** to do.
Exercises

69.1 Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Joe goes everywhere by bike. He hasn’t got car. He hasn’t got a car.
2. Helen was listening to music when I arrived. OK
3. We went to very nice restaurant last weekend. 
4. I brush my teeth with toothpaste.
5. I use toothbrush to brush my teeth.
6. Can you tell me if there’s bank near here?
7. My brother works for insurance company in Frankfurt.
8. I don’t like violence.
9. Can you smell paint?
10. When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel.
11. We need petrol. I hope we come to petrol station soon.
12. I wonder if you can help me. I have problem.
13. I like your suggestion. It’s very interesting idea.
14. John has interview for job tomorrow.
15. I like volleyball. It’s good game.
16. Lisa doesn’t usually wear jewellery.
17. Jane was wearing beautiful necklace.

69.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.

-accident-  interview  biscuit  key  blood  moment  coat  -music-
decision  question  electricity  sugar

1. It wasn’t your fault. It was _______________
2. Listen! Can you hear _______________
3. I couldn’t get into the house because I didn’t have _______________
4. It’s very warm today. Why are you wearing _______________
5. Do you take _______________ in your coffee?
6. Are you hungry? Would you like _______________ with your coffee?
7. Our lives would be very difficult without _______________.
8. ‘I had _______________ for a job yesterday.’ ‘Did you? How did it go?’
9. The heart pumps _______________ through the body.
10. Excuse me, but can I ask you _______________
11. I’m not ready yet. Can you wait _______________, please?
12. We can’t delay much longer. We have to make _______________ soon.

69.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

-air-  patience  day  people  friend  -picture-  joke  language  space  meat  umbrella

1. I had my camera, but I didn’t take _______________.
2. There are seven _______________ in a week.
3. A vegetarian is a person who doesn’t eat _______________.
4. Outside the cinema there was _______________ of people waiting to see the film.
5. I’m not very good at telling _______________.
6. Last night I went out with some _______________ of mine.
7. There were very _______________ in town today. The streets were almost empty.
8. I’m going out for a walk. I need some fresh _______________.
9. Gary always wants things quickly. He doesn’t have much _______________.
10. I think it’s going to rain. Do you have _______________ I could borrow?
11. Do you speak any foreign _______________?
12. Our flat is very small. We don’t have much _______________.

139
Countable and uncountable 2

Many nouns can be used as countable or uncountable nouns, usually with a difference in meaning. Compare:

**Countable**
- Did you hear a noise just now? (= a specific noise)
- I bought a paper to read. (= a newspaper)
- There’s a hair in my soup! (= one single hair)
- You can stay with us. There’s a spare room. (= a room in a house)
- I had some interesting experiences while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)
- Enjoy your trip. Have a good time!

**Uncountable**
- I can’t work here. There’s too much noise. (= noise in general)
- I need some paper to write on. (= material for writing on)
- You’ve got very long hair. (not hairs) (= all the hair on your head)
- You can’t sit here. There isn’t room. (= space)
- They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience. (not experiences)
- I can’t wait. I don’t have time.

Coffee/tea/juice/beer etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:
- I don’t like coffee very much.

But you can say a coffee (= a cup of coffee), two coffees (= two cups) etc. :
- Two coffees and an orange juice, please.

The following nouns are usually uncountable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accommodation</th>
<th>Behaviour</th>
<th>Damage</th>
<th>Luck</th>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Traffic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>Bread</td>
<td>Chaos</td>
<td>News</td>
<td>Scenery</td>
<td>Weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage</td>
<td>Furniture</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>Luggage</td>
<td>Progress</td>
<td>Work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You cannot use a/an with these nouns:
- I’m going to buy some bread. or … a loaf of bread. (not a bread)
- Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good weather. (not a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.):
- Where are you going to put all your furniture? (not furnitures)
- Let me know if you need more information. (not informations)

**News** is uncountable, not plural:
- The news was very depressing. (not The news were)

**Travel** (noun) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean a trip or a journey:
- They spend a lot of money on travel.
- We had a very good trip/journey. (not a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

**Countable**
- I’m looking for a job.
- What a beautiful view!
- It’s a nice day today.
- We had a lot of bags and cases.
- These chairs are mine.
- That’s a good suggestion.

**Uncountable**
- I’m looking for work. (not a work)
- What beautiful scenery!
- It’s nice weather today.
- We had a lot of baggage/luggage.
- This furniture is mine.
- That’s good advice.
Exercises

70.1 Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is correct?
1 'Did you hear -noise / a noise just now?' 'No, I didn't hear anything.' (a noise is correct)
2 a If you want to know the news, you can read paper / a paper.
   b I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
3 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
   b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
4 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn’t have time / a time for breakfast.
   b 'Did you have a good holiday?' 'Yes, we had wonderful time / a wonderful time.'
5 This is nice room / a nice room. Did you decorate it yourself?
6 Sue was very helpful. She gave us some very useful advice / advices.
7 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away?
8 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
9 Is it difficult to find a work / job at the moment?
10 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
11 When the fire alarm rang, there was total chaos / a total chaos.
12 I had to buy a bread / some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.
13 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
14 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.
15 The damage / The damages caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

70.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advice</th>
<th>chair</th>
<th>experience</th>
<th>experience</th>
<th>furniture</th>
<th>progress</th>
<th>hair</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>permission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I didn’t have much luggage—just two small bags.
2 They’ll tell you all you want to know. They’ll give you plenty of information.
3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of chairs.
4 We have no furniture, not even a bed or a table.
5 ‘What does Alan look like?’ ‘He’s got a long beard and very short hair.’
6 Carla’s English is better than it was. She’s made progress.
7 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get a job.
8 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get a job.
9 If you want to leave early, you have to ask for permission.
10 I didn’t know what to do. So I asked Chris for advice.
11 I don’t think Dan should get the job. He doesn’t have enough experience.
12 Nicola has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her experience.

70.3 What do you say in these situations? Use a word from Section B (luggage, weather etc.) in each sentence.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can’t see any cases or bags.
   You ask them: Do you have any luggage?
2 You go into the tourist office. You want to know about places to see in the town.
   You say: I’d like information about places to see in the town.
3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do.
   You say: Can you give me advice about which courses to do?
4 You want to watch the news on TV, but you don’t know when it is on.
   You ask your friend: What time is the news on TV?
5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It’s beautiful.
   You say: It’s a beautiful view, isn’t it?
6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy.
   You say: What a miserable day it is!
Countable nouns with **a/an** and **some**

**Countable nouns can be singular or plural:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>More than one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a dog</td>
<td>dogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a child</td>
<td>some children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the evening</td>
<td>the evenings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this party</td>
<td>these parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an umbrella</td>
<td>two umbrellas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Before singular countable nouns you can use **a/an**:
- Bye! Have a nice **evening**.
- Do you need an **umbrella**?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):
- She never wears a hat. (not She never wears hat)
- Be careful of the dog. (not Be careful of dog)
- What a beautiful day!
- I’ve got a headache.

We use **a/an** … to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:
- That’s a **nice table**.

In the plural we use the noun alone (not some …):
- Those are **nice chairs**. (not some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

**A dog is** an **animal**.

**Dogs are** animals.

**I’m an optimist**.

**We’re optimists**.

**Tom’s father is a doctor**.

**Most of my friends are students**.

**Are you a good driver?**

**Are they good students?**

**Jane is a really nice person**.

**Jane’s parents are really nice people**.

**What a lovely dress!**

**What awful shoes!**

We say that somebody has **a long nose / a nice face / blue eyes / small hands** etc.:

- Jack has **a long nose**. (not the long nose)
- Jack has **blue eyes**. (not the blue eyes)

Remember to use **a/an** when you say what somebody’s job is:

- Sandra is a **nurse**. (not Sandra is nurse)
- Would you like to be an **English teacher**?

You can use **some** with plural countable nouns. We use **some** in two ways.

**1)** **Some** = a number of / a few of / a pair of:
- I’ve seen **some good movies** recently. (not I’ve seen good movies)
- **Some friends** of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
- I need **some new sunglasses**. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Do not use **some** when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):
- I love **bananas**. (not some bananas)
- My aunt is a writer. She writes **books**. (not some books)

**2)** **Some** = some but not all:
- **Some children** learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- Tomorrow there will be rain in **some places**, but most of the country will be dry.
Exercises

71.1 What are these things? Use a dictionary if necessary.
1 an ant? It's an insect.
2 ants and bees? They're insects.
3 a cauliflower?
4 chess?
5 a pigeon, an eagle and a crow?
6 a skyscraper?
7 Earth, Mars, Venus and Jupiter?
8 a tulip?
9 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong?
10 a violin, a trumpet and a flute?

Who were these people?
11 Beethoven? He was a composer.
12 Shakespeare?
13 Albert Einstein?
14 Washington, Lincoln and Kennedy?
15 Marilyn Monroe?
16 Michael Jackson and John Lennon?
17 Van Gogh, Renoir and Picasso?

71.2 Read about what these people do, and say what their jobs are. Choose from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chef</th>
<th>interpreter</th>
<th>journalist</th>
<th>nurse</th>
<th>plumber</th>
<th>surgeon</th>
<th>tour guide</th>
<th>waiter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.
2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He's a waiter.
3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper.
4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people.
5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant.
6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes.
7 Martina takes visitors round her city and tells them about it. She's a tour guide.
8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another so that they can understand each other.

71.3 Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 I've seen some good films recently.
2 What's wrong with you? Have you got a headache?
3 I know a lot of people. Most of them are students.
4 When I was a child, I used to be very shy.
5 Would you like to be an actor?
6 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking questions!
7 What a beautiful garden!
8 These birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
9 Do you like staying in hotels?
10 I've been walking for three hours. I've got sore feet.
11 I don't feel very well this morning. I've got sore throat.
12 Maria speaks English, but not very much.
13 It's a shame we don't have a camera. I'd like to take a picture of that house.
14 Those are some nice shoes. Where did you get them?
15 I'm going shopping. I want to buy new shoes.
16 You need a visa to visit some countries, but not all of them.
17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
18 I don't believe him. He's a liar. He's always telling lies.
A/AN and THE

Study this example:

Joe says 'a sandwich', 'an apple' because this is the first time he talks about them. Joe now says 'the sandwich', 'the apple' because Karen knows which sandwich and which apple he means – the sandwich and the apple that he had for lunch.

Compare a and the in these examples:

- A man and a woman were sitting opposite me. The man was American, but I think the woman was British.
- When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel. Sometimes we ate at the hotel and sometimes we went to a restaurant.

We use the when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare a/an and the:

- Tim sat down on a chair. (perhaps one of many chairs in the room)
- Tim sat down on the chair nearest the door. (a specific chair)
- Paula is looking for a job. (not a specific job)
- Did Paula get the job she applied for? (a specific job)
- Do you have a car? (not a specific car)
- I cleaned the car yesterday. (= my car)

We use the when it is clear in the situation which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet etc. :

- Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)
- I took a taxi to the station. (= the station in that town)
- (in a shop) I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)

In the same way, we say (go to) the bank / the post office:

- I have to go to the bank and then I'm going to the post office. (The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

We also say (go to) the doctor / the dentist:

- Clare isn't very well. She's gone to the doctor. (= her usual doctor)
- I don't like going to the dentist.

Compare the and a:

- I have to go to the bank today.
- Is there a bank near here?
- I don't like going to the dentist.
- My sister is a dentist.

We say 'once a week / three times a day / £1.50 a kilo' etc. :

- 'How often do you go to the cinema?' 'About once a month.'
- 'How much are those potatoes?' '£1.50 a kilo.'
- Helen works eight hours a day, six days a week.
Exercises

72.1 Put in a/an or the.

1. This morning I bought __________ newspaper and __________ magazine. __________ newspaper is in my bag, but I can’t remember where I put __________ magazine.
2. I saw __________ accident this morning. __________ car crashed into __________ tree. __________ driver of __________ car wasn’t hurt, but __________ car was badly damaged.
3. There are two cars parked outside: __________ blue one and __________ grey one. __________ blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don’t know who __________ owner of __________ grey one is.
4. My friends live in __________ old house in __________ small village. There is __________ beautiful garden behind __________ house. I would like to have __________ garden like that.

72.2 Put in a/an or the.

1. a. This house is very nice. Has it got __________ garden?
   b. It’s a beautiful day. Let’s sit in __________ garden.
   c. I like living in this house, but it’s a shame that __________ garden is so small.
2. a. Can you recommend __________ good restaurant?
   b. We had dinner in __________ very nice restaurant.
   c. We had dinner in __________ best restaurant in town.
3. a. She has __________ French name, but in fact she’s English, not French.
   b. What’s __________ name of that man we met yesterday?
   c. We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can’t remember __________ name now.
4. a. There isn’t __________ airport near where I live. __________ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
   b. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait at __________ airport for three hours.
   c. Excuse me, please. Can you tell me how to get to __________ airport?
5. a. ‘Are you going away next week?’ ‘No, __________ week after next.’
   b. I’m going away for __________ week in September.
   c. Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings __________ week.

72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Would you like apple?
2. How often do you go to dentist?
3. Could you close door, please?
4. I’m sorry. I didn’t mean to do that. It was mistake.
5. Excuse me, where is bus station, please?
6. I have problem. Can you help me?
7. I’m just going to post office. I won’t be long.
8. There were no chairs, so we sat on floor
9. Have you finished with book I lent you?
10. My sister has just got job in bank in Zurich.
11. We live in small apartment in city centre.
12. There’s supermarket at end of street I live in.

72.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Where possible, use the structure in Section D (once a week / three times a day etc.).

1. How often do you go to the cinema? __________
2. How often do you go to the cinema? __________
3. How often do you go away on holidays? __________
4. What’s the usual speed limit in towns in your country? __________
5. How much sleep do you need? __________
6. How often do you go out in the evening? __________
7. How much television do you watch (on average)? __________
8. How much does it cost to rent a small car in your country? __________
We use **the** when there is only one of something:
- Have you ever crossed **the equator**?
- What’s **the longest river** in Europe?
- Our apartment is on **the tenth floor**.
- Buenos Aires is **the capital** of Argentina.
- I’m going away at **the end** of this month.

We use **the** before **same** (**the same**):
- Your sweater is **the same** colour as mine. (**not** is same colour)
- ‘Are these keys **the same**?’ ‘No, they’re different.’

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the sun</th>
<th>the moon</th>
<th>the earth</th>
<th>the world</th>
<th>the universe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the sky</td>
<td>the sea</td>
<td>the ground</td>
<td>the environment</td>
<td>the internet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I love to look at the stars in **the sky**. (**not** in sky)
- **The internet** has changed the way we live.
- We need to do more to protect **the environment**. (**=** the natural world around us)
- **The earth** goes round **the sun**, and **the moon** goes round **the earth**.

We also use ‘**Earth**’ (**without** the) when we think of it as a planet in space (**like** Mars, Jupiter etc.).
- Which planet is nearest **Earth**?

We say **space** (**without the**) when we mean ‘space in the universe’. Compare
- There are millions of stars **in space**. (**not** in the space)
- I tried to park my car, but **the space** was too small.

We use **a/an** to say what kind of thing something is (**see Unit 71B**). Compare **the** and **a**:
- **The** sun is a star. (**=** one of many stars)
- **The** hotel we stayed at was a very nice hotel.

We say: (**go to**) **the cinema**, **the theatre**.
- I go to **the cinema** a lot, but I haven’t been to **the theatre** for ages.

When we say **the cinema** / **the theatre**, we do not necessarily mean a specific cinema or theatre.

We usually say **the radio**, but **television**/**TV** (**without** the). Compare:
- I listen to **the radio** a lot. **but** I watch **television** a lot.
- We heard it on **the radio**. **but** We watched it on **TV**.

**The television** / **the TV** = the television set:
- Can you turn off **the television**, please?

We do not normally use **the** with **breakfast/lunch/dinner**:
- What did you have for **breakfast**?
- We had **lunch** in a very nice restaurant.

But we use **a/an** if we say ‘**a big** lunch’, ‘**a wonderful** dinner’, ‘**an early** breakfast’ etc.: 
- We had a **very nice** lunch. (**not** We had very nice lunch)

We do not **use the** before **noun + number**. For example, we say:
- Our train leaves from **Platform 5**. (**not** the Platform 5)
- **(in a shop)** Do you have these shoes in **size 43**? (**not** the size 43)

In the same way, we say: **Room 126** (**in a hotel**), **page 29** (**of a book**), **question 3** (**in an exam**), **Gate 10** (**at an airport**) etc.
Exercises

73.1 Put in the or a where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 A: Our apartment is on __________ tenth floor.
   B: Is it? I hope there’s __________ lift.
2 A: Did you have __________ nice holiday?
   B: Yes, it was __________ best holiday I’ve ever had.
3 A: Where’s __________ nearest shop?
   B: There’s one at __________ end of this street.
4 A: It’s __________ lovely day, isn’t it?
   B: Yes, there isn’t __________ cloud in __________ sky.
5 A: I’ve got a problem with my computer. It isn’t connecting to __________ internet.
   B: That’s interesting. I’ve got __________ same problem with mine.
6 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at __________ most expensive hotel in town.
   B: Why didn’t you stay at __________ cheaper hotel?
7 A: Would you like to travel in __________ space?
   B: Yes, I’d love to go to __________ moon.
8 A: What’s Jupiter? Is it __________ star?
   B: No, it’s __________ largest planet in __________ solar system.

73.2 Put in the where necessary. If you don’t need the, leave the space empty.

1 I haven’t been to __________ cinema for ages.
2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching __________ TV.
3 Do you ever listen to __________ radio?
4 __________ television was on, but nobody was watching it.
5 Have you had __________ dinner yet?
6 Lisa and I arrived at __________ same time.
7 What’s __________ capital city of Canada?
8 What do you want for __________ breakfast?
9 I lay down on __________ ground and looked up at __________ sky.

73.3 Put in the or a where necessary. (See Unit 72 for a and the if necessary.)

1 Sun is star. __________ sun is __________ star.
2 I’m fed up with doing same thing every day.
3 Room 25 is on second floor.
4 Moon goes round earth every 27 days.
5 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year.
6 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea.
7 What’s on at cinema this week?
8 I like to eat good breakfast before I go to work.
9 We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform.
10 Next train to London leaves from __________ Platform 3.
11 You’ll find information you need at top of __________ page 15.

73.4 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

breakfast  cinema  dinner  gate  Gate 21  question 8  sea

1 Are you going out this evening?’ ‘Yes, after __________ dinner.’
2 There was no wind, so __________ was very calm.
3 The test wasn’t too difficult, but I couldn’t answer __________
4 I’m going to __________ tonight.’ ‘Are you? What film are you going to see?’
5 I didn’t have time for __________ this morning because I was in a hurry.
6 Oh, __________ is open. I must have forgotten to shut it.
7 (airport announcement) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at __________.
The 2 (school / the school etc.)

Compare school and the school:

Ellie is ten years old. Every day she goes to school. She's at school now. School starts at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes to school or is at school (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of school as a general idea – children learning in a classroom.

Today Ellie’s mother wants to speak to her daughter’s teacher. So she has gone to the school to see her. She’s at the school now.

Ellie’s mother is not a student. She is not 'at school', she doesn’t 'go to school'. If she wants to see Ellie’s teacher, she goes to the school (=Ellie’s school, a specific building).

We use prison (or jail), hospital, university, college and church in a similar way. We do not use the when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for.

Compare:

- Ken’s brother is in prison for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)
- Joe had an accident last week. He was taken to hospital. He’s still in hospital now. (as a patient)
- When I leave school, I plan to go to university / go to college. (as a student)
- Sally’s father goes to church every Sunday. (to take part in a religious service)

With most other places, you need the. For example, the station, the cinema, (see Units 72C and 73C).

We say go to bed / be in bed etc. (not the bed):

- I’m going to bed now. Goodnight.
- Do you ever have breakfast in bed?

but

- I sat down on the bed. (a specific piece of furniture)

We say go to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc. (not the work):

- Chris didn’t go to work yesterday.
- What time do you usually finish work?

We say go home / come home / arrive home / get home / be at home etc.:

- It’s late. Let’s go home.
- Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

We say go to sea / be at sea (without the) when the meaning is 'go/be on a voyage':

- Keith works on ships. He’s at sea most of the time.

but

- I’d like to live near the sea.
- It can be dangerous to swim in the sea.
Exercises

74.1 Complete each sentence using a preposition (to/at/in etc.) + one of these words:

bed   home   hospital   hospital   prison   school   university   work

1. Two people were injured in the accident and were taken _______ to hospital.
2. In Britain, children from the age of five have to go _______.
3. Mark didn’t go out last night. He stayed _______.
4. There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going _______.
5. Kate’s mother has just had an operation. She is still _______.
6. When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study economics _______.
7. Ben never gets up before 9 o’clock. It’s 8.30 now, so he is still _______.
8. If people commit crimes, they may be sent _______.

74.2 Complete the sentences with school or the school.
1. Why aren’t your children at _______ today? Are they ill?
2. When he was younger, Tim hated _______.
3. There were some parents waiting outside _______ to meet their children.
4. _______ usually starts at 8.30 in the morning.
5. A: How do your children get to and from _______? By bus?
   B: No, they walk. _______ isn’t very far.
6. What sort of job does Emily want to do when she leaves _______?

74.3 Some of these sentences need the. Correct them where necessary.
1. a. ‘How old is university?’ ‘About 200 years.’ the university
   b. In your country do many people go to university?
   c. If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study at university.
   d. This is a small town, but university is the biggest in the country.
2. a. My brother has always been healthy. He’s never been in hospital.
   b. When Ann was ill, I went to hospital to visit her. When I was there, I met Lisa who is a nurse at hospital.
   c. A woman was injured in the accident and was taken to hospital.
3. a. John’s mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church every Sunday.
   b. John himself doesn’t go to church.
   c. John went to church to take some pictures of the building.
4. a. Why is she in prison? What did she do?
   b. A few days ago firefighters were called to prison to put out a fire.
   c. Do you think too many people are sent to prison?

74.4 Which is correct?
1. How did you get home / get to home after the party? (get home is correct)
2. I like to read in bed / in the bed before I go to sleep.
3. Shall we meet after work / after the work tomorrow evening?
4. I love swimming in sea / in the sea.
5. It’s nice to travel around, but there’s no place like home / like the home!
6. Sam likes to go to bed / go to the bed early, and get up early.
7. I didn’t sleep well in the hotel. Bed / The bed was uncomfortable.
8. How long did it take to cross the ocean? How long were you at sea / at the sea?
9. What time do you usually start work / the work in the morning?
The 3 (children / the children)

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do not use the:

- I'm afraid of dogs. (not the dogs)
- (dogs = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- Doctors are usually paid more than teachers.
- Do you know anybody who collects stamps?
- Crime is a problem in most big cities. (not The crime)
- Life has changed a lot in the last thirty years. (not The life)
- Do you like classical music / Chinese food / fast cars?
- My favourite sport is football/skiing/athletics.
- My favourite subject at school was history/physics/English.

We say 'most people / most books / most cars' etc. (not the most ...):

- Most shops accept credit cards. (not The most shops)

We use the when we mean specific things or people.
Compare:

*In general (without the)*

- Children learn from playing. (= children in general)
- I couldn't live without music.
- All cars have wheels.
- Sugar isn't very good for you.
- English people drink a lot of tea. (= English people in general)

*Specific people or things (with the)*

- We took the children to the zoo. (= a specific group, perhaps the speaker's children)
- The film wasn't very good, but I liked the music. (= the music in the film)
- All the cars in this car park belong to people who work here.
- Can you pass the sugar, please? (= the sugar on the table)
- The English people I know drink a lot of tea. (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.
Compare:

*In general (without the)*

- I like working with people. (= people in general)
- I like working with people who say what they think. (not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)
- Do you like coffee? (= coffee in general)
- Do you like strong black coffee? (not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

*Specific people or things (with the)*

- I like the people I work with. (= a specific group of people)
- I didn't like the coffee we had after dinner. (= specific coffee)
Choose four of these things and write whether you like them or not:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bananas</th>
<th>hot-weather</th>
<th>boxing</th>
<th>maths</th>
<th>cats</th>
<th>opera</th>
<th>crowds</th>
<th>snow</th>
<th>fast food</th>
<th>supermarkets</th>
<th>horror movies</th>
<th>zoos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Begin each sentence with one of these:

I like ... / I don't like ... I don't mind ... 
I love ... / I hate ... I'm interested in ... / I'm not interested in ...

1. I don't like hot weather very much.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

- (the) basketball
- (the) questions
- (the) meat
- (the) patiance
- (the) people
- (the) grass
- (the) information
- (the) hotels
- (the) water
- (the) spiders
- (the) lies

1. My favourite sport is basketball.
2. The information we were given wasn’t correct.
3. Some people are afraid of ________.
4. A vegetarian is somebody who doesn’t eat ________.
5. The test wasn’t very difficult. I answered ________ without difficulty.
6. Do you know ________ who live next door?
7. ________ is the study of the past.
8. It’s better to tell the truth. Telling ________ usually causes problems.
9. We couldn’t find anywhere to stay in the town. ________ were full.
10. ________ in the pool didn’t look very clean, so we didn’t go for a swim.
11. Don’t sit on ________. It’s wet after the rain.
12. You need ________ to teach young children.

Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. I’m afraid of dogs / the dogs. (dogs is correct)
2. Apples / The apples are good for you.
3. Look at apples / the apples on that tree! They’re very big.
5. I don’t drink tea / the tea. I don’t like it.
6. We had a very good meal. Vegetables / The vegetables were especially good.
7. Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
8. I enjoy holidays / the holidays by the sea.
9. How much money does the government spend on education / the education?
10. Who are people / the people in this picture?
11. What makes people / the people violent? What causes aggression / the aggression?
12. All books / The all books on the top shelf belong to me.
13. Don’t stay in that hotel. It’s very noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
14. A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
15. First World War / The First World War lasted from 1914 until 1918.
16. I don’t like films / the films that don’t have happy endings.
17. Someone gave me a book about history / the history of modern art / the modern art.
18. Rob and Louise got married, but marriage / the marriage didn’t last very long.
19. Most people / The most people believe that marriage / the marriage and family life / the family life are the basis of society / the society.
The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc.; the + adjective)

Study these sentences:

- The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.
- The bicycle is an excellent means of transport.
- When was the telephone invented?
- The dollar is the currency of the United States.

In these examples, the ... does not mean one specific thing.

The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe.

We use the in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.

In the same way we use the for musical instruments:

- Can you play the guitar?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare a and the:

- I'd like to have a piano. but I can't play the piano.
- We saw a giraffe at the zoo. but The giraffe is my favourite animal.

Note that we use man (= human beings in general / the human race) without the:

- What do you know about the origins of man? (not the man)

The + adjective

We use the + adjective (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the young</th>
<th>the rich</th>
<th>the sick</th>
<th>the injured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the old</td>
<td>the poor</td>
<td>the disabled</td>
<td>the dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the elderly</td>
<td>the homeless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The young = young people, the rich = rich people etc.:

- Do you think the rich should pay higher taxes?
- We need to do more to help the homeless.

The young / the rich / the injured etc. are plural in meaning. For example, you cannot say 'a young' or 'the injured' for one person. You must say 'a young person', 'the injured woman' etc.

Note that we say 'the poor' (not the poors), 'the young' (not the youngs) etc.

The + nationality

You can use the + nationality adjectives that end in -ch or -sh (the French / the English / the Spanish etc.). The meaning is 'the people of that country':

- The French are famous for their food. (= the people of France)

The French / the English etc. are plural in meaning. We do not say 'a French / an English'. You have to say a Frenchman / an Englishwoman etc.

We also use the + nationality words ending in -ese (the Chinese / the Sudanese / the Japanese etc.):

- The Chinese invented printing.

But these words can also be singular (a Chinese, a Japanese etc.).

Note also: a Swiss (singular) and the Swiss (= the people of Switzerland)

With other nationalities, the plural noun ends in -s. For example:

- an Italian → Italians     a Mexican → Mexicans     a Turk → Turks

With these words (Italians etc.), we do not normally use the to talk about the people in general (see Unit 75).
Exercises

76.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don’t forget the. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1. a Which of the animals is tallest? b Which animal can run fastest? c Which of these animals is found in Australia?
2. a Which of these birds has a long neck? b Which of these birds cannot fly? c Which bird flies at night?
3. a Which of these inventions is oldest? b Which one is most recent? c Which one was especially important for astronomy?
4. a What is the currency of India? b What is the currency of Canada? c And the currency of your country?

Put in the or a.

1. When was the telephone invented?
2. Can you play a musical instrument?
3. Jessica plays a violin in an orchestra.
4. There is a piano in the corner of the room.
5. Can you play the piano?
6. Our society is based on a family.
7. Martin comes from a large family.
8. The computer has changed the way we live.

Complete these sentences using the + the following:

injured poor rich sick unemployed young

1. The young have the future in their hands.
2. Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took the injured to hospital.
3. Life is all right if you have a job, but things are not so easy for the unemployed.
4. Helen has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for the sick.
5. In England there is an old story about a man called Robin Hood. It is said that he robbed the rich and gave the money to the poor.

What do you call the people of these countries?

1. Canada a Canadian Canadians
2. Germany
3. France
4. Russia
5. China
6. Brazil
7. England
8. and your country
Names with and without **the** 1

We do **not** use **the** with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the same way, we do **not** use **the** with most names of places. For example:

| continents | Africa (not the Africa), Europe, South America |
| countries, states etc. | France (not the France), Japan, Brazil, Texas |
| islands | Sicily, Bermuda, Tasmania |
| cities, towns etc. | Cairo, New York, Bangkok |
| mountains | Everest, Etna, Kilimanjaro |

But we use **the** in names with **Republic, Kingdom, States** etc.:

- the Czech Republic
- the Dominican Republic
- the United Kingdom (the UK)
- the United States of America (the USA)

Compare:

- Have you been to Canada or the United States?

When we use Mr/Mrs/Captain/Doctor etc. + a name, we do not use **the**. So we say:

- Mr Johnson / Doctor Johnson / Captain Johnson / President Johnson etc. (not the ...)
- Uncle Robert / Saint Catherine / Princess Maria etc. (not the ...)

Compare:

- We called the doctor.
  We called Doctor Johnson. (not the Doctor Johnson)

We use **Mount** (= mountain) and **Lake** before a name in the same way (without **the**):

- Mount Everest (not the ...)
- Mount Etna
- Lake Superior
- Lake Victoria

Compare:

- They live near the lake.
  They live near Lake Superior. (not the Lake Superior)

We use **the** with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Red Sea
- the Indian Ocean
- the Channel (between France and Britain)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Nile
- the Amazon
- the Suez Canal

We use **the** with the names of deserts:

- the Sahara (Desert)
- the Gobi Desert

We use **the** with **plural** names of people and places:

| people | the Taylors (= the Taylor family), the Johnsons |
| countries | the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States |
| groups of islands | the Canaries / the Canary Islands, the Bahamas |
| mountain ranges | the Rocky Mountains / the Rockies, the Andes, the Alps |

- The highest mountain in the Andes is (Mount) Aconcagua.

- The north (of Brazil) but northern Brazil (without the)
- the south-east (of Spain) but south-eastern Spain

Compare:

- Sweden is in northern Europe; Spain is in the south.

Also the Middle East, the Far East

We also use north/south etc. (without **the**) in the names of some regions and countries:

- North America
- South Africa

Note that on maps, **the** is not usually included in the name.
Exercises

77.1 Put in the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. Who is _______ Doctor Johnson? (the sentence is complete without the)
2. I was ill, so I went to see _______ doctor.
3. The most powerful person in _______ United States is _______ president.
4. _______ President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
5. Do you know _______ Wilsons? They’re a very nice couple.
6. I’m looking for _______ Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?

77.2 Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Everest was first climbed in 1953.
2. Milan is in north of Italy.
3. Africa is much larger than Europe.
4. Last year I visited Mexico and United States.
5. South of England is warmer than north.
6. Portugal is in western Europe.
7. France and Britain are separated by Channel.
8. James has travelled a lot in Middle East.
9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan.
10. Next year we’re going skiing in Swiss Alps.
11. UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
12. Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.
13. The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro.
14. River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and write the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes. Use an atlas if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>continents</th>
<th>countries</th>
<th>oceans and seas</th>
<th>mountains</th>
<th>rivers and canals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
<td>Alps</td>
<td>Amazon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Indian Ocean</td>
<td>Andes</td>
<td>Rhine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Pacific</td>
<td>Himalayas</td>
<td>Danube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>Rockies</td>
<td>Thames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Mediterranean</td>
<td>Urals</td>
<td>Nile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Volga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? _______ the Atlantic
2. Where is Argentina?
3. Which is the longest river in Africa?
4. Of which country is Stockholm the capital?
5. Of which country is Washington the capital?
6. What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America?
7. What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?
8. Which is the smallest continent in the world?
9. What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia?
10. What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia?
11. Which river flows through London?
12. Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?
13. Of which country is Bangkok the capital?
14. What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans?
15. Which is the longest river in South America?
Names without the

We do not use the with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc.:
- Union Street (not the …)
- Fifth Avenue
- Queens Road
- Broadway
- Times Square

Names of important public buildings and institutions (for example, airports, stations, universities) are often two words:
- Manchester Airport
- Harvard University

The first word is the name of a place (‘Manchester’) or a person (‘Harvard’). These names are usually without the. In the same way, we say:
- Victoria Station (not the …)
- Canterbury Cathedral
- Edinburgh Castle
- Buckingham Palace
- Cambridge University

Compare:
- Buckingham Palace (not the …) but the Royal Palace

(‘Royal’ is an adjective – it is not a name like ‘Buckingham’)

Most other buildings have names with the. For example:

hotels: the Sheraton Hotel, the Holiday Inn
theatres/cinemas: the Palace Theatre, the Odeon (cinema)
museums/galleries: the Guggenheim Museum, the National Gallery
other buildings: the Empire State (Building), the White House, the Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:
- the Sheraton (Hotel)
- the Palace (Theatre)
- the Guggenheim (Museum)

Some names are only the + noun, for example:
- the Acropolis
- the Kremlin
- the Pentagon

Names with of usually have the. For example:
- the Bank of England
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the Tower of London

Note that we say:
- the University of Cambridge but Cambridge University (without the)

Many shops, restaurants, hotels, banks etc. are named after people. These names end in -’s or -s.

We do not use the with these names:
- McDonald’s (not the …)
- Barclays (bank)
- Joe’s Diner (restaurant)
- Macy’s (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):
- St John’s Church (not the St John’s Church)
- St Patrick’s Cathedral

Most newspapers and many organisations have names with the:

newspapers: the Washington Post, the Financial Times, the Sun
organisations: the European Union, the BBC, the Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without the:
- Fiat (not the Fiat)
- Sony
- Singapore Airlines
- Kodak
- IBM
- Yale University Press
Exercises

78.1 Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)

1. Is there a cinema near here? Yes, the Odeon in Market Street
2. Is there a supermarket near here? Yes, Blackstone's Books in Forest Street
3. Is there a hotel near here? Yes, Crown Hotel in the Park Road
4. Is there a church near here? Yes, St. Peter's Church in Carter Road
5. Is there a museum near here? Yes, City Museum in George Street
6. Is there a bookshop near here? Yes, Market Street Books in Market Street
7. Is there a restaurant near here? Yes, Mario's Pizza in Market Street
8. Is there a park near here? Yes, Park Road at the end of Market Street

78.2 Where are the following? Use the where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acropolis</th>
<th>Broadway</th>
<th>Buckingham Palace</th>
<th>Eiffel Tower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kremlin</td>
<td>White House</td>
<td>Gatwick Airport</td>
<td>Times Square</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Times Square is in New York.
2. is in Paris.
3. is in London.
4. is in Washington.
5. is in Moscow.
6. is in New York.
7. is in Athens.
8. is near London.

78.3 Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. Have you ever been to British Museum / the British Museum? (the British Museum is correct)
2. The biggest park in New York is Central Park / the Central Park.
3. My favourite park in London is St James's Park / the St James's Park.
4. Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
5. Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
6. Jack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
7. If you’re looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison’s / the Harrison’s.
8. If you’re looking for a hotel, I would recommend Park Plaza / the Park Plaza.
10. You should go to Science Museum / the Science Museum. It’s very interesting.
11. Andy works for IBM / the IBM now. He used to work for British Telecom / the British Telecom.
12. ‘Which cinema are you going to this evening?’ ‘Classic / The Classic.’
13. I’d like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
14. ‘Which newspaper do you want?’ ‘Times / The Times.’
16. ‘What’s that building?’ ‘It’s College of Art / the College of Art.’
Singular and plural

Sometimes we use a plural noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

- trousers (two legs)
- also jeans/tights/shorts/pants
- pyjamas (top and bottom)
- glasses
- binoculars
- scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:
- My trousers are too long. (not my trousers is)

You can also use a pair of + these words:
- Those are nice jeans. or That's a nice pair of jeans. (not a nice jeans)
- I need some new glasses. or I need a new pair of glasses.

Some nouns end in -ics, but are not usually plural. For example:
- athletics  economics  electronics  gymnastics
- maths (= mathematics)  physics  politics
- Gymnastics is my favourite sport. (not Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):
- What time is the news on TV? (not are the news)

Some words ending in -s can be singular or plural. For example:
- means  a means of transport  many means of transport
- series  a television series  two television series
- species  a species of bird  200 species of bird

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:
- audience  committee  company  family  firm  government  staff  team

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:
- The government (= they) have decided to increase taxes.
- The staff at the company (= they) are not happy with their working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a sports team or a company:
- Italy are playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).
- Shell have increased the price of petrol.

A singular verb (The government wants ... / Shell has ... etc.) is also possible.

We use a plural verb with police:
- The police are investigating the crime, but haven't arrested anyone yet.
  (not The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman (not a police).

We do not often use the plural of person ('persons'). We normally use people (a plural word):
- He's a nice person. but They are nice people. (not nice persons)
- Many people don't have enough to eat. (not Many people doesn't)

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as one thing. So we use a singular verb:
- Fifty thousand pounds (= it) was stolen in the robbery. (not were stolen)
- Three years (= it) is a long time to be without a job. (not Three years are)
- Two miles isn't very far to walk.
Exercises

79.1 Complete each sentence using a word from Sections A or B. Sometimes you need a or some.

1. My eyesight isn’t very good. I need ___ glasses ___.
2. A species is a group of animals or plants that have the same characteristics.
3. Footballers don’t wear trousers when they play. They wear ____________________________.
4. The bicycle is ____________________________ of transport.
5. The bicycle and the car are ____________________________ of transport.
6. I want to cut this piece of material. I need ____________________________.
7. A friend of mine is writing ____________________________ of articles for the local newspaper.
8. There are a lot of American TV ____________________________ shown on TV in Britain.
9. While we were out walking, we saw many different ____________________________ of bird.

79.2 In each example the words on the left are connected with an activity (for example, a sport or an academic subject). Write the name of the activity. The beginning of the word is given.

1. calculate algebra equation __mathematics__
2. government election minister __p__
3. finance trade employment __e__
4. running jumping throwing __a__
5. light heat gravity __ph__
6. exercises somersault parallel bars __gy__
7. processor silicon chip gigabyte __el__

79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In two sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

1. Gymnastics is / are my favourite sport. (is is correct)
2. The trousers you bought for me doesn’t / don’t fit me.
3. The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery last week.
4. Physics was / were my best subject at school.
5. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn’t / aren’t sharp enough.
6. It’s a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
7. Fortunately the news wasn’t / weren’t as bad as we expected.
8. Where does / do your family live?
9. I can’t find my binoculars. Do you know where it is / they are?
10. Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
11. Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night, but it’s not on TV.
12. Most people enjoy / enjoys music.

79.4 Most of these sentences are wrong. Correct them where necessary.

1. Three years are a long time to be without a job. Three years is a long time
2. The government have decided to increase taxes. OK. (has decided is also correct)
3. Susan was wearing a black jeans. Susan was wearing a black jean.
4. I don’t like hot weather. Thirty degrees is too hot for me. I don’t like hot weather. Thirty degrees is too hot for me.
5. I like Martin and Jane. They’re very nice persons. I like Martin and Jane. They’re very nice persons.
6. Ten pounds aren’t enough. I need more money than that. Ten pounds aren’t enough. I need more money than that.
7. I’m going to buy a new pyjama. I’m going to buy a new pyjama.
8. The committee haven’t made a decision yet. The committee haven’t made a decision yet.
9. There was a police directing traffic in the street. There was a police directing traffic in the street.
10. What is the police going to do? What is the police going to do?
11. This scissors isn’t very sharp. This scissors isn’t very sharp.
12. Four days isn’t enough for a good holiday. Four days isn’t enough for a good holiday.
Noun + noun (a **tennis ball** / a **headache**)

You can use two nouns together (**noun + noun**) to mean one thing/person/idea etc. For example:

- a **tennis ball**
- an **income tax**
- the **city centre**

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. For example:

- a **tennis ball** = a ball used to play **tennis**
- a **bus driver** = the **driver** of a bus
- a **road accident** = an **accident** that happens on the **road**
- an **income tax** = tax that you pay on your **income**
- the **city centre** = the **centre** of the city
- a **Paris hotel** = a **hotel** in Paris
- my **life story** = the **story** of my life

So you can say:

- a **television camera**
- a **television programme**
- a **television studio**
- a **television producer**

(These are all different things or people to do with television)

- **language problems**
- marriage **problems**
- health **problems**
- work **problems**

(These are all different kinds of problems)

Compare:

- **garden vegetables** (= **vegetables** that are grown in a garden)
- a **vegetable garden** (= a **garden** where vegetables are grown)

Sometimes the first word ends in **-ing**. Usually these are things we use for doing something:

- a **frying pan** (= a pan for frying)
- a **washing machine**
- a **swimming pool**

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

- I waited at the **hotel reception desk**.
- We watched the **World Swimming Championships** on television.
- If you want to play **table tennis** (= a game), you need a **table tennis table** (= a table).

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

- a **headache**
- a **toothpaste**
- a **weekend**
- a **car park**
- a **road sign**

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

Note the difference between:

- a **sugar bowl** (maybe empty) and a **bowl of sugar** (= a bowl with sugar in it)
- a **shopping bag** (maybe empty) and a **bag of shopping** (= a bag full of shopping)

When we use **noun + noun**, the first noun is like an **adjective**. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural. For example: a **bookshop** is a shop where you can buy **books**, an **apple tree** is a tree that has **apples**.

In the same way we say:

- a **three-hour journey** (= a journey that takes three **hours**)
- a **ten-pound note** (not pounds)
- a **four-week course** (not weeks)
- a **six-mile walk** (not miles)
- two **14-year-old girls** (not years)

Compare:

- It was a **four-week course**.
- **but**
- The course lasted four **weeks**.
Exercises

80.1 What do we call these things and people?
1 A ticket for a concert is a concert ticket
2 Problems concerning health are health problems
3 An interview for a job is
4 Pictures taken on your holiday are your
5 Chocolate made with milk is
6 Somebody whose job is to inspect factories is
7 A horse that runs in races is
8 A race for horses is
9 Shoes for running are
10 A student studying at university is
11 The results of your exams are your
12 The carpet in the living room is
13 A scandal involving an oil company is
14 Workers at a car factory are
15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is
16 A department store in New York is
17 A course that lasts five days is
18 A question that has two parts is
19 A man who is thirty years old is

80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

- accident
- editor
- room
- belt
- forecast
- seat
- birthday
- newspaper
- shop
- card
- number
- truck
- credit
- party
- weather
- driver
- road
- window

1 This can be caused by bad driving.
2 You should wear this when you’re in a car.
3 You can use this to pay for things instead of cash.
4 If you want to know if it’s going to rain, this is what you need.
5 This person is a top journalist.
6 You might stop to look in this when you’re walking along a street.
7 If you’re staying at a hotel, you need to remember this.
8 This is a way to celebrate getting older.
9 This person transports things by road.

80.3 Which is correct?
1 It’s quite a long book. There are 450 page / 450 pages. (450 pages is correct)
2 I didn’t have any change. I only had a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.
3 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.
4 At work in the morning I usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
5 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
6 It’s only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.
7 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.
8 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
9 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
10 Sam’s daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
11 The oldest building in the city is the 500-year-old / 500 years old castle.
12 Do you use the twelve-hour / twelve hours clock or the 24-hour / 24 hours clock?
**-s (your sister’s name) and of ... (the name of the book)**

We use -s (apostrophe + s) mostly for people or animals:
- Tom's computer isn't working.  
- How old are Chris's children?  
- What's (= What is) your sister's name?  
- What's Tom's sister's name?  
- Be careful. Don't step on the cat's tail.

You can use -s without a noun after it:
- This isn't my book. It's my sister's. (= my sister's book)

We use -s with a noun (Tom/friend/teacher etc.). We do not use -s with a long group of words. So we say:
- your friend's name

**but**  
the name of the woman sitting by the door

Note that we say a woman's hat (= a hat for a woman), a boy's name (= a name for a boy), a bird's egg (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

With a singular noun we use -s:
- my sister's room (= her room – one sister)  
- Mr Carter's house (= his house)

With a plural noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe (') at the end of the word:
- my sisters' room (= their room – two or more sisters)  
- the Carters' house (= their house – Mr and Mrs Carter)

If a plural noun does not end in -s (for example men/women/children/people) we use -s:
- the men's changing room  

You can use -s after more than one noun:
- Jack and Karen's wedding  
- Mr and Mrs Carter's house

For things, ideas etc., we normally use of (... of the water / ... of the book etc.):
- the temperature of the water  
- the name of the book  
- the owner of the restaurant

Sometimes the structure noun + noun is possible (see Unit 80):
- the water temperature  
- the restaurant owner

We say the beginning/end/middle of ... / the top/bottom of ... / the front/back/side of ...:
- the beginning of the month  
- the top of the hill  
- the back of the car

You can usually use -s or of ... for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:
- the government's decision  
- the company's success  
- the decision of the government  
- the success of the company

It is also possible to use -s for places. So you can say:
- the city's streets  
- the world's population  
- Italy's prime minister

You can also use -s with time words (yesterday / next week etc.):
- Do you still have yesterday's newspaper?  
- Next week's meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say today's / tomorrow's / this evening's / Monday's etc.

We also use -s (or -s') with plural words) with periods of time:
- I've got a week's holiday starting on Monday.  
- Julia has got three weeks' holiday.  
- I live near the station – it's only about ten minutes' walk.
Exercises

81.1 In some of these sentences, it would be more natural to use ‘-s or ‘. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

1. Who is the owner of this restaurant? OK
2. How old are the children of Chris? Chris’s children
3. Is this the umbrella of your friend?
4. Write your name at the top of the page.
5. I’ve never met the daughter of Charles.
6. Have you met the son of Helen and Dan?
7. We don’t know the cause of the problem.
8. Do we still have the newspaper of last Monday?
9. I don’t know the words of this song.
10. What is the cost of a new computer?
11. The friends of your children are here.
12. The garden of our neighbours is very nice.
13. I work on the ground floor of the building.
14. The hair of David is very long.
15. I couldn’t go to the party of Katherine.
16. Do you know the number of the man I need to speak to?
17. Have you seen the car of the parents of Mike?
18. What’s the meaning of this expression?
19. Do you agree with the economic policy of the government?

81.2 What is another way of saying these things? Use ‘-s or ‘-s’.

1. a hat for a woman a woman’s hat
2. a name for a boy
3. clothes for children
4. a school for girls
5. a nest for a bird
6. a magazine for women

81.3 Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

1. The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.
   Tomorrow’s meeting has been cancelled.
2. The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
   Last
3. The only cinema in the town has closed down.
   The
4. The weather in Britain is very changeable.

5. Tourism is the main industry in the region.

81.4 Use the information given to complete the sentences.

1. If I leave my house at 9 o’clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.
   So it’s about two hours’ drive from my house to the airport. (drive)
2. If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o’clock.
   So it’s ........................................ from my house to the centre. (walk)
3. I’m going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
   So I’ve got ........................................ . (holiday)
4. I went to sleep at 3 o’clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn’t
   sleep. So last night I only had ........................................ . (sleep)
Myself/yourself/themselves etc.

Study this example:

Steve introduced himself to the other guests.

We use myself/yourself/himself etc. (reflexive pronouns) when the subject and object are the same:

The reflexive pronouns are:

- **singular:**
  - myself
  - yourself (one person)
  - himself/herself/itself

- **plural:**
  - ourselves
  - yourselves (more than one person)
  - yourselves

- I don’t want you to pay for me. I’ll pay for myself. (not I’ll pay for me)
- Amy had a great holiday. She really enjoyed herself.
- Do you talk to yourself sometimes? (said to one person)
- If you want more to eat, help yourselves. (said to more than one person)

Compare:

- It’s not our fault. You can’t blame us.
- It’s our own fault. We should blame ourselves.

We do not use myself etc. after feel/relax/concentrate/meet:

- I feel nervous. I can’t relax.
- You must try and concentrate. (not concentrate yourself)
- What time shall we meet? (not meet ourselves, not meet us)

We normally use wash/shave/dress without myself etc.:

- He got up, washed, shaved and dressed. (not washed himself etc.)

You can also say get dressed (He got dressed).

Compare -selves and each other:

- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves. (= Kate and Joe looked at Kate and Joe)
- Kate looked at Joe, Joe looked at Kate. They looked at each other.

You can use one another instead of each other:

- How long have you and Ben known each other? or ... known one another?
- Sue and Alice don’t like each other. or ... don’t like one another.
- Do you and Sarah live near each other? or ... near one another?

We also use myself/yourself etc. in another way. For example:

- ‘Who repaired your bike for you?’ ‘I repaired it myself.’

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not anybody else. Here, myself is used to emphasise ‘I’ (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- I’m not going to do your work for you. You can do it yourself. (= you, not me)
- Let’s paint the house ourselves. It will be much cheaper.
- The film itself wasn’t very good, but I loved the music.
- I don’t think Lisa will get the job. Lisa herself doesn’t think so. (or Lisa doesn’t think so herself.)
Exercises

82.1 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):

blame burn enjoy express hurt introduce put

1. Steve introduced himself to the other guests at the party.
2. Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn’t
3. It isn’t Sue’s fault. She really shouldn’t
4. Please try and understand how I feel. in my position.
5. The children had a great time at the beach. They really
6. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don’t
7. Sometimes I can’t say exactly what I mean. I wish I could better.

82.2 Put in myself/yourself/ourselves etc. or me/you/us etc.

1. Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself.
2. It’s not my fault. You can’t blame
3. What I did was really bad. I’m ashamed of
4. We’ve got a problem. I hope you can help
5. ‘Can I take another biscuit?’ ‘Of course. Help
6. You must meet Sarah. I’ll introduce to her.
7. Don’t worry about us. We can take care of
8. Don’t worry about the children. I’ll take care of
9. I gave them a key to our house so that they could in.

82.3 Complete these sentences. Use myself/yourself etc. only where necessary. Use these verbs (in the correct form):

concentrate defend dry feel meet relax shave

1. Martin decided to grow a beard because he was fed up with shaving.
2. I wasn’t very well yesterday, but I much better today.
3. I climbed out of the swimming pool and with a towel.
4. I tried to study, but I couldn’t
5. If somebody attacks you, you need to be able to
6. I’m going out with Chris this evening. We’re at 7.30.
7. You’re always rushing around. Why don’t you sit down and ?

82.4 Complete the sentences with ourselves/themselves or each other.

1. How long have you and Ben known each other?
2. If people work too hard, they can make ill.
3. I need you and you need me. We need
4. In Britain friends often give presents at Christmas.
5. Some people are very selfish. They only think of
6. Tracy and I don’t see very often these days.
7. We couldn’t get back into the house. We had locked out.
8. They’ve had an argument. They’re not speaking to at the moment.
9. We’d never met before, so we introduced to

82.5 Complete the answers to the questions using myself/yourself/itself etc.

1. Who repaired the bike for you? Nobody. I repaired it myself.
2. Who cuts Brian’s hair for him? Nobody. He cuts
3. Do you want me to tell Amy about your idea? No, I’ll
4. Who told you that Linda was going away? Linda
5. Can you phone John for me? Why can’t you?
A friend of mine / a friend of yours etc.
We say ‘(a friend) of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/their’s’.
A friend of mine = one of my friends:
- I’m going to a wedding on Saturday. A friend of mine is getting married. (not a friend of me)
- We went on holiday with some friends of ours. (not some friends of us)
- Mike had an argument with a neighbour of his.
- It was a good idea of yours to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say ‘(a friend) of my sister’s / (a friend) of Tom’s’ etc.:
- That woman over there is a friend of my sister’s. (= one of my sister’s friends)
- It was a good idea of Tom’s to go to the cinema.

My own ... / your own ... etc.
We use my/your/his/her/its/our/their before own:
- my own house  your own car  her own room
(not an own house, an own car etc.)

My own ... / your own ... etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:
- I don’t want to share a room with anybody. I want my own room.
- Vicky and Gary would like to have their own house.
- It’s a shame that the apartment hasn’t got its own parking space.
- It’s my own fault that I’ve got no money. I buy too many things I don’t need.
- Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don’t you use your own? (= your own car)

You can also say ‘a room of my own’, ‘a house of your own’, ‘problems of his own’ etc.:
- I’d like to have a room of my own.
- He won’t be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems of his own.

We also use own to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us.
For example:
- Brian usually cuts his own hair. (= he cuts it himself; he doesn’t go to a barber)
- I’d like to have a garden so that I could grow my own vegetables. (= grow them myself instead of buying them from shops)

On my own / by myself
On my own and by myself both mean ‘alone’. We say:

| on { my / your | by { myself / yourself (singular) |
|        his / her / its } own  |  himself / herself / itself |
|        our / their }        |  ourselves / yourselves (plural) / themselves |

- I like living on my own / by myself.
- ‘Did you go on holiday on your own / by yourself?’ ‘No, with a friend.’
- Jack was sitting on his own / by himself in a corner of the cafe.
- Learner drivers are not allowed to drive on their own / by themselves.
Exercises

83.1 Write new sentences with the same meaning. Change the underlined words and use the structure in Section A (a friend of mine etc.).

1. I am meeting one of my friends tonight. I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.
2. We met one of your relatives. We met a relative of yours.
3. Jason borrowed one of my books. Jason borrowed one of my books.
4. Lisa invited some of her friends to her flat. Lisa invited some of her friends to her flat.
5. We had dinner with one of our neighbours. We had dinner with one of our neighbours.
6. I went on holiday with two of my friends. I went on holiday with two of my friends.
7. Is that man one of your friends? Is that man one of your friends?
8. I met one of Jane's friends at the party. I met one of Jane's friends at the party.
9. It's always been one of my ambitions to travel round the world. It's always been one of my ambitions to travel round the world.

83.2 Complete the sentences using my own / our own etc. + the following:

bedroom  business  opinions  private beach  words

1. I share a kitchen and bathroom, but I have my own bedroom.
2. Gary doesn't think the same as me. He's got his own opinion.
3. Julia is fed up with working for other people. She wants to start her own business.
4. In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in our own words.
5. We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had its own private beach.

83.3 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc.

1. Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car?
2. How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's your own fault.
3. She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use her own ideas?
4. Please don't worry about my problems. You've got your own problems.
5. I can't make his decisions for him. He must make his own decisions.

83.4 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. Use the following verbs:
bake  clean  cut  make  write

1. Brian never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair.
2. Helen doesn't often buy clothes. She usually buys her own clothes.
3. We don't often buy bread. We usually bake our own bread.
4. I'm not going to clean your shoes. You can clean your own shoes.
5. Paul and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also write their own songs.

83.5 Complete the sentences using my own / myself etc.

1. Did you go on holiday on your own?
2. I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on my own.
3. The box was too heavy for me to lift by myself.
4. 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by himself.'
5. Very young children should not go swimming by themselves.
6. I don't think she knows many people. When I see her, she is always by herself.
7. I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on their own.
8. Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by yourself?
9. We had no help decorating the flat. We did it completely on our own.
10. I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on her own.
Study this example:

There's a new restaurant in Hill Street.

Yes, I know. I've heard it's very good.

We use **there** ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:

- **There's** a new restaurant in Hill Street. (not A new restaurant is in Hill Street)
- I'm sorry I'm late. **There was** a lot of traffic. (not It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are more expensive now. **There has been** a big rise in the cost of living.

**It** = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. (but see also section C):

- We went to the new restaurant. **It's** very good. (It = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting them to come. **It was** a complete surprise. (It = that they came)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- I don't like this town. **There's** nothing to do here. **It's** a boring place.

**There** also means 'to/at/in that place':

- When we got to the party, there were already a lot of people **there** (= at the party).

You can say **there will be** / **there must be** / **there might be** / **there used to be** etc.:

- Will you be busy tomorrow? **Will there be** much to do?
- 'Is there' a flight to Rome tonight?' **There might be.** I'll check the website.'
- If people drove more carefully, **there wouldn't be** so many accidents.

Also **there must have been**, **there should have been** etc.:

- I could hear music coming from the house. **There must have been** somebody at home.

Compare **there** and **it**:

- They live on a busy road. **There must be** a lot of noise from the traffic.
- They live on a busy road. **It must be** very noisy.
- **There used to be** a cinema here, but it closed a few years ago.
- That building is now a supermarket. **It used to be** a cinema.

You can also say **there is sure** / **bound** (= sure) / **likely** to be ... . Compare **there** and **it**:

- **There's sure to be** a flight to Rome tonight. (or **There's bound to be** ...)
- There's a flight to Rome tonight, but **it's sure to be** full. (it = the flight)

We also use **it** in sentences like this:

- **It's** dangerous **to walk in the road**.

We do not usually say 'To walk in the road is dangerous'. Normally we begin with **It** ... .

Some more examples:

- **It** didn't take us long **to get** here.
- **It's** a shame (that) **you can't come** to the party.
- Let's go. **It's** not worth **waiting any longer**.

We also use **it** to talk about distance, time and weather:

- How far is **it** from here to the airport?
- What day is **it** today?
- **It's** a long time since we saw you last.
- **It was** windy yesterday. (but **There was** a cold wind.)
Exercises

84.1 Put in there is/was or it is/was. Some sentences are questions (is there ...? / is it ...? etc.) and some are negative (isn’t/wasn’t).

1. The journey took a long time. **There was** a lot of traffic.
2. What’s this restaurant like? **Is it** good?
3. **Something** was wrong with the computer. Can you check it for me?
4. I wanted to visit the museum, but **enough** time.
5. ‘What’s that building?’ ‘**A hotel,**’ ‘No, **a theatre.**’
6. How do we get across the river? **A bridge.**
7. A few days ago **a big storm, which caused a lot of damage.**
8. I can’t find my phone. **in my bag – I just looked.**
9. It’s often cold here, but **much snow.**
10. ‘How was your trip?’ ‘**A disaster. Everything went wrong.**’
11. **anything on television, so I turned it off.**
12. ‘**A bookshop near here?’ Yes,** one in Hudson Street.’
13. When we got to the cinema, a queue outside. **a very long queue, so we decided not to wait.**
14. I couldn’t see anything. **completely dark.**
15. **difficult to get a job right now.**

84.2 Read the first sentence and then write a sentence beginning There ... .

1. The roads were busy yesterday. **There was a lot of traffic.**
2. This soup is very salty. **in the soup.**
3. The box was empty. **in the box.**
4. The film is very violent. **any problems.**
5. The shopping mall was crowded. **a storm.**
6. I like this town – it’s lively. **one, but it closed.**

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use there will be, there would be etc. Choose from:

will  may  would  wouldn’t  should  used to  (be) going to

1. If people drove more carefully, **there would be** fewer accidents.
2. ‘Do we have any eggs?’ ‘I’m not sure. **some in the fridge.’
3. I think everything will be OK. **any problems.**
4. Look at the sky. **a storm.**
5. ‘Is there a school in the village?’ ‘Not now. **one, but it closed.’
6. People drive too fast on this road. **a speed limit.**
7. If people weren’t aggressive, **any wars.**

84.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Change it to there where necessary.

1. They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise. **There must be a lot of noise.**
2. It’s a long way from my house to the nearest shop. **It’s a long way from my house to the nearest shop.**
3. After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions. **After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions.**
4. I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea. **I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea.**
5. Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason. **Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason.**
6. It’s three years since I last went to the theatre. **It’s three years since I last went to the theatre.**
7. A: Where can we park the car?
   B: Don’t worry. It’s sure to be a car park somewhere. **Don’t worry. It’s sure to be a car park somewhere.**
8. It was Ken’s birthday yesterday. We had a party. **It was Ken’s birthday yesterday. We had a party.**
9. The situation is still the same. It has been no change. **The situation is still the same. It has been no change.**
10. It used to be a church here, but it was knocked down. **It used to be a church here, but it was knocked down.**
11. I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn’t anybody. **I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn’t anybody.**
12. I don’t know who’ll win, but it’s sure to be a good game. **I don’t know who’ll win, but it’s sure to be a good game.**
### Some and any

In general we use **some** (also *somebody/someone/something*) in positive sentences and **any** (also *anybody* etc.) in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>some</strong></th>
<th><strong>any</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We bought <strong>some</strong> flowers.</td>
<td>We didn’t buy <strong>any</strong> flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s busy. He’s got <strong>some</strong> work to do.</td>
<td>He’s lazy. He <strong>never</strong> does <strong>any</strong> work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s <strong>somebody</strong> at the door.</td>
<td>There isn’t <strong>anybody</strong> at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want <strong>something</strong> to eat.</td>
<td>I don’t want <strong>anything</strong> to eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out **without any** money. (she *didn’t take any* money with her)
- He *refused* to eat **anything**. (he *didn’t eat anything*)
- It’s a very easy exam. **Hardly anybody** fails. (= almost **nobody** fails)

We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some/somebody/something** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we offer or ask for things:

- Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)
- Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar I can have)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- ‘Do you have **any** luggage?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘I can’t find my bag. Has **anybody** seen it?’

We often use **any** after if:

- If **anyone** has **any** questions, I’ll be pleased to answer them.
- Let me know if **you** need **anything**.

The following sentences have the idea of if:

- I’m sorry for **any** trouble I’ve caused. (= if I have caused any trouble)
- **Anyone** who wants to do the exam should tell me by Friday. (= if there is anyone)

We also use **any** with the meaning ‘it doesn’t matter which’:

- You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn’t matter which bus you take)
- ‘Sing a song.’ ‘Which song shall I sing?’ ‘**Any** song. I don’t mind.’ (= it doesn’t matter which song)
- Come and see me **any** time you want.

We use **anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere** in the same way:

- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody** could have come in.
- ‘Let’s go out **somewhere**.’ ‘Where shall we go?’ ‘**Anywhere**. I just want to go out.’

Compare **something** and **anything**:

- A: I’m hungry. I want **something** to eat.
- B: What would you like?
- A: I don’t mind. **Anything**. (= it doesn’t matter what)

**Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone** are singular words:

- **Someone** is here to see you.

But we use **they/them/their** after these words:

- **Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (= he or she can)
**85.1 Put in some or any.**

1. We didn’t buy **any** flowers.
2. Tonight I’m going out with **some** friends of mine.
3. a. Have you seen **any** good movies recently?
   b. No, I haven’t been to the cinema for ages.
4. I didn’t have **some** money, so I had to borrow **any**.
5. Can I have **some** milk in my coffee, please?
6. We wanted to buy **any** grapes, but they didn’t have **some** in the shop.
8. You can use this card to withdraw money at **some** cash machine.
9. I’d like **any** information about places of interest in the town.
10. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on **any** train you like.
11. Those apples look nice. Shall we buy **some**?

**85.2 Complete the sentences with some- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.**

1. I was too surprised to say **anything**.
2. There’s **somebody** at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3. Does **anything** mind if I open the window?
4. I wasn’t feeling hungry, so I didn’t eat **anybody**.
5. You must be hungry. Why don’t I get you **anything** to eat?
6. Quick, let’s go! There’s **somebody** coming and I don’t want **anybody** to see us.
7. Sarah was upset about **anything** and refused to talk to **anybody**.
8. This machine is very easy to use. **Anything** can learn to use it very quickly.
9. There was hardly **anything** on the beach. It was almost deserted.
10. ‘Do you live **anywhere** near Joe?’ ‘No, he lives in another part of town.’
11. ‘Where shall we go on holiday?’ ‘Let’s go **someplace** warm and sunny.’
12. They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go **anywhere**.
13. I’m going to a meeting now. If **anybody** needs me, tell them I’ll be back at 11.30.
14. Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost **anybody**?
15. This is a no-parking area. **Anybody** who parks here will have to pay a fine.
16. Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying **anybody**.
17. ‘Can I ask you **anybody**?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to ask?’
18. Sue is very secretive. She never tells **anybody**. (2 words)

**85.3 Complete the sentences. Use any (+ noun) or anybody/anything/anywhere.**

1. Which bus do I have to catch? **Any bus**. They all go to the centre.
   - I don’t mind. **Anybody**.
2. Which day shall I come? **Any**. I don’t mind. Whatever you have.
3. What do you want to eat? **Anything**. I don’t mind. Whatever you have.
   - It’s up to you. You can sit **anywhere** you like.
5. What sort of job are you looking for? **Any**. Leave a message if I don’t answer and I’ll get back to you.
6. What time shall I call you tomorrow? **Any**. I don’t mind. Whatever you have in the shop.
7. Who shall I invite to the party? **Anybody**. See what they have in the shop.
8. Which newspaper shall I buy? **Any**. I don’t mind. Whatever you have in the shop.
No and none

We use **no + noun**. **No** = not *a* or **not any**:
- We had to walk home because there was **no bus**. (= there wasn't a bus)
- Sue will have **no trouble** finding a job. (= Sue won't have any trouble ...)
- There were **no shops** open. (= There weren't any shops open.)

You can use **no + noun** at the beginning of a sentence:
- **No reason** was given for the change of plan.

We use **none** without a noun:
- 'How much money do you have?' ‘**None**.’ (= no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are **none** left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use **none of** ...
- This money is all yours. **None of** it is mine.

Compare **none** and **any**:
- 'How much luggage do you have?' ‘**None**.’ / ‘I don't have any.’

After **none of + plural** (none of the students, none of them etc.) the verb can be singular or plural.
A plural verb is more usual:
- None of the shops **were** (or **was**) open.

Nothing / nobody/no-one / nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):
- 'What's going to happen?' ‘**Nobody** (or **No-one**) knows.’
- ‘What happened?’ ‘**Nothing**.’
- 'Where are you going?' ‘**Nowhere**. I'm staying here.’

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after **be** and **have**:
- The house is empty. There's **nobody** living there.
- We **had** **nothing** to eat.

**Nothing/nobody** etc. = **not + anything/anybody** etc.:
- I said **nothing**. = I **didn't** say **anything**.
- Jane told **nobody** about her plans. = Jane **didn't** tell **anybody** about her plans.
- They have **nowhere** to live. = They **don't** have **anywhere** to live.

With **nothing/nobody** etc., do not use a negative verb (isn't, didn't etc.):
- I said **nothing**. (not I didn't say nothing)

After **nobody/no-one** you can use **they/them/their** (see also Unit 85E):
- **Nobody** is perfect, are they? (= is he or she perfect)
- **No-one** did what I asked **them** to do. (= him or her)
- **Nobody** in the class did **their** homework. (= his or her homework)

Sometimes **any/anything/anybody** etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D).

Compare **no-** and **any**-
- There was **no** bus, so we walked home.
  - You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which)
- 'What do you want to eat?' ‘**Nothing**. I'm not hungry.’
  - I'm so hungry. I could eat **anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- The exam was extremely difficult. **Nobody** passed. (= everybody failed)
  - The exam was very easy. **Anybody** could have passed. (= it doesn't matter who)
Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with no, none or any.
1. It was a public holiday, so there were __________ shops open.
2. I haven’t got ______________ money. Can you lend me some?
3. We had to walk home because there were ___________ taxis.
4. We had to walk home because there weren’t ___________ taxis.
5. ‘How many eggs have we got?’ ______________. Do you want me to get some?’
6. We took a few pictures, but ______________ of them were very good.
7. ‘Did you take lots of pictures?’ ‘No, I didn’t take ______________.’
8. What a stupid thing to do! ______________ intelligent person would do such a thing.
9. There’s nowhere to cross the river. There’s ______________ bridge.
10. I haven’t read ______________ of the books you lent me.
11. We cancelled the party because ______________ of the people we invited were able to come.
12. ‘Do you know when Chris will be back?’ ‘I’m sorry. I have ______________ idea.’

86.2 Answer these questions using none/nobody/thing/nowhere.

What did you do?
Who were you talking to?
How much sugar do you want?
Where are you going?
How many emails did you get?
How much did you pay?

Nothing.

Now answer the same questions using complete sentences with any/anybody/anything/anywhere.

7. (1) ______________ I didn’t do anything.
8. (2) ______________
9. (3) ______________
10. (4) ______________
11. (5) ______________
12. (6) ______________

86.3 Complete these sentences with no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1. I don’t want ______________ to drink. I’m not thirsty.
2. The bus was completely empty. There was ______________ on it.
3. ‘Where did you go for your holidays?’ ______________. I stayed at home.’
4. I went to the shops, but I didn’t buy ______________.
5. ‘What did you buy?’ ______________. I couldn’t find ______________ I wanted.’
6. The town is still the same as it was years ago. ______________ has changed.
7. Have you seen my watch? I can’t find it ______________.
8. There was complete silence in the room. ______________ said ______________.

86.4 Choose the right word.

1. She didn’t tell nobody / anybody about her plans. (anybody is correct)
2. The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was badly injured.
3. I looked out of the window, but I couldn’t see no-one / anyone.
4. My job is very easy. Nobody / Anybody could do it.
5. ‘What’s in that box?’ ‘Nothing / Anything. It’s empty.’
6. The situation is uncertain. Nothing / Anything could happen.
7. I don’t know nothing / anything about economics.
8. I’ll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.
9. ‘Who were you talking to just now?’ ‘No-one / Anyone. I wasn’t talking to no-one / anyone.'
Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

We use much and little with uncountable nouns:
- much time  
- much luck  
- little energy  
- little money

We use many and few with plural nouns:
- many friends  
- many people  
- few cars  
- few countries

We use a lot of / lots of / plenty of with both uncountable and plural nouns:
- a lot of luck  
- lots of time  
- plenty of money  
- a lot of friends  
- lots of people  
- plenty of ideas

Plenty = more than enough:
- There's no need to hurry. We've got plenty of time.

Much is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:
- We didn't spend much money.  
- We spent a lot of money. (not We spent much money)
- Do you see David much?  
- I see David a lot. (not I see David much)

We use many and a lot of in all kinds of sentences:
- Many people drive too fast.  
- A lot of people drive too fast.
- Do you know many people?  
- Do you know a lot of people?
- There aren't many tourists here.  
- There aren't a lot of tourists here.

Note that we say many years / many weeks / many days (not a lot of ...):
- We've lived here for many years. (not a lot of years)

Little = not much, few = not many:
- Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things. (= not much time, less time than he would like)
- Vicky doesn't like living in London. She has few friends there. (= not many, not as many as she would like)

You can say very little and very few:
- Gary has very little time for other things.
- Vicky has very few friends in London.

A little = some, a small amount:
- Let's go and have a coffee. We have a little time before the train leaves.  
  (a little time = some time, enough time to have a coffee)
- 'Do you speak English?'  
  'A little.'  
  (so we can talk a bit)

A few = some, a small number:
- I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often.  
  (a few friends = not many but enough to have a good time)
- 'When was the last time you saw Clare?'  
  'A few days ago.' (= some days ago)

Compare little and a little, few and a few:
- He spoke little English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.  
- He spoke a little English, so we were able to communicate with him.
- She's lucky. She has few problems. (= not many problems)
  Things are not going so well for her. She has a few problems. (= some problems)

You can say only a little and only a few:
- Hurry! We only have a little time. (not only little time)
- The village was very small. There were only a few houses. (not only few houses)
Exercises

87.1 In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot (of) where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is correct.

1. We didn’t spend much money.                      OK
2. Sue drinks much tea.                               a lot of tea
3. Joe always puts much salt on his food.
4. We’ll have to hurry. We don’t have much time.
5. It cost much to repair the car.
6. Did it cost much to repair the car?
7. I don’t know much people in this town.
8. Mike travels much.
9. There wasn’t much traffic this morning.
10. You need much money to travel round the world.

87.2 Complete the sentences using plenty or plenty of + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>hotels</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>to learn</th>
<th>to see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>There’s no need to hurry. There’s plenty of time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>He doesn’t have any financial problems. He has</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Come and sit with us. There’s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>She knows a lot, but she still has</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>It’s an interesting town to visit. There</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>I’m sure we’ll find somewhere to stay.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

87.3 Put in much/many/little/few (one word only).

1. She isn’t very popular. She has few friends.
2. Ann is very busy these days. She has free time.
3. Did you take pictures when you were on holiday?
4. I’m not very busy today. I don’t have to do.
5. This is a very modern city. There are old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We’ve had rain.
7. ‘Do you know Rome?’ ‘No, I haven’t been there for years.’

87.4 Put in a (a few, a little) where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is already complete.

1. She’s lucky. She has few problems.                     OK
2. Things are not going so well for her. She has few problems. a few problems
3. Can you lend me dollars?
4. There was little traffic, so the journey didn’t take very long.
5. I can’t give you a decision yet. I need time to think.
6. It was a surprise that he won the match. Few people expected him to win.
7. I don’t know much Spanish – only few words.
8. I wonder how Sam is. I haven’t seen him for few months.

87.5 Put in little / a little / few / a few.

1. Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things.
2. Listen carefully. I’m going to give you advice.
3. Do you mind if I ask you questions?
4. It’s not a very interesting place to visit, so tourists come here.
5. I don’t think Amy would be a good teacher. She has patience.
6. ‘Would you like milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, ’
7. This is a very boring place to live. There’s to do.
8. ‘Have you ever been to Paris?’ ‘Yes, I’ve been there times.’
### All / all of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>much/many</th>
<th>little/few</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can use the words in the box with a noun (some food / few books etc.):

- All cars have wheels.
- Some cars can go faster than others.
- (on a notice) NO CARS. (= no cars allowed)
- Many people drive too fast.
- I don’t go out very often. I’m at home most days.

You cannot say ‘all of cars’, ‘some of people’ etc. (see also Section B):

- Some people learn languages more easily than others. (not Some of people)

Note that we say most (not the most):

- Most tourists don’t visit this part of the town. (not The most tourists)

### All / some / any / most / much/many / little/few / half / none

You can use these words with of (some of / most of etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we use</th>
<th>some of</th>
<th>most of</th>
<th>none of</th>
<th>etc.</th>
<th>the ...</th>
<th>my ...</th>
<th>this ...</th>
<th>these ...</th>
<th>those ...</th>
<th>those ...</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

So you can say:

- some of the people, some of those people (but not some of people)
- most of my time, most of the time (but not most of time)

- Some of the people I work with are not very friendly.
- None of this money is mine.
- Have you read any of these books?
- I was sick yesterday. I spent most of the day in bed.

You don’t need of after all or half. So you can say:

- All of my friends live in Los Angeles. or All of my friends ...
- Half of this money is mine. or Half of this money ...

Compare:

- All flowers are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
- All of the flowers in this garden are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- Most problems have a solution. (= most problems in general)

We were able to solve most of the problems we had. (= a specific group of problems)

You can use all of / some of / none of etc. + it/us/you/them:

- ‘How many of these people do you know?’ ‘None of them. / A few of them.’
- Do any of you want to come to a party tonight?
- Do you like this music?’ ‘Some of it. Not all of it.’

We say: all of us / all of you / half of it / half of them etc. You need of before it/us/you/them:

- All of us were late. (not all us)
- I haven’t finished the book yet. I’ve only read half of it. (not half it)

You can also use some/most etc. alone, without a noun:

- Some cars have four doors and some have two.
- A few of the shops were open, but most (of them) were closed.
- Half this money is mine, and half (of it) is yours. (not the half)
88.1 Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. All ______ cars have wheels.  (the sentence is already complete)
2. None ______ this money is mine.
3. Some ______ films are very violent.
4. Some ______ the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
5. Joe never goes to museums. He says that all ______ museums are boring.
6. I think some ______ people watch too much TV.
7. 'Do you want any ______ these magazines?' 'No, I've finished with them.'
8. Kate has lived in London most ______ her life.
9. Joe has lived in Chicago all ______ his life.
10. Most ______ days I get up before 7 o'clock.

88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of etc.) where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accidents</th>
<th>European countries</th>
<th>my dinner</th>
<th>the players</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>birds</td>
<td>her friends</td>
<td>my spare time</td>
<td>the population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cars</td>
<td>her opinions</td>
<td>the buildings</td>
<td>these books</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I haven't read many ______ these books.
2. All ______ cars have wheels.
3. I spend much ______ gardening.
4. Many ______ are caused by bad driving.
5. It's a historic town. Many ______ are over 400 years old.
6. When she got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any ______.
7. Not many people live in the north of the country. Most ______ live in the south.
8. Not all ______ can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
9. Our team played badly and lost the game. None ______ played well.
10. Emma and I have very different ideas. I don't agree with many ______
11. Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most ______
12. I had no appetite. I could only eat half ______

88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. The building was damaged in the explosion. All ______ were broken.
2. We argue sometimes, but get on well most ______
3. I went to the cinema by myself. None ______ wanted to come.
4. The test was difficult. I could only answer half ______
5. Some of ______ you took at the wedding were very good.
6. 'Did you spend all ______ I gave you?' 'No, there's still some left.'

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use: all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

1. These books are all Jane's. ______ belong to me.
2. How many of these books have you read?’ ______ was true.
3. We all got wet in the rain because ______ had an umbrella.
4. Some of this money is yours and ______ is mine.
5. I asked some people for directions, but ______ was able to help me.
6. She invented the whole story from beginning to end. ______ was true.
7. Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. ______ were French.
8. I watched most of the film, but not ______.
We use both/neither/either for two things. You can use these words with a noun (both books, neither book etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:
- Both restaurants are very good. (not The both restaurants)
- Neither restaurant is expensive.
- We can go to either restaurant. I don’t mind.
  (either = one or the other, It doesn’t matter which one)

You can also use both/neither/either alone, without a noun:
- I couldn’t decide which of the two shirts to buy. I liked both. (or I liked both of them.)
- ‘Is your friend British or American?’ ‘Neither. She’s Australian.’
- ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘Either. I don’t mind.’

Both of … / neither of … / either of …

We use both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom’s … etc. So we say ‘both of the restaurants’, ‘both of those restaurants’ etc. (but not both of restaurants):
- Both of these restaurants are very good.
- Neither of the restaurants we went to was (or were) expensive.
- I haven’t been to either of those restaurants. (= I haven’t been to one or the other)

You don’t need of after both. So you can say:
- Both my parents are from Egypt. or Both of my parents …

You can use both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them:
- (talking to two people) Can either of you speak Russian?
- I asked two people the way to the station, but neither of them could help me.

You must say ‘both of’ before us/you/them:
- Both of us were very tired. (not Both us were …)

After neither of … a singular or a plural verb is possible:
- Neither of the children wants (or want) to go to bed.

You can say:
- both … and …
  - Both Chris and Paul were late.
  - I was both tired and hungry when I arrived home.
- neither … nor …
  - Neither Chris nor Paul came to the party.
  - There was an accident in the street where we live, but we neither saw nor heard anything.
- either … or …
  - I’m not sure where Maria’s from. She’s either Spanish or Italian.
  - Either you apologise, or I’ll never speak to you again.

Compare either/neither/both (two things) and any/none/all (more than two):
- There are two good hotels here. You could stay at either of them.
- We tried two hotels.
  - Neither of them had any rooms.
  - Both of them were full.
- There are many good hotels here. You could stay at any of them.
- We tried a lot of hotels.
  - None of them had any rooms.
  - All of them were full.
89.1 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either.
1. ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘Either _______ . I really don’t mind.’
2. ‘What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?’ ‘____________________ . It’s the 20th.’
3. A: Where did you go on your trip – Korea or Japan?
   B: We went to __________________ . A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
4. ‘Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?’ ‘____________________ . I don’t mind.’
5. ‘Where’s Lisa? Is she at work or at home?’ ‘____________________ . She’s away on holiday.’

89.2 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either. Use of where necessary.
1. Both ______ my parents are from London.
2. To get to the town centre, you can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the road. You can go __________________ way.
3. I tried twice to phone Carl, but __________________ times he was out.
4. Tom’s parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
5. I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately __________________ driver was injured, but __________________ cars were badly damaged.
6. I’ve got two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but __________________ my sisters are still at school.

89.3 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either + of us / of them.
1. I asked two people the way to the station, but __________________ could help me.
2. I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn’t go to __________________ .
3. There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened __________________ .
4. Sarah and I play tennis together regularly, but we’re not very good. __________________ can play very well.
5. I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted, but __________________ had it.

89.4 Write sentences with both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or ... .
1. Chris was late. So was Pat. __________________
2. He didn’t say hello, and he didn’t smile. __________________
3. Joe is on holiday and so is Sam.
4. Joe doesn’t have a car. Sam doesn’t have one either.
5. Brian doesn’t watch TV and he doesn’t read newspapers.
6. It was a boring movie. It was long too.
   The movie __________________
7. Is that man’s name Richard? Or is it Robert? It’s one of the two.
   That man’s name __________________
8. I haven’t got time to go on holiday. And I don’t have the money.
   I have __________________
9. We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer.
   We __________________

89.5 Complete the sentences with neither/either/none/any.
1. We tried a lot of hotels, but __________________ of them had any rooms.
2. I took two books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read __________________ of them.
3. I took five books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read __________________ of them.
4. There are a few shops at the end of the street, but __________________ of them sells newspapers.
5. You can phone me at __________________ time during the evening. I’m always at home.
6. I can meet you next Monday or Friday. Would __________________ of those days suit you?
7. John and I couldn’t get into the house because __________________ of us had a key.
### All, every and whole

#### A All and everybody/everyone

We do not normally use **all** to mean **everybody/everyone**:
- **Everybody** had a great time at the party. *(not All enjoyed)*

But we say **all of us** / **all of you** / **all of them**:
- **All of us** had a great time at the party. *(not Everybody of us)*

#### B All and everything

Sometimes you can use **all** or **everything**:
- I'll do **all** I can to help. or I'll do **everything** I can to help.

You can say 'all I can' / 'all you need' etc., but we do not normally use **all alone**:
- He thinks he knows **everything**. *(not he knows all)*
- Our holiday was a disaster. **Everything** went wrong. *(not All went wrong)*

But you can say **all about**:
- He knows **all about** computers.

We also use **all** *(not everything)* to mean 'the only thing(s)'.
- All I've eaten today is a sandwich. *(= the only thing I've eaten today)*

#### C Every / everybody / everyone / everything are singular words, so we use a singular verb:

- **Every seat** in the theatre was taken.
- **Everybody** has arrived. *(not have arrived)*

But we use **they/their/their** after **everybody/everyone**:
- **Everybody** said they enjoyed **themselves**. *(= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)*

#### D Whole and all

**Whole** = complete, entire. Most often we use **whole** with singular nouns:
- Did you read the **whole book**? *(= all the book, not just a part of it)*
- Emily has lived her **whole life** in the same town.
- I was so hungry, I ate a **whole packet** of biscuits. *(= a complete packet)*

We use **the/my/her** etc. before **whole**. Compare **whole** and **all**:
- **her whole life** but **all her life**

We do not normally use **whole** with uncountable nouns. We say:
- I've spent **all the money** you gave me. *(not the whole money)*

#### E Every/all/whole with time words

We use **every** to say how often something happens *(every day / every Monday / every ten minutes / every three weeks etc.)*:
- When we were on holiday, we went to the beach **every day**. *(not all days)*
- The bus service is excellent. There's a bus **every ten minutes**.
- We don’t see each other very often – about **every six months**.

**All day / the whole day** = the complete day from beginning to end:
- We spent **all day / the whole day** on the beach.
- Dan was very quiet. He didn’t say a word **all evening / the whole evening**.

Note that we say **all day** *(not all the day)*, **all week** *(not all the week)* etc.

Compare **all the time** and **every time**:
- They never go out. They are at home **all the time**. *(= always, continuously)*
- **Every time** I see you, you look different. *(= each time, on every occasion)*
Exercises

90.1 Complete these sentences with all, everything or everybody/everyone.

1. It was a good party. ____________ had a great time.
2. ____________ I’ve eaten today is a sandwich.
3. ____________ has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
4. Nothing has changed. ____________ is the same as it was.
5. Kate told me ______________ about her new job. It sounds quite interesting.
6. Can ______________ write their names on a piece of paper, please?
7. Why are you always thinking about money? ____________ isn’t ____________.
8. I didn’t have much money with me. ____________ I had was ten pounds.
9. When the fire alarm rang, ____________ left the building immediately.
10. Sarah didn’t say where she was going. ____________ she said was that she was going away.
11. We have completely different opinions. I disagree with ____________ she says.
12. We all did well in the exam. ____________ in our class passed.
13. We all did well in the exam. ____________ of us passed.
14. Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do ____________ for you?

90.2 Write sentences with whole.

1. I read the book from beginning to end. ____________ I read the whole book.
2. Everyone in the team played well.
   The
3. Paul opened a box of chocolates. When he finished eating, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate
4. The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They
5. Everyone in Ed and Jane’s family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children. The
6. Ann worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.

7. Jack and Lisa had a week’s holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using all instead of whole.

8. (6) Ann
9. (7)

90.3 Complete these sentences using every with the following:

five minutes ten minutes four hours six months four years

1. The bus service is very good. There’s a bus ____________ minutes.
2. Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it
3. The Olympic Games take place
4. We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house
5. Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up

90.4 Which is the correct alternative?

1. I’ve spent the whole money / all the money you gave me. (all the money is correct)
2. Sue works every day / all days except Sunday.
3. I’m tired. I’ve been working hard all the day / all day.
4. It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
5. I’ve been trying to contact her, but every time / all the time I phone there’s no answer.
6. I don’t like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
7. When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.
**Each and every**

Each and every are similar in meaning. Often it is possible to use each or every:

- Each time (or Every time) I see you, you look different.
- There are computers in each classroom (or every classroom) in the school.

But each and every are not exactly the same. Study the difference:

We use each when we think of things separately, one by one.
- Study each sentence carefully. (= study the sentences one by one)

\[
each = \times + \times + \times + \times
\]

Each is more usual for a small number:
- There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
- (in a card game) At the beginning of the game, each player has three cards.

We use every when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to all.
- Every sentence must have a verb. (= all sentences in general)

\[
every = \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times\]

Every is more usual for a large number:
- Kate loves reading. She has read every book in the library. ( = all the books)
- I'd like to visit every country in the world. ( = all the countries)

Each (but not every) can be used for two things:
- In football, each team has eleven players. ( not every team)

We use every (not each) to say how often something happens:
- 'How often do you use your car?' 'Every day.' (not Each day)
- There's a bus every ten minutes. (not each ten minutes)

Compare the structures we use with each and every:

**Each**

- You can use each with a noun:
  - each book each student
- You can use each alone (without a noun):
  - None of the rooms was the same. Each (= each room) was different.
- Or you can use each one:
  - Each one was different.
- You can say each of (the ... / these ... / them etc.):
  - Read each of these sentences carefully. Each of the books is a different colour. Each of them is a different colour.

**Every**

- You can use every with a noun:
  - every book every student
- You can't use every alone, but you can say every one:
  - A: Have you read all these books?
    B: Yes, every one.
- You can say every one of ... (but not 'every of'):
  - I've read every one of those books. (not every of those books)
  - I've read every one of them.

You can also use each in the middle or at the end of a sentence. For example:
- The students were each given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)
- These oranges cost 40 pence each.

**Everyone and every one**

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

Every one (two words) is for things or people, and is similar to each one (see Section B).
- Everyone enjoyed the party. (= Everybody ...)
- Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to every one. (= to every party)

---

Each other ➔ Unit 82C  All and every ➔ Unit 90
Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with each or every.

1. Each player has three cards.
2. Kate has read every book in the library.
3. Side of a square is the same length.
4. Seat in the theatre was taken.
5. There are six apartments in the building. one has a balcony.
6. There’s a train to London hour.
7. She was wearing four rings – one on finger.
8. Our football team is playing well. We’ve won game this season.

91.2 Put in each or every.

1. There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
2. The Olympic Games are held every four years.
3. Parent worries about their children.
4. In a game of tennis there are two or four players. player has a racket.
5. Nicola plays volleyball Thursday evening.
6. I understood most of what they said but not word.
7. The book is divided into five parts and of these has three sections.
8. I get paid four weeks.
9. I called the office two or three times, but time it was closed.
10. Car seat belts save lives. driver should wear one.
11. A friend of mine has three children. I always give of them a present at Christmas.
12. (from an exam) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to question on a separate sheet of paper.

91.3 Complete the sentences using each.

1. The price of one of those oranges is 30 pence. Those oranges are 30 pence each.
2. I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I
3. One of those postcards costs 80 pence. Those
4. The hotel was expensive. I paid £150 and so did you. We

91.4 Put in everyone (1 word) or every one (2 words).

1. Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to every one.
2. As soon as had arrived, we began the meeting.
3. I asked her lots of questions and she answered correctly.
4. Amy is very popular. likes her.
5. I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately broke.
Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which

Look at this example sentence:

The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

A clause is a part of a sentence. A relative clause tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

- The woman who lives next door ... ('who lives next door' tells us which woman)
- People who live in the country ... ('who live in the country' tells us what kind of people)

We use who in a relative clause when we are talking about people (not things):

- The woman - she lives next door - is a doctor
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

We know a lot of people - they live in the country
- We know a lot of people who live in the country.

- An architect is someone who designs buildings.
- What was the name of the person who phoned?
- Anyone who wants to apply for the job must do so by Friday.

You can also use that (instead of who), but you can’t use which for people:

- The woman that lives next door is a doctor. (not the woman which)

Sometimes you must use who (not that) for people – see Unit 95.

When we are talking about things, we use that or which (not who) in a relative clause:

- Where is the cheese? – it was in the fridge
- Where is the cheese that was in the fridge?

- I don’t like stories that have unhappy endings. (or stories which have …)
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture. (or a company which makes furniture)
- The machine that broke down is working again now. (or The machine which broke down)

That is more usual than which, but sometimes you must use which – see Unit 95.

Remember that in relative clauses we use who/that/which, not he/she/they/it.

Compare:

- 'Who’s that woman?’ ‘She lives next door to me.’
  I’ve never spoken to the woman who lives next door. (not the woman she lives)
- Where is the cheese? It was in the fridge.
  Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (not the cheese it was)

What = 'the thing(s) that'. Compare what and that:

- What happened was my fault. (= the thing that happened)
  but
- Everything that happened was my fault. (not Everything what happened)
- The machine that broke down is now working again. (not The machine what broke down)
Exercises

92.1 In this exercise you have to explain what some words mean. Choose the right meaning from the box and then write a sentence with who. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he/she</th>
<th>steals from a shop</th>
<th>he/she</th>
<th>buys something from a shop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-designs buildings</td>
<td></td>
<td>pays rent to live in a house or apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-doesn't believe in God</td>
<td></td>
<td>breaks into a house to steal things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-is not brave</td>
<td></td>
<td>expects the worst to happen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings.
2 (a burglar) A burglar is someone
3 (a customer)
4 (a shoplifter)
5 (a coward)
6 (an atheist)
7 (a pessimist)
8 (a tenant)

92.2 Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which.
1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.
   The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.
2 A waitress served us. She was impolite and impatient.
   The waitress who served us was impolite and impatient.
3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
   The building which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released.
   The people who were arrested have now been released.
5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.
   The bus that goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and make a relative clause.

invented the telephone    -makes furniture
runs away from home        -gives you the meaning of words
stole my wallet           -can support life
were hanging on the wall   -cannot be explained

1 Helen works for a company that makes furniture.
2 The book is about a girl.
3 What happened to the pictures?
4 A mystery is something.
5 The police have arrested the man.
6 A dictionary is a book.
7 Alexander Bell was the man.
8 It seems that Earth is the only planet.

92.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 I don't like stories that have unhappy endings.
2 What was the name of the person who phoned?
3 Where's the nearest shop who sells bread?
4 The driver which caused the accident was fined £500.
5 Do you know the person that took these pictures?
6 We live in a world what is changing all the time.
7 Dan said some things about me that were not true.
8 What was the name of the horse it won the race?
Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who/that/which**

A

Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

- The woman **who** lives next door is a doctor.  
  (or The woman **that** lives ...
  The woman lives next door. **who** (= the woman) is the **subject**

- Where is the cheese **that** was in the fridge?  
  (or the cheese **which** was ...
  The cheese was in the fridge. **that** (= the cheese) is the **subject**

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the **subject** of the relative clause. So you cannot say ‘The woman lives next door is a doctor’ or ‘Where is the cheese was in the fridge?’. 

B

Sometimes **who/that/which** is the **object** of the verb. For example:

- The woman **who** I wanted to see was away on holiday.
  I wanted to see the woman  
  **who** (= the woman) is the **object**
  I is the **subject**

- Have you found the keys **that** you lost?
  You lost the keys.  
  **that** (= the keys) is the **object**
  you is the **subject**

When **who/that/which** is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- The woman **I wanted to see** was away.  
  or  
  The woman **who** I wanted to see ...

- Have you found the keys **you lost**?  
  or  
  the keys **that** you lost?

- The dress Lisa **bought** doesn’t fit her very well.  
  or  
  The dress **that** Lisa bought ...

- Is there anything **I can do**?  
  or  
  anything **that** I can do?

For the key word **that** (= the keys), you can leave it out:

- You lost **the keys**.  
  (not the keys you lost them)

Note that we say:

- the keys you lost  (not the keys you lost them)
- the dress Lisa bought  (not the dress Lisa bought it)

C

Note the position of prepositions (in/to/for etc.) in relative clauses:

- Tom is talking to a woman – do you know her?
  
  Do you know the woman (who/that) Tom is talking to ?

- I slept in a bed last night – it wasn’t very comfortable
  
  The bed (that/which) I slept in last night wasn’t very comfortable.

- Are these the books you were looking for?  
  or  
  the books that/which you were ...

- The woman he fell in love with left him after a month.  
  or  
  The woman **who/that** he ...

- The man I was sitting next to on the plane talked all the time.  
  or  
  The man **who/that** I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

- the books you were looking for  (not the books you were looking for them)

D

You cannot use what in sentences like these (see also Unit 92D):

- Everything **that** they said was true.  
  (not Everything what they said)

- I gave her all the money **that** I had.  
  (not all the money what I had)

**What** = the thing(s) that:

- Did you hear **what they said**?  
  (= the things that they said)
Exercises

93.1 In some of these sentences you need who or that. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. The woman lives next door is a doctor.
   The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
2. Have you found the keys you lost?
   OK.
3. The people we met last night were very nice.
4. The people work in the office are very nice.
5. The people I work with are very nice.
6. What have you done with the money I gave you?
7. What happened to the money was on the table?
8. What’s the worst film you’ve ever seen?
9. What’s the best thing it has ever happened to you?

93.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

1. Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he has found them. You say:
   Have you found the keys you lost?
2. A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:
   I like the dress.
3. A friend is going to see a film. You want to know the name of the film. You say:
   What’s the name of the film?
4. You wanted to visit a museum. It was shut when you got there. You tell a friend:
   The museum was shut when we got there.
5. You invited some people to your party. Some of them couldn’t come. You tell someone:
   Some of the people couldn’t come.
6. Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:
   Have you finished the work?
7. You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:
   The car broke down after a few miles.

93.3 These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

1. Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?
   Did you find the books you were looking for?
2. We couldn’t go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).
   We couldn’t go to the wedding.
3. What’s the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?
   What’s the name of the hotel?
4. Unfortunately I didn’t get (applied / I / the job / for).
   Unfortunately I didn’t get the job.
5. Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?
   Did you enjoy the concert?
6. Gary is a good person to know. He’s (on / rely / can / somebody / you).
   Gary is a good person to know. He’s someone you can rely on.
7. Who was (the man / were / with / you) in the restaurant last night?
   Who was the man with you in the restaurant last night?

93.4 Put in that or what where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1. I gave her all the money ____ I had. (all the money that I had is also correct)
2. Did you hear ____ they said?
3. They give their children everything ____ they want.
4. Tell me ____ you want and I’ll try to get it for you.
5. Why do you blame me for everything ____ goes wrong?
6. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do ____ I can.
7. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do the best ____ I can.
8. I don’t agree with ____ you’ve just said.
9. I don’t trust him. I don’t believe anything ____ he says.
Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where

A

Whose

We use whose in relative clauses instead of his/her/their:

we helped some people – their car had broken down

→ We helped some people whose car had broken down.

We use whose mostly for people:

☐ A widow is a woman whose husband is dead. (her husband is dead)
☐ What’s the name of the man whose car you borrowed? (you borrowed his car)
☐ I met someone whose brother I went to school with. (I went to school with his/her brother)

Compare who and whose:

☐ I met a man who knows you. (he knows you)
☐ I met a man whose sister knows you. (his sister knows you)

B

Whom

Whom is possible instead of who when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause (like the sentences in Unit 93B):

☐ George is a person whom I admire very much. (I admire him)

You can also use whom with a preposition (to whom / from whom / with whom etc.):

☐ I like the people with whom I work. (I work with them)

Whom is a formal word and we do not often use it in this way. We usually prefer who or that, or nothing (see Unit 93). So we usually say:

☐ ... a person who/that I admire a lot or ... a person I admire a lot
☐ ... the people who/that I work with or ... the people I work with

C

Where

You can use where in a relative clause to talk about a place:

the restaurant – we had lunch there – it was near the airport

→ The restaurant where we had lunch was near the airport.

☐ I recently went back to the town where I grew up.
(or ... the town I grew up in or ... the town that I grew up in)
☐ I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.

D

We say:

the day / the year / the time etc. | something happens or that something happens
☐ I can’t meet you on Friday. That’s the day (that) I’m going away.
☐ The last time (that) I saw Anna, she looked great.
☐ I haven’t seen Jack and Helen since the year (that) they got married.

E

We say:

the reason | something happens or that/why something happens
☐ The reason I’m phoning is to ask your advice.
(or The reason that I’m phoning / The reason why I’m phoning)
Exercises

94.1 You met these people at a party:

1. My mother writes detective stories.
2. My wife is an English teacher.
3. I own a restaurant.
4. My ambition is to climb Everest.
5. We've just got married.
6. My parents used to work in a circus.

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using who or whose.

1. I met somebody whose mother writes detective stories.
2. I met a man
3. I met a woman
4. I met somebody
5. I met a couple
6. I met somebody

94.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using where.

1. You grew up in a small town. You went back there recently. You tell someone this.
   I recently went back to the small town where I grew up.
2. You're thirsty and you want a drink. You ask a friend where you can get some water.
   Is there a shop near here?
3. You work in a factory. The factory is going to close down next month. You tell a friend.
   The factory is going to close down next month.
4. Sue is staying at a hotel. You want to know the name of the hotel. You ask a friend.
   Do you know the name of the hotel?
5. You play football in a park on Sundays. You show a friend the park. You say:
   This is the park on Sundays.

94.3 Complete each sentence using who/whom/whose/where.

1. What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place where people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person who believes that all wars are wrong.
4. An orphan is a child whose parents are dead.
5. What was the name of the person to whom you spoke on the phone?
6. The place where we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
7. This school is only for children whose first language is not English.
8. The woman with whom he fell in love left him after a month.

94.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. They are like the examples in Sections D and E.

1. I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day I'm going away.
2. The reason the reason was that the salary was too low.
3. I'll never forget the time
4. Do you remember the day?
5. The reason is that they don't need one.
6. was the year
Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

**Type 1**
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture.
- We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:
- 'The woman who lives next door' tells us which woman.
- 'A company that makes furniture' tells us what kind of company.
- 'The hotel (that) you recommended' tells us which hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:
- We know a lot of people who live in London.

**Type 2**
- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- Anna told me about her new job, which she’s enjoying a lot.
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: ‘My brother Ben’, ‘Anna’s new job’ and ‘the Park Hotel’.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us extra information about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:
- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

In both types of relative clause we use who for people and which for things. But:

**Type 1**
- You can use that:
  - Do you know anyone who/that speaks French and Italian?
  - Grace works for a company which/that makes furniture.

You can leave out who/which/that when it is the object (see Unit 93):
- We stayed at the hotel (that/which) you recommended.
- This morning I met somebody (who/that) I hadn’t seen for ages.

We do not often use whom in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

**Type 2**
- You cannot use that:
  - John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
  - Anna told me about her new job, which (not that) she’s enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out who or which:
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- This morning I met Chris, who I hadn’t seen for ages.

You can use whom for people (when it is the object):
- This morning I met Chris, whom I hadn’t seen for ages.

In both types of relative clause you can use whose and where:
- We met some people whose car had broken down.
- What’s the name of the place where you went on holiday?

- Lisa, whose car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- Kate has just been to Sweden, where her daughter lives.
Exercises

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the sentence in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use who(m)/whose/which/where.

1. Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door.)
   Catherine, who lives next door, is very friendly.

2. We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended it.)
   We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

3. We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge. (It is not far from London.)
   We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge.

4. I went to see the doctor. (She told me I needed to change my diet.)
   I went to see the doctor (who told me I needed to change my diet).

5. Steven is one of my closest friends. (I have known him for a very long time.)
   Steven, who I have known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.

6. Lisa is away from home a lot. (Her job involves a lot of travelling.)
   Lisa (who works a lot) is away from home a lot.

7. The new stadium will be finished next month. (It can hold 90,000 people.)
   The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be finished next month.

8. Alaska is the largest state in the USA. (My brother lives there.)

9. Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)

95.2 Read the information and complete each sentence. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1. There’s a woman living next door to me. She’s a doctor.
   The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.

2. I’ve got a brother called Ben. He lives in Hong Kong. He’s an architect.
   My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

3. There was a strike at the factory. It began ten days ago. It is now over.
   The strike at the factory that began ten days ago is now over.

4. I was looking for a book this morning. I’ve found it now.
   I’ve found the book I was looking for.

5. I’ve had my car for 15 years. It has never broken down.
   My car which I’ve had for 15 years has never broken down.

6. A job was advertised. A lot of people applied for it. Few of them had the necessary qualifications.
   Few of those who applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.

7. Amy has a son. She showed me a picture of him. He’s a police officer.
   Amy showed me the picture of her son who is a police officer.

95.3 Some of these sentences are wrong. Correct them and put in commas where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write ‘OK’.

1. Anna told me about her new job that she’s enjoying very much.
   Anna told me about her new job, which she’s enjoying very much.

2. My office that is on the second floor is very small.
   My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.

3. The office I’m using at the moment is very small.

4. Mark’s father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.
   Mark’s father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.

5. The doctor that examined me couldn’t find anything wrong.
   The doctor who examined me couldn’t find anything wrong.

6. The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
   The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
**Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)**

**A Prepositions + whom/which**

You can use a preposition before whom (for people) and which (for things). So you can say:
- to whom / with whom / about which / without which etc.:
  - Mr Lee, to whom I spoke at the meeting, is very interested in our proposal.
  - Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.

In informal English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause. When we do this, we normally use who (not whom) for people:
- This is my friend from Canada, who I was telling you about.
- Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.

**B All of / most of etc. + whom/which**

Study these examples:

1. Helen has three brothers. All of them are married. (2 sentences)
   - Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married. (1 sentence)

2. They asked me a lot of questions. I couldn’t answer most of them. (2 sentences)
   - They asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn’t answer. (1 sentence)

In the same way you can say:

- none of / neither of / any of / either of
- some of / many of / much of / (a) few of
- both of / half of / each of / one of / two of etc.
  + whom (people)
  + which (things)

- Martin tried on three jackets, none of which fitted him.
- Two men, neither of whom I had seen before, came into the office.
- They have three cars, two of which they rarely use.
- Sue has a lot of friends, many of whom she was at school with.

You can also say the cause of which / the name of which etc.:
- The building was destroyed in a fire, the cause of which was never established.
- We stayed at a beautiful hotel, the name of which I can’t remember now.

**C Which (not what)**

Study this example:

1. Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. (2 sentences)
   - Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. (1 sentence)

In this example, which = ‘the fact that he got the job’. You must use which (not what) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn’t meet us, which was a shame. (not what was a shame)
- The weather was good, which we hadn’t expected. (not what we hadn’t expected)

For what, see Units 92D and 93D.
96.1 Write the relative clauses in a more formal way using a preposition + whom/which.
1. Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I’d never been to before.
   Yesterday we visited the City Museum, to which I’d never been before.
2. My brother showed us his new car, which he’s very proud of.
   My brother showed us his new car, upon which he’s very proud.
3. This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam, who we went on holiday with.
   This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam, during which we went on holiday.
4. The wedding, which only members of the family were invited to, took place on Friday.
   The wedding, to which only members of the family were invited, took place on Friday.

96.2 Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second sentence. Use all of / most of etc. or the ... of + whom/which.
1. All of Helen’s brothers are married.
   Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married.
2. Most of the information we were given was useless.
   We were given a lot of information, most of which was useless.
3. None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
   Ten people applied for the job, none of whom was suitable.
4. Kate hardly ever uses one of her computers.
   Kate has got two computers, one of which she hardly ever uses.
5. Mike won £100,000. He gave half of it to his parents.
   Mike won £100,000, half of which he gave to his parents.
6. Both of Julia’s sisters are lawyers.
   Julia has two sisters, both of whom are lawyers.
7. Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.
   I sent Jane two emails, neither of which she replied to.
8. I went to a party – I knew only a few of the people there.
   There were a lot of people at the party, only a few of whom I knew.
9. The sides of the road we drove along were lined with trees.
   We drove along the road, the sides of which were lined with trees.
10. The aim of the company’s new business plan is to save money.
    The company has a new business plan, the aim of which is to save money.

96.3 Join sentences from the boxes to make new sentences. Use which.

1. Laura couldn’t come to the party.
2. Jane doesn’t have a phone.
3. Alex has passed his exams.
4. Our flight was delayed.
5. Kate offered to let me stay at her house.
6. The street I live in is very noisy at night.
7. Our car has broken down.

   This was very kind of her.
   This means we can’t go away tomorrow.
   This makes it difficult to contact her.
   This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
   This was a shame.
   This is good news.
   This meant we had to wait three hours at the airport.

1. Laura couldn’t come to the party, which was a shame.

2. Jane

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.
A clause is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with -ing or -ed. For example:

Do you know the woman talking to Tom?

-ing clause

The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

-ed clause

We use -ing clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- Do you know the woman talking to Tom? (the woman is talking to Tom)
- Police investigating the crime are looking for three men. (police are investigating the crime)
- Who were those people waiting outside? (they were waiting)
- I was woken up by a bell ringing. (a bell was ringing)

You can also use an -ing clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time. For example:

- The road connecting the two villages is very narrow. (the road connects the two villages)
- I have a large room overlooking the garden. (the room overlooks the garden)
- Can you think of the name of a flower beginning with T? (the name begins with T)

-ed clauses have a passive meaning:

- The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital. (he was injured in the accident)
- George showed me some pictures painted by his father. (they had been painted by his father)

Injured and invited are past participles. Note that many past participles are irregular and do not end in -ed (stolen/made/written etc.):

- The police never found the money stolen in the robbery.
- Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.

You can use left in this way, with the meaning 'not used, still there':

- We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. There are only a few left.

We often use -ing and -ed clauses after there is / there was etc.:

- There were some children swimming in the river.
- Is there anybody waiting?
- There was a big red car parked outside the house.
Exercises

97.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentences with an -ing clause.

1. A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
   - I was woken up by **a bell ringing**.

2. A man was sitting next to me on the plane. I didn’t talk much to him.
   - I didn’t talk much to the **man sitting next to me**.

3. A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
   - The **taxi taking us to the airport** broke down.

4. There’s a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
   - At the end of the street there’s a **path leading to the river**.

5. A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
   - A **factory has just opened in the town** has just opened in the town.

6. The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
   - The company sent me **a brochure containing the information I needed**.

97.2 Make one sentence from two, beginning as shown. Each time make an -ed clause.

1. A boy was injured in the accident. He was taken to hospital.
   - The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.

2. A gate was damaged in the storm. It has now been repaired.
   - The gate **damaged in the storm** has now been repaired.

3. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting. Most of them were not very practical.
   - Most of the **suggestions made at the meeting** were not very practical.

4. Some paintings were stolen from the museum. They haven’t been found yet.
   - The **paintings stolen from the museum** haven’t been found yet.

5. A man was arrested by the police. What’s his name?
   - What’s the name of **the man arrested by the police**?

97.3 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

- blow
- call
- invite
- live
- offer
- read
- ring
- sit
- study
- work

1. I was woken up by a bell **...ringing...**.

2. Some of the people **...invited...** to the party can’t come.

3. Life must be very unpleasant for people **...living in the noisy area...** near busy airports.

4. A few days after the interview, I received an email **...offering me the job...**

5. Somebody **...phoned...** while you were out.

6. There was a tree **...broken...** down in the storm last night.

7. The waiting room was empty except for a young man **...sitting in the waiting room...** by the window.

8. Ian has a brother **...working in a bank in London...** and a sister **...studying economics at university in Manchester...**

97.4 Use the words in brackets to make sentences using There is / There was etc.

1. That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) **There’s nobody living in it.**

2. The accident wasn’t serious. (nobody / injure) **There was nobody injured.**

3. I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) **There**

4. The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)

5. We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)

6. The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)

7. The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)
Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)

Many adjectives end in -ing and -ed, for example: boring and bored. Study this example situation:

Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn’t enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is boring.

Jane is bored (with her job).

Somebody is bored if something (or somebody else) is boring. Or, if something is boring, it makes you bored. So:

- Jane is bored because her job is boring.
- Jane's job is boring, so Jane is bored. (not Jane is boring)

If a person is boring, this means that they make other people bored:

- George always talks about the same things. He’s really boring.

Compare adjectives ending in -ing and -ed:

- My job is boring, interesting, tiring, satisfying, depressing. (etc.)

In these examples, the -ing adjective tells you about the job.

In these examples, the -ed adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

Compare these examples:

**interesting**

- Julia thinks politics is interesting.
- Did you meet anyone interesting at the party?

**surprising**

- It was surprising that he passed the exam.

**disappointing**

- The movie was disappointing. We expected it to be much better.

**shocking**

- The news was shocking.

**interested**

- Julia is interested in politics. (not interesting in politics)
- Are you interested in buying a car? I'm trying to sell mine.

**surprised**

- Everybody was surprised that he passed the exam.

**disappointed**

- We were disappointed with the movie. We expected it to be much better.

**shocked**

- I was shocked when I heard the news.
Exercises

98.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.
1 The movie wasn’t as good as we had expected. (disappoint…)
   a The movie was disappointing.
   b We were disappointed with the movie.
2 Donna teaches young children. It’s a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (exhaust…)
   a She enjoys her job, but it’s often exhausting.
   b At the end of a day’s work, she is often exhausted.
3 It’s been raining all day. I hate this weather. (depress…)
   a This weather is depressing.
   b This weather makes me depressed.
   c It’s silly to get depressed because of the weather.
4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She has never been there before. (excit…)
   a It will be an exciting experience for her.
   b Going to new places is always exciting.
   c She is really excited about going to Mexico.

98.2 Choose the correct word.
1 I was disappointing / disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be better. (disappointed is correct)
2 Are you interesting / interested in football?
3 The new project sounds exciting / excited. I’m looking forward to working on it.
4 It’s embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
6 I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
7 She has really learnt very fast. She has made amazing / amazed progress.
8 I didn’t find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
9 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked.
10 Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
11 He’s one of the most boring / bored people I’ve ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested.

98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

amusing/amused        annoying/annoyed        boring/bored
confusing/confused     disgusting/disgusted    exciting/interested
exhausting/exhausted   surprising/surprised

1 He works very hard. It’s not surprising that he’s always tired.
2 I’ve got nothing to do. I’m bored.
3 The teacher’s explanation was confusing. Most of the students didn’t understand it.
4 The kitchen hadn’t been cleaned for ages. It was disgusting.
5 I don’t visit art galleries very often. I’m not particularly interested in art.
6 There’s no need to get embarrassed just because I’m a few minutes late.
7 The lecture was boring. I fell asleep.
8 I’ve been working very hard all day and now I’m tired.
9 I’m starting a new job next week. I’m very excited about it.
10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very amusing.
11 Helen is a very interesting person. She knows a lot, she’s travelled a lot and she’s done lots of different things.
Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:
- My brother lives in a nice new house.
- In the kitchen there was a beautiful large round wooden table.

Adjectives like new/large/round/wooden are fact adjectives. They give us factual information about age, size, colour etc.

Adjectives like nice/beautiful are opinion adjectives. They tell us what somebody thinks of something or somebody.

Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>fact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a nice</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an interesting</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a delicious</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a beautiful</td>
<td>large round wooden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

summer holiday
man
vegetable soup
table

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (but not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

1. how big?
2. how old?
3. what colour?
4. where from?
5. what is it made of?

- a tall young man (1 → 2)
- big blue eyes (1 → 3)
- a small black plastic bag (1 → 3 → 5)
- a large round table
- a tall thin girl
- a long narrow street

Adjectives of size and length (big/small/tall/short/long etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (round/fat/thin/slim/wide etc.):

- a large round table
- an old Russian song
- an old white cotton shirt

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use and:
- a black and white dress
- a red, white and green flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:
- a long black dress (not a long and black dress)

We use adjectives after be/get/become/seem:

- Be careful!
- I'm tired and I'm getting hungry.
- As the film went on, it became more and more boring.
- Your friend seems very nice.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:

- You look tired. / I feel tired. / She sounds tired.
- The dinner smells good.
- This tea tastes a bit strange.

But to say how somebody does something you must use an adverb (see Units 100–101):

- Drive carefully! (not Drive careful)
- Susan plays the piano very well. (not plays ... very good)

We say 'the first two days / the next few weeks / the last ten minutes' etc.:

- I didn’t enjoy the first two days of the course. (not the two first days)
- They’ll be away for the next few weeks. (not the few next weeks)
Exercises

99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

1 a beautiful table (wooden / round) a beautiful round wooden table
2 an unusual ring (gold)
3 an old house (beautiful)
4 black gloves (leather)
5 an American film (old)
6 a long face (thin)
7 big clouds (black)
8 a sunny day (lovely)
9 an ugly dress (yellow)
10 a wide avenue (long)
11 a lovely restaurant (little)
12 a red car (old / little)
13 a new sweater (green / nice)
14 a metal box (black / small)
15 a big cat (fat / black)
16 long hair (black / beautiful)
17 an old painting (interesting / French)
18 an enormous umbrella (red / yellow)

99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel look seem smell sound taste awful fine interesting
nice upset wet

1 Helen ___________________ this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2 I can’t eat this. I’ve just tried it and it ___________________.
3 I wasn’t very well yesterday, but I ___________________ today.
4 What beautiful flowers! They ___________________ too.
5 You ___________________. Have you been out in the rain?
6 James was telling me about his new job. It ___________________ — much better than his old job.

99.3 Put in the correct word.

1 This tea tastes a bit ___________________. (strange / strangely)
2 I always feel ___________________ when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
3 The children were playing ___________________ in the garden. (happy / happily)
4 The man became ___________________ when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave. (violent / violently)
5 You look ___________________! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
6 There’s no point in doing a job if you don’t do it ___________________. (proper / properly)
7 The soup tastes ___________________. (good / well)
8 Hurry up! You’re always so ___________________. (slow / slowly)

99.4 Write the following in another way using the first … / the next … / the last … .

1 the first day and the second day of the course the first two days of the course
2 next week and the week after the next two weeks
3 yesterday and the day before yesterday
4 the first week and the second week of May
5 tomorrow and a few days after that
6 questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam
7 next year and the year after
8 the last day of our holiday and the two days before that
Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

Look at these examples:

- Our holiday was too short – the time passed very quickly.
- Two people were seriously injured in the accident.

**Quickly** and **seriously** are adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from an adjective + -ly:

- **adjective:** quick, serious, careful, quiet, heavy, bad
- **adverb:** quickly, seriously, carefully, quietly, heavily, badly

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in -ly are adverbs. Some **adjectives** end in -ly too, for example:

- friendly, lively, elderly, lonely, silly, lovely

**Adjective or adverb?**

Adjectives (quick/careful etc.) tell us about a **noun** (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:

- Sam is a **careful driver**. (not a carefully driver)
- We didn’t go out because of the **heavy rain**.

Compare:

- **She speaks perfect English.** (adjective + noun)
- **She speaks English perfectly.** (verb + noun + adverb)

We also use adjectives after some verbs, especially **be**, and also **look/feel/sound** etc.

Compare:

- **Please be quiet.**
- **I was disappointed that my exam results were so bad.**
- **Why do you always look so serious?**
- **I feel happy.**

We also use adverbs before **adjectives** and **other adverbs**. For example:

- reasonably cheap (adverb + adjective)
- terribly sorry (adverb + adjective)
- incredibly quickly (adverb + adverb)

- It’s a **reasonably cheap** restaurant and the food is **extremely good**.
- I’m **terribly sorry**, I didn’t mean to push you. (not terrible sorry)
- Maria learns languages **incredibly quickly**.
- The exam was **surprisingly easy**.

You can also use an adverb before a past participle (injured/organised/written etc.):

- Two people were **seriously injured** in the accident. (not serious injured)
- The meeting was **badly organised**.
Exercises

100.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.

1. We didn’t go out because it was raining heavily.
2. Our team lost the game because we played very badly.
3. I didn’t have any problems finding a place to live. I found a flat quite easily.
4. We had to wait for a long time, but we didn’t complain. We waited patiently.
5. Nobody knew Steve was coming to see us. He arrived unexpectedly.
6. Mike keeps fit by playing tennis regularly.
7. I don’t speak French very well, but I can understand people speaking slowly and clearly.

100.2 Put in the correct word.

1. Two people were seriously injured in the accident. (serious / seriously)
2. The driver of the car had serious injuries. (serious / seriously)
3. I think you behaved very selfishly. (selfish / selfishly)
4. Tanya is terribly upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
5. There was a sudden change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
6. Everybody at the carnival was colourfully dressed. (colourful / colourfully)
7. Linda usually wears colourful clothes. (colourful / colourfully)
8. Liz fell and hurt herself really badly. (bad / badly)
9. Joe says he didn’t do well at school because he was badly taught. (bad / badly)
10. Don’t go up that ladder. It doesn’t look safe. (safe / safely)

100.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).

| careful(ly) | complete(ly) | continuous(ly) | financial(ly) | fluent(ly) |
| happy/happily | nervous(ly) | perfect(ly) | quick(ly) | special(ly) |

1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very quickly.
2. Steve doesn’t take risks when he’s driving. He’s always carefully.
3. Sue works perfectly. She never seems to stop.
4. Rachel and Patrick are very happily married.
5. Maria’s English is very carefully although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
6. I cooked this meal perfectly for you, so I hope you like it.
7. Everything was very quiet. There was complete silence.
8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me perfectly.
9. Do you usually feel completely before exams?
10. I’d like to buy a car, but it’s completely impossible for me at the moment.

100.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

| absolutely | reasonably | badly | completely | changed | cheap | damaged |
| seriously | completely | badly | slightly | enormous | ill | long |
| unnecessarily | unusually | quiet | planned | quiet | long |

1. I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was reasonably cheap.
2. Will’s mother is in hospital.
3. What a big house! It’s enormously.
4. It wasn’t a serious accident. The car was only slightly damaged.
5. The children are normally very lively, but they’re unusually today.
6. When I returned home after 20 years, everything had planned.
7. The movie was long. It could have been much shorter.
8. A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was unusually quiet.
Good/well

**Good** is an adjective. The adverb is **well**:

- Your English is **good**. **but** You **speak** English well.
- Susan is a **good** pianist. **but** Susan **plays** the piano well.

We use **well** (not **good**) with past participles (dressed/known etc.):

- well-dressed
- well-known
- well-educated
- well-paid

Gary's father is a **well-known** writer.

But **well** is also an adjective with the meaning 'in good health':

- 'How are you today?' 'I'm very **well**, thanks.'

Fast/hard/late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Darren is a very <strong>fast</strong> runner.</td>
<td>Darren can <strong>run</strong> very <strong>fast</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate is a <strong>hard</strong> worker.</td>
<td>Kate <strong>works</strong> <strong>hard</strong>. <em>(not works hardly)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was <strong>late</strong>.</td>
<td>I <strong>got up late</strong> this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lately** = recently:

- Have you seen Tom **lately**?

Hardly

**Hardly** = very little, almost not. Study these examples:

- Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She **hardly** spoke to me. (= she spoke to me very little, almost not at all)
- We've only met once or twice. We **hardly** know each other.

**Hard** and **hardly** are different. Compare:

- He tried **hard** to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried. (= he tried very little)

I can **hardly** do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

- Your writing is terrible. I **can hardly** read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- My leg was hurting. I **could hardly** walk.

You can use **hardly + any(anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere):**

- A: How much money have we got?
- B: **Hardly any**. (= very little, almost none)
- These two cameras are very similar. There's **hardly any** difference between them.
- The exam results were very bad. **Hardly anybody** in our class passed. (= very few students passed)

Note that you can say:

- She said **hardly anything**. || She **hardly** said anything.
- We've got **hardly any** money. || We've **hardly got any** money.

**Hardly ever** = almost never:

- I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I **hardly ever** go out.

**Hardly also means 'certainly not'. For example:**

- It's **hardly surprising** that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days. (= it's certainly not surprising)
- The situation is serious, but it's **hardly a crisis**. (= it's certainly not a crisis)
Exercises

**101.1** Put in good or well.
1. I play tennis but I’m not very good.
2. Your exam results were very good.
3. You did well in your exams.
4. The weather was warm while we were away.
5. I didn’t sleep well last night.
6. Lucy speaks German well. She’s good at languages.
7. Our new business isn’t doing very well at the moment.
8. I like your hat. It looks good on you.
9. I’ve met her a few times, but I don’t know her well.

**101.2** Complete these sentences using well + the following words:

- behaved - dressed - informed - kept - known - paid - written

1. The children were very good. They were well-behaved.
2. I’m surprised you haven’t heard of her. She is quite good.
3. Our neighbours’ garden is neat and tidy. It is very well kept.
4. I enjoyed the book you lent me. It’s a great story and it’s very well written.
5. Tanya knows a lot about many things. She is very well informed.
6. Mark’s clothes are always smart. He is always well dressed.
7. Jane has a lot of responsibility in her job, but she isn’t very well paid.

**101.3** Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1. I’m tired because I’ve been working hard.
2. I tried hard to remember her name, but I couldn’t.
3. This coat is practically unused. I’ve hardly worn it.
4. Laura is a good tennis player. She hits the ball hardly.
5. Don’t walk so fast! I can’t keep up with you.
6. I had plenty of time, so I was walking slow.

**101.4** Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form):

- change - hear - know - recognise - say - sleep - speak

1. Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They hardly know each other.
2. You’re speaking very quietly. I can hardly hear you.
3. I’m very tired this morning. I hardly slept last night.
4. We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could hardly say a word.
5. Kate was very quiet this evening. She hardly spoke a word.
6. You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago. You’ve hardly changed.
7. I met David a few days ago. I hadn’t seen him for a long time and he looks very different now. I hardly recognised him.

**101.5** Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.
1. I’ll have to go shopping. There’s hardly anything to eat.
2. It was a very warm day and there was hardly any wind.
3. ‘Do you know much about computers?’ ‘No, I hardly know anything.’
4. The hotel was almost empty. There was hardly anyone staying there.
5. I listen to the radio a lot, but I hardly ever watch television.
6. Our new boss is not very popular. He hardly ever likes her.
7. It was very crowded in the room. There was hardly anywhere to sit.
8. We used to be good friends, but we hardly ever see each other now.
9. It was nice driving this morning. There was hardly any traffic.
10. I hate this town. There’s hardly anything to do and hardly anywhere to go.
**So and such**

Compare **so** and **such**:

We use **so** + **adjective/adverb**:
- so stupid
- so quick
- so nice
- so quickly

- I didn’t like the book. The story was **so stupid**.
- I like Liz and Joe. They are **so nice**.

We use **such** + **noun**:
- such a story
- such people

We also use **such** + **adjective + noun**:
- such a stupid story
- such nice people

- I didn’t like the book. It was **such a stupid story**. (not a so stupid story)
- I like Liz and Joe. They are **such nice people**. (not so nice people)

We say **such** + (not a such):
- such a big dog (not a such big dog)

**So and such** make the meaning stronger:

- It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it? It’s **so warm**. (= really warm)
- It’s difficult to understand him because he talks **so quietly**.

You can use **so** + **that**:
- The book was **so good** that I couldn’t put it down.
- I was **so tired** that I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out **that**:
- I was **so tired** I fell asleep.

- It was a great holiday. We had **such a good time**. (= a really good time)
- You always think good things are going to happen. You’re **such an optimist**.

You can use **such** + **that**:
- It was **such a good book** that I couldn’t put it down.
- It was **such nice weather** that we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out **that**:
- It was **such nice weather** we spent ...  

We also use **so** and **such** with the meaning ‘like this’:

- Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn’t realise it was **so old**. (= as old as it is)
- I’m tired because I got up at six. I don’t usually get up **so early**.
- I expected the weather to be cooler. I’m surprised it is **so warm**.

- I didn’t realise it was **such an old house**.
- You know it’s not true. How can you say **such a thing**?

Note the expression **no such** +:
- You won’t find the word ‘blid’ in the dictionary. There’s **no such word**. (= this word does not exist)

**Compare**:

- **so long**
  - I haven’t seen her for **so long** I’ve forgotten what she looks like.
- **such a long time**
  - I haven’t seen her for **such a long time**. (not so long time)

- **so far**
  - I didn’t know it was **so far**.
- **such a long way**
  - I didn’t know it was **such a long way**.

- **so much, so many**
  - I’m sorry I’m late – there was **so much** traffic.
- **such a lot (of)**
  - I’m sorry I’m late – there was **such a lot** of traffic.
Exercises

102.1 Put in so, such or such a.
1 It’s difficult to understand him because he speaks _______ quietly.
2 I like Liz and Joe. They’re _______ nice people.
3 It was a great holiday. We had _______ a good time.
4 I was surprised that he looked _______ well after his recent illness.
5 Everything is _______ expensive these days, isn’t it?
6 The weather is beautiful, isn’t it? I didn’t expect it to be _______ nice day.
7 I think she works too hard. She looks _______ tired all the time.
8 He always looks good. He wears _______ nice clothes.
9 It was _______ boring movie that I fell asleep while I was watching it.
10 I couldn’t believe the news. It was _______ shock.
11 I have to go. I didn’t realise it was _______ late.
12 The food at the hotel was _______ awful. I’ve never eaten _______ awful food.
13 They’ve got _______ much money they don’t know what to do with it.
14 I didn’t realise you lived _______ long way from the city centre.
15 The party was really great. It was _______ shame you couldn’t come.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Use so or such.

| 1 She worked hard. | You could hear it from miles away. |
| 2 It was a beautiful day. | You would think it was her native language. |
| 3 I was tired. | We spent the whole day indoors. |
| 4 We had a good time on holiday. | She made herself ill. |
| 5 She speaks English well. | I couldn’t keep my eyes open. |
| 6 I’ve got a lot to do. | I didn’t eat anything else for the rest of the day. |
| 7 The music was loud. | We decided to go to the beach. |
| 8 I had a big breakfast. | I didn’t know what to say. |
| 9 It was horrible weather. | I don’t know where to begin. |
| 10 I was surprised. | We didn’t want to come home. |

102.3 Use your own ideas to complete these pairs of sentences.

1 a We enjoyed our holiday. It was so _______ that I couldn’t believe the news.
   b We enjoyed our holiday. We had _______ a good time.
2 a I like Catherine. She’s so _______.
   b I like Catherine. She’s such _______.
3 a I like New York. It’s so _______.
   b I like New York. It’s such _______.
4 a I wouldn’t like to be a teacher. It’s so _______.
   b I wouldn’t like to be a teacher. It’s such _______.
5 a It’s great to see you again! I haven’t seen you for _______.
   b It’s great to see you again! I haven’t seen you for such _______.
**Enough and too**

**Enough** goes *after* adjectives and adverbs:
- I can’t run very far. I’m not **fit enough**. *(not enough fit)*
- Let’s go. We’ve waited **long enough**.
- I can let you know tomorrow. Is that **soon enough**?

Compare **too ...** and **not ... enough**:
- You never stop working. You work **too hard**. *(= more than is necessary)*
- You’re lazy. You **don’t work hard enough**. *(= less than is necessary)*

**Enough** normally goes *before* nouns:
- I can’t run very far. I don’t have **enough energy**. *(not energy enough)*
- Do we have **enough petrol**, or should we stop and get some?
- We’ve got **enough money**. We don’t need any more.
- Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren’t **enough chairs**.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun):
- We don’t need to stop for petrol. We’ve got **enough**.

Compare **too much/many** and **enough**:
- There’s **too much furniture** in this room. There’s not **enough space**.
- There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

We say **enough/too ... for** somebody/something:
- Does Joe have **enough experience for the job**?
- This bag isn’t big enough **for all my clothes**.
- That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

But we say **enough/too ... to** do something. For example:
- Does Joe have **enough experience to do the job**? *(not for doing)*
- We don’t have **enough money to go on holiday right now**.
- She’s not old enough **to have a driving licence**.
- She’s too young **to have a driving licence**.
- Let’s get a taxi. It’s too far **to walk home from here**.

The following example has both **for ...** and **to ...**:
- The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass each other**.

We say:

| The food was very hot. We couldn’t eat it. |
| and | The food was so hot that we couldn’t eat it. |
| but | The food was **too hot to eat**. *(without it)* |

Some more examples like this:
- These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. *(not to carry them)*
- The wallet was **too big to put** in my pocket. *(not to put it)*
- This chair isn’t **strong enough to stand on**. *(not to stand on it)*
103.1 Complete the sentences using **enough** + the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>chairs</th>
<th>cups</th>
<th>fit</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>warm</th>
<th>well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I can’t run very far. I’m not __fit enough__.
2. Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren’t __enough chairs__.
3. I’d like to buy a car, but I don’t have __enough money__ at the moment.
4. Do you have __enough milk__ in your coffee or would you like some more?
5. Are you __enough time__? Or shall I switch on the heating?
6. It’s only a small car. There isn’t __enough room__ for all of us.
7. Steve didn’t feel __well__ to go to work this morning.
8. I enjoyed my trip to Paris, but there wasn’t __enough time__ to do everything I wanted.
9. Try this jacket on and see if it’s __enough for you__.
10. There weren’t __enough sofa__ for everybody to have coffee at the same time.

103.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use **too** or **enough** + the word(s) in brackets.

1. **Does she have a driving licence?**
   **(old)** No, she’s not old enough to have a driving licence.
2. I need to talk to you about something.
   **(busy)** Well, I’m afraid I’m __too busy__ to talk to you now.
3. Let’s go to the cinema.
   **(late)** No, it’s __too late__ to go to the cinema.
4. Why don’t we sit outside?
   **(warm)** It’s __too warm__ outside.
5. Would you like to be a politician?
   **(shy)** No, I’m __too shy__ to be a politician.
6. Would you like to be a teacher?
   **(patience)** No, I don’t have __enough patience__ to be a teacher.
7. Did you hear what he was saying?
   **(far away)** No, we were __too far away__ to hear what he was saying.
8. Can he read a newspaper in English?
   **(English)** No, he doesn’t know __enough English__ to read a newspaper.

103.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using **too** or **enough**.

1. We couldn’t carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
   The boxes were __too heavy__ to carry.
2. I can’t drink this coffee. It’s too hot.
   This coffee is __too hot__.
3. Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
   The piano was __too heavy__ to move.
4. Don’t eat these apples. They’re not ripe enough.
   These apples are __not ripe enough__.
5. I can’t explain the situation. It is too complicated.
   The situation is __too complicated__.
6. We couldn’t climb over the wall. It was too high.
   The wall is __too high__.
7. Three people can’t sit on this sofa. It isn’t big enough.
   This sofa is __too small__.
8. You can’t see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
   Some things are __too small__ to see without a microscope.
 Quite, pretty, rather and fairly

You can use quite/pretty/rather/fairly + adjectives or adverbs. So you can say:
- It's quite cold. It's pretty cold. It's rather cold. It's fairly cold.

Quite/pretty/rather/fairly = less than 'very' but more than 'a little'.

Quite and pretty are similar in meaning:
- I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous / pretty famous. (= less than 'very famous', but more than 'a little famous')
- Anna lives quite near me, so we see each other pretty often.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

Quite goes before a/an:
- We live in quite an old house. (not a quite old house)

Compare:
- Sarah has quite a good job.
- Sarah has a pretty good job.

You can also use quite (but not pretty) in the following ways:

**quite a/an + noun (without an adjective):**
- I didn't expect to see them. It was quite a surprise. (= quite a big surprise)

**quite a lot of ...:**
- There were quite a lot of people at the meeting.

**quite + verb, especially like and enjoy:**
- I quite like tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

Rather is similar to quite and pretty. We often use rather for negative ideas (things we think are not good):
- The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy.
- Paul is rather shy. He doesn't talk very much.

Quite and pretty are also possible in these examples.

When we use rather for positive ideas (good/nice etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':
- These oranges are rather good. Where did you get them?

Fairly is weaker than quite/rather/prety. For example, if something is fairly good, it is not very good and it could be better:
- My room is fairly big, but I'd prefer a bigger one.
- We see each other fairly often, but not as often as we used to.

**Quite** also means 'completely'. For example:
- 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.' (= completely sure)

 Quite means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sure</th>
<th>right</th>
<th>true</th>
<th>clear</th>
<th>different</th>
<th>incredible</th>
<th>amazing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>certain</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>safe</td>
<td>obvious</td>
<td>unnecessary</td>
<td>extraordinary</td>
<td>impossible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She was quite different from what I expected. (= completely different)
- Everything they said was quite true. (= completely true)

We also use quite (= completely) with some verbs. For example:
- I quite agree with you. (= I completely agree)

Not quite = not completely:
- They haven't quite finished eating yet.
- I don't quite understand what you mean.
- 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not quite.' (= not completely)
## Exercises

### 104.1
Complete the sentences using *quite* + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>surprised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I’m surprised you haven’t heard of her. She’s **quite famous**.
2. I’m ...........................................: Is there anything to eat?
3. ‘How were the pictures you took?’ ‘...........................................’. Better than usual.’
4. I go to the cinema ........................................... – maybe once a month.
5. We live near a very busy road, so it’s often ............................................
6. I didn’t expect Laura to contact me. I was ........................................... when she phoned.
7. I went to bed ........................................... last night, so I’m a bit tired this morning.
8. I don’t know exactly when these houses were built, but they’re ............................................

### 104.2
Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

1. The weather was better than we had expected.
   It was **quite a nice day** ........................................... *(a / nice / quite / day).*
2. Tom likes to sing.
   He has ........................................... *(voice / quite / good / a).*
3. The bus stop wasn’t very near the hotel.
   We had to walk ........................................... *(quite / way / a / long).*
4. It’s not so warm today.
   There’s ........................................... *(a / wind / cold / pretty).*
5. The journey took longer than I expected.
   There was ........................................... *(lot / traffic / a / of / quite).*
6. I’m tired.
   I’ve had ........................................... *(pretty / day / a / busy).*

### 104.3
Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use *rather* + adjective.

1. The weather isn’t so good. It’s **rather cloudy**.
2. I enjoyed the film, but it was ............................................
3. The hotel we stayed at wasn’t very good. I was ............................................
4. I think it’s ........................................... that Chris went away without telling anybody.
5. Lucy doesn’t like having to wait. Sometimes she’s ............................................

### 104.4
What does *quite* mean in these sentences? Tick (√) the right meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence</th>
<th>more than a little, less than very (Section B)</th>
<th>completely (Section E)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 It’s <strong>quite cold</strong>. You’d better wear your coat.</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ‘Are you sure?’ ‘Yes, quite sure.’</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Anna’s English is <strong>quite good</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I couldn’t believe it. It was <strong>quite incredible</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 My bedroom is <strong>quite big</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I’m <strong>quite tired</strong>. I think I’ll go to bed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I quite agree with you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 104.5
Complete these sentences using *quite* + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>safe</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>unnecessary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I didn’t believe her at first, but in fact what she said was **quite true**.
2. You won’t fall. The ladder is ............................................
3. I’m afraid I can’t do what you ask. It’s ............................................
4. I couldn’t agree with you more. You are ............................................
5. You can’t compare the two things. They are ............................................
6. You needn’t have done that. It was ............................................
7. I think I saw them go out, but I’m not ............................................
Comparison 1  (cheaper, more expensive etc.)

Study these examples:

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

Let's drive. It's **cheaper**.
Don't go by train. It's **more expensive**.

**Cheaper and more expensive** are comparative forms.

After comparatives you can use **than** (see Unit 107):
- It's **cheaper** to drive **than** go by train.
- Going by train is **more expensive than** driving.

The comparative form is **-er or more ...**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short words (one syllable)</th>
<th>Longer words (two syllables or more)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheap → cheaper</td>
<td>more serious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large → larger</td>
<td>more often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast → faster</td>
<td>more expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin → thinner</td>
<td>more comfortable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also use **-er** for two-syllable words that end in **-y** (**-y → -ier**):
- lucky → luckier
- easy → easier
- early → earlier
- pretty → prettier

We also use **more ...** for adverbs that end in **-ly**:
- more slowly
- more easily
- more quietly

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Compare these examples:

- You're **older** than me.
- The exam was quite easy – **easier** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **faster**?
- I'd like to have a **bigger** car.
- Last night I went to bed **earlier** than usual.

- You're **more patient** than me.
- The exam was quite difficult – **more difficult** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **more slowly**?
- I'd like to have a **more reliable** car.
- I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play **more often**.

You can use **-er or more ...** with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:
- clever
- narrow
- quiet
- shallow
- simple

- It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere **quieter / more quiet**?

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

**good/well → better**
- The garden looks **better** since you tidied it up.
- I know him **well** – probably **better** than anybody else knows him.

**bad/badly → worse**
- 'How's your headache? Better?'  'No, it's **worse**.'
- He did very badly in the exam – **worse** than expected.

**far → further (or farther)**
- It's a long walk from here to the park – **further** than I thought. (or **farther** than)

**Further (but not farther)** can also mean 'more' or 'additional':
- Let me know if you hear any **further** news. (≠ any more news)
Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).

1. It’s too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ________ quieter ________?
2. This coffee is very weak. I like it ____________________________.
3. The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be ____________________________.
4. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ____________________________.
5. The weather is too cold here. I’d like to live somewhere ____________________________.
6. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I’d like to do something ____________________________.
7. It’s a shame you live so far away. I wish you lived ____________________________.
8. I was surprised how easy it was to get a job. I thought it would be ____________________________.
9. Your work isn’t very good. I’m sure you can do ____________________________.
10. Don’t worry. The situation isn’t so bad. It could be ____________________________.
11. I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the trip to take ____________________________.
12. You’re talking very loudly. Can you speak ____________________________?
13. You hardly ever call me. Why don’t you call me ____________________________ away?
14. You’re standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit ____________________________ away?
15. You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look ____________________________ today.

105.2 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use than where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>interested</th>
<th>crowded</th>
<th>early</th>
<th>easily</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>important</th>
<th>thin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>-reliable-</td>
<td>serious</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed ________ earlier ________ usual.
2. I’d like to have a ________ more ________ car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
3. Unfortunately her illness was ________ we thought at first.
4. You look ________ . Have you lost weight?
5. I want a ________ apartment. We don’t have enough space here.
6. He doesn’t study very hard. He’s ________ in having a good time.
7. Health and happiness are ________ money.
8. The instructions were very complicated. They could have been ________ .
9. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was ________ usual.
10. I like living in the country. It’s ________ living in a town.
11. You’ll find your way around the town ________ if you have a good map.
12. In some parts of the country, prices are ________ in others.

105.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more …).

1. Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it’s only three degrees.
   It’s ________ today ________ it was yesterday.
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
   It takes ________ by car.
3. Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.
   I ran ________ Dan.
4. Chris and Joe both did badly in the test. Chris got 30%, but Joe only got 25%.
   Joe did ________ Chris in the test.
5. I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o’clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.
   My friends ________ I expected.
6. You can go by bus or by train. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run every hour.
   The buses ________ the trains.
7. We were very busy in the office today. We’re not usually so busy.
   We ________ usual in the office today.
Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)

Before comparatives you can use:

- much
- a lot
- far (≈ a lot)
- a bit
- a little
- slightly (≈ a little)

- Let’s go by car. It’s much cheaper. (or a lot cheaper)
- ‘How do you feel now?’ ‘Much better, thanks.’
- Don’t go by train. It’s a lot more expensive. (or much more expensive)
- Could you speak a bit more slowly? (or a little more slowly)
- This bag is slightly heavier than the other one.
- Her illness was far more serious than we thought at first. (or much more serious / a lot more serious)

You can use any and no + comparative (any longer / no bigger etc.):

- I’ve waited long enough. I’m not waiting any longer. (= not even a little longer)
- We expected their apartment to be very big, but it’s no bigger than ours. or ...
  it isn’t any bigger than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- How do you feel now? Do you feel any better?
- This hotel is better than the other one, and it’s no more expensive.

Better and better / more and more etc.

We repeat comparatives (better and better etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- Your English is improving. It’s getting better and better.
- The city has grown fast in recent years. It’s got bigger and bigger.
- As I listened to his story, I became more and more convinced that he was lying.
- These days more and more people are learning English.

The ... the ...

You can say the (sooner/bigger/more etc.) the better:

- ‘What time shall we leave?’ ‘The sooner the better.’ (= as soon as possible)
- A: What sort of box do you want? A big one?
  B: Yes, the bigger the better. (= as big as possible)
- When you’re travelling, the less luggage you have the better.

We also use the ... the ... to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- The warmer the weather, the better I feel. (= if the weather is warmer, I feel better)
- The sooner we leave, the earlier we will arrive.
- The younger you are, the easier it is to learn.
- The more expensive the hotel, the better the service.
- The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
- The more I thought about the plan, the less I liked it.

Older and elder

The comparative of old is older:

- David looks older than he really is.

You can use elder (or older) when you talk about people in a family. You can say
  (my/your etc.) elder sister/brother/daughter/son:
- My elder sister is a TV producer. (or My older sister ...)

We say ‘my elder sister’, but we do not say that ‘somebody is elder’:

- My sister is older than me. (not elder than me)
Exercises

106.1 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much / a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use than where necessary.

1. Her illness was __________ more serious than __________ we thought at first. (much / serious)
2. This bag is too small. I need something __________. (much / big)
3. I liked the museum. It was __________ I expected. (much / interesting)
4. It was very hot yesterday. Today it’s __________. (a bit / cool)
5. I’m afraid the problem is __________ it seems. (far / complicated)
6. You’re driving too fast. Can you drive __________? (a bit / slowly)
7. It’s __________ to learn a language in a country where it is spoken. (a lot / easy)
8. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she’s __________. (slightly / old)

106.2 Complete the sentences using any/no + comparative. Use than where necessary.

1. I’ve waited long enough. I’m not waiting __________ longer.
2. I’m sorry I’m a bit late, but I couldn’t get here __________.
3. This shop isn’t expensive. The prices are __________ anywhere else.
4. I need to stop for a rest. I can’t walk __________.
5. The traffic isn’t particularly bad today. It’s __________ usual.

106.3 Complete the sentences using the structure in Section C (... and ...).

1. It’s getting __________ and __________ difficult __________ to find a job. (difficult)
2. That hole in your sweater is getting __________. (big)
3. My bags seemed to get __________ as I carried them. (heavy)
4. As I waited for my interview, I became __________. (nervous)
5. As the day went on, the weather got __________. (bad)
6. Health care is becoming __________. (expensive)
7. Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got __________. (good)
8. As the conversation went on, Paul became __________. (talkative)

106.4 Complete the sentences using the structure in Section D (the ... the ...).

1. I like warm weather.
   The warmer the weather, __________. (feel)
2. I didn’t really like him when we first met.
   But the more I got to know him, __________. (like)
3. If you’re in business, you want to make a profit.
   The more goods you sell, __________. (profit)
4. It’s hard to concentrate when you’re tired.
   The more tired you are, __________. (hard)
5. Kate had to wait a very long time.
   The longer she had to wait, __________. (impatient / become)

106.5 Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

1. I like to travel light. The __________ luggage, the better.
2. The problem is getting __________ and more serious.
3. The more time I have, the __________ it takes me to do things.
4. I’m walking as fast as I can. I can’t walk __________ faster.
5. The higher your income, __________ more tax you have to pay.
6. I’m surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was __________.
7. Jane’s __________ sister is a nurse.
8. I was a little late. The journey took __________ longer than I expected.
9. We have a lot to discuss. We need to start the meeting __________ later than 9.30.
10. Don’t tell him anything. The __________ he knows, the __________.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>any</th>
<th>better</th>
<th>elder</th>
<th>less</th>
<th>less</th>
<th>longer</th>
<th>more</th>
<th>no</th>
<th>older</th>
<th>slightly</th>
<th>the</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

213
Study this example situation:

Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich. Sarah has $20 million, Joe has $15 million and David has $10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is richer than David.

But he isn't as rich as Sarah. (= Sarah is richer than he is)

Some more examples of not as ... (as):
- Jack isn't as old as he looks. (= he looks older than he is)
- The town centre wasn't as crowded as usual. (= it is usually more crowded)
- Lisa didn't do as well in the exam as she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do better)
- The weather is better today. It's not as cold. (= yesterday was colder than today)
- I don't know as many people as you do. (= you know more people than me)
- 'How much did it cost? Fifty pounds?' 'No, not as much as that.' (= less than fifty pounds)

You can also say not so ... (as):
- It's not warm, but it isn't so cold as yesterday. (= it isn't as cold as ...)

Less ... than is similar to not as ... as:
- I spent less money than you. (= I didn't spend as much money as you)
- The city centre was less crowded than usual. (= it wasn't as crowded as usual)
- I play tennis less than I used to. (= I don't play as much as I used to)

We also use as ... as (but not so ... as) in positive sentences and in questions:
- I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could.
- There's plenty of food. You can have as much as you want.
- Let's walk. It's just as quick as taking the bus.
- Can you send me the information as soon as possible, please?

Also twice as ... as, three times as ... as etc.:
- Petrol is twice as expensive as it was a few years ago.
- Their house is about three times as big as ours.

We say the same as (not the same like):
- Laura's salary is the same as mine. or Laura gets the same salary as me.
- David is the same age as James.
- Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks the same as she did ten years ago.

Than me / than I am etc.

You can say:
- You're taller than me. or You're taller than I am.
  (not usually You're taller than I)
- He's not as clever as her. or He's not as clever as she is.
- They have more money than us. or They have more money than we have.
- I can't run as fast as him. or I can't run as fast as he can.
Exercises

107.1 Complete the sentences using as ... as.
1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not ______ as tall as you ______.
2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't ______.__ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ...
Study these examples:

What is the longest river in the world?
What was the most enjoyable holiday you’ve ever had?

**Longest** and **most enjoyable** are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est or most ... In general, we use -est for short words and most ... for longer words. The rules are the same as those for the comparative – see Unit 105.

- long → longest
- hot → hottest
- easy → easiest
- hard → hardest
- but most famous
- most boring
- most difficult
- most expensive

A few adjectives are irregular:
- good → best
- bad → worst
- far → furthest/farthest

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We normally use the before a superlative (the longest / the most famous etc.):
- Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
- The movie was really boring. It’s the most boring movie I’ve ever seen.
- She is a really nice person – one of the nicest people I know.
- Why does he always come to see me at the worst possible time?

Compare superlative and comparative:
- This hotel is the cheapest in town. (superlative)
  It’s cheaper than all the others in town. (comparative)
- He’s the most patient person I’ve ever met.
  He’s much more patient than I am.

**Oldest** and **eldest**

The superlative of old is oldest:
- That church is the oldest building in the town. (not the eldest)

We use eldest (or oldest) when we are talking about people in a family:
- My eldest son is 13 years old. (or My oldest son)
- Are you the eldest in your family? (or the oldest)

After superlatives we normally use in with places:
- What’s the longest river in the world? (not of the world)
- We had a nice room. It was one of the best in the hotel. (not of the hotel)

We also use in for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):
- Who is the youngest student in the class? (not of the class)

For a period of time, we normally use of:
- Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
- What was the happiest day of your life?

We often use the present perfect (I have done) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):
- What’s the most important decision you’ve ever had to make?
- That was the best holiday I’ve had for a long time.
Exercises

108.1 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

1. It's a very good room. It's the best room in the hotel.
2. It's a very cheap restaurant. It's the town.
3. It was a very happy day. It was my life.
4. She's a very intelligent student. She's the class.
5. It's a very valuable painting. It's the gallery.
6. Spring is a very busy time for me. It's the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

7. It's a very good room. It's one of the best rooms in the hotel.
8. He's a very rich man. He's one the country.
9. It's a very big castle. It's Europe.
10. She's a very good player. She's the team.
11. It was a very bad experience. It was my life.
12. It's a very famous university. It's the world.

108.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1. We stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town. (cheap)
2. Our hotel was cheaper than all the others in the town. (cheap)
3. The United States is very large, but Canada is (large)
4. What's the country in the world? (small)
5. I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit today. (good)
6. It was an awful day. It was day of my life. (good)
7. What is the sport in your country? (popular)
8. Everest is mountain in the world. It is than any other mountain. (high)
9. This building is over 250 metres high, but it's not in the city. (tall)
10. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's way to get to the station? (quick)
11. What's – the bus or the train? (quick)
12. Which is – the bus or the train? (quick)
13. What's the thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
14. Sue and Kevin have got three daughters. is 14 years old. (old)

108.3 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever. Use the words in brackets (in the correct form).

1. You’ve just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
   (boring / movie / see) That’s the most boring movie I’ve ever seen.
2. Your friend has just told you a joke, which you think is very funny. You say:
   (funny / joke / hear) That’s
3. You’re drinking coffee with a friend. It’s really good coffee. You say:
   (good / coffee / taste) This
4. You are talking to a friend about Sarah. Sarah is very generous. You tell your friend about her:
   (generous / person / meet) She
5. You have just run ten kilometres. You’ve never run further than this. You say to your friend:
   (far / run) That
6. You decided to give up your job. Now you think this was a bad mistake. You say to your friend:
   (bad / mistake / make) It
7. Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
   (famous / person / meet?) Who ?
Verb + object

The verb and the object normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

- I like my job very much. (not I like very much my job)
- Did you see your friends yesterday?
- Helen never drinks coffee.

Study these examples. The verb and the object go together each time:

- Do you eat meat every day? (not Do you eat every day meat?)
- Everybody enjoyed the party very much. (not enjoyed very much the party)
- Our guide spoke English fluently. (not spoke fluently English)
- I lost all my money and I also lost my passport. (not I lost also my passport)
- At the end of the street you’ll see a supermarket on your left. (not see on your left a supermarket)

Place and time

Usually the verb and the place (where?) go together:
- go home
- live in a city
- walk to work etc.

If the verb has an object, the place comes after the verb + object:
- take somebody home
- meet a friend in the street

Time (when? / how often? / how long?) usually goes after place:

- Ben walks to work every morning. (not every morning to work)
- Sam has been in Canada since April.
- We arrived at the airport early.

Study these examples. Time goes after place:

- I’m going to Paris on Monday. (not I’m going on Monday to Paris)
- They have lived in the same house for a long time.
- Don’t be late. Make sure you’re here by 8 o’clock.
- Sarah gave me a lift home after the party.
- You really shouldn’t go to bed so late.

It is often possible to put time at the beginning of the sentence:
- On Monday I’m going to Paris.
- Every morning Ben walks to work.

Some time words (for example, always/never/usually) go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.
Exercises

109.1 Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Everybody enjoyed the party very much. OK
2. Ben walks every morning to work.
3. Joe doesn’t like very much football.
4. I drink three or four cups of coffee every morning.
5. I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.
6. Are you going to invite to the party a lot of people?
7. I phone Tom immediately after hearing the news.
8. Did you go late to bed last night?
9. Did you learn a lot of things at school today?
10. I met on my way home a friend of mine.

109.2 Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.

1. (the party / very much / everybody enjoyed) Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2. (we won / easily / the game)
3. (quietly / the door / I closed)
4. (Tanya / quite well / speaks / German)
5. (Sam / all the time / TV / watches)
6. (again / please don’t ask / that question)
7. (football / every weekend / does Kevin play?)
8. (some money / I borrowed / from a friend of mine)

109.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1. (for a long time / have lived / in the same house)
   They have lived in the same house for a long time.
2. (to the supermarket / every Friday / go)
   I
3. (home / did you come / so late)
   Why
4. (her children / takes / every day / to school)
   Sarah
5. (been / recently / to the cinema)
   I haven’t
6. (at the top of the page / your name / write)
   Please
7. (her name / after a few minutes / remembered)
   I
8. (around the town / all morning / walked)
   We
9. (on Saturday night / didn’t see you / at the party)
   I
10. (some interesting books / found / in the library)
    We
11. (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left)
    Laura
12. (opposite the park / a new hotel / are building)
    They
Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

Some adverbs (for example, always, also, probably) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:
- Helen always drives to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- The concert will probably be cancelled.

If the verb is one word (drives/fell/cooked etc.), the adverb goes before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Helen</td>
<td>always drives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| I      | almost fell  | as I was going down the stairs.

- I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner. (not cooked also)
- Lucy hardly ever watches television and rarely reads newspapers.
- 'Shall I give you my address?' 'No, I already have it.'

Note that these adverbs (always/often/also etc.) go before have to ...:
- Joe never phones me. I always have to phone him. (not I have always to phone)

But adverbs go after am/is/are/was/were:
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- Why are you always late? You're never on time.
- The traffic isn't usually as bad as it was this morning.

If the verb is two or more words (for example, can remember / doesn't eat / will be cancelled), the adverb usually goes after the first verb (can/doesn't/will etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb 1</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>never remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clare</td>
<td>doesn't often</td>
<td>eat  meat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>definitely</td>
<td>going away next week?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The concert</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>probably be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You've always been very kind to me.
- Jack can't cook. He can't even boil an egg.
- Do you still work for the same company?
- The house was only built a year ago and it's already falling down.

Note that probably goes before a negative (isn't/won't etc.). So we say:
- I probably won't see you. or I will probably not see you. (not I won't probably)

We also use all and both in these positions:
- We all felt ill after the meal. (not we felt all ill)
- My parents are both teachers. (not my parents both are teachers)
- Sarah and Jane have both applied for the job.
- We are all going out tonight.

Sometimes we use is/will/did etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51):
- Tom says he isn't clever, but I think he is. (= he is clever)

When we do this, we put always/never etc. before the verb:
- He always says he won't be late, but he always is. (= he is always late)
- I've never done it and I never will. (= I will never do it)
Exercises

110.1 Are the underlined words in the right position or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Helen drives **always** to work.  
   Helen **always** drives to work.  

2 I cleaned the house and **also** cooked the dinner.  
   I cleaned the house and **also** cooked the dinner.  

3 I have **usually** a shower in the morning.  

4 We **soon** found the solution to the problem.  

5 Steve gets **hardly ever** angry.  

6 I did some shopping and I went **also** to the bank.  

7 Jane has **always** to hurry in the morning.  

8 I **never** have worked in a factory.  

9 I **never** have enough time. I **always** am busy.  

110.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1 Clare doesn't eat meat. (often) **Clare doesn't often eat meat.**  

2 Katherine is very generous. (always)  

3 I don't have to work on Saturdays. (usually)  

4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)  

5 Martin is learning Spanish and he is learning Japanese. (also)  

   Martin is learning Spanish and he  

6 a We were on holiday in Spain. (all)  
   b We were staying at the same hotel. (all)  
   c We enjoyed ourselves. (all)  

7 a The new hotel is very expensive. (probably)  
   b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)  

8 a I can help you. (probably)  
   b I can't help you. (probably)  

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 I **can never remember** (remember / I / never / can) her name.  

2 .................................................. (take / I / usually) sugar in coffee.  

3 .................................................. (am / usually / I) hungry when I get home from work.  

4 Mark and Amy .................................................. (both / were / born) in Manchester.  

5 Lisa is a good pianist. .................................................. (sing / she / also / can) very well.  

6 Our cat .................................................. (usually / sleeps) under the bed.  

7 They live in the same building as me, but  

   (never / I / have / spoken) to them.  

8 This shop is always very busy.  

   (have / you / always / to wait) a long time to be served.  

9 My eyesight isn't very good.  

   (I / read / can / only) with glasses.  

10 .................................................. (all / were / we) tired, so  

   (all / we / fell) asleep.  

11 A: Are you tired?  

   b: Yes, .................................................. (am / I / always) at this time of day.  

12 .................................................. (I / probably / leaving / will / be) early tomorrow.  

13 I'm afraid .................................................. (probably / I / be / won't) able to come to  

   the party.  

14 Helen is away a lot. .................................................. (is / hardly ever / she) at home.  

15 .................................................. (we / still / are / living) in the same place. We haven't  

   moved.  

16 If we hadn't taken the same train,  

   (never / met / we / would / have) each other.  

17 Tanya .................................................. (says / always) that she'll phone me, but  

   .................................................. (does / she / never).
Still

We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn’t changed or stopped:

- It’s 10 o’clock and Joe is **still** in bed.
- When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
- Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

**Still** usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb (see Unit 110).

Any more / any longer / no longer

We use **not ... any more** or **not ... any longer** to say that a situation has changed. **Any more** and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:

- Lucy **doesn’t work here any more** (or **any longer**). She left last month.
  
  *(not Lucy doesn’t still work here.)*
- We used to be good friends, but we **aren’t any more** (or **any longer**).

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:

- Lucy **no longer** works here.

Note that we do not normally use **no more** in this way:

- We are **no longer** friends. *(not We are no more friends.)*

Compare **still** and **not ... any more**:

- Sally **still** works here, but Lucy **doesn’t work here any more**.

Yet

**Yet =** until now. We use **yet** mainly in negative sentences (**He isn’t here yet**) and questions (**Is he here yet?**). **Yet** shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen.

Yet usually goes at the end of a sentence:

- It’s 10 o’clock and Joe **isn’t** here **yet**.
- **Have** you **met** your new neighbours **yet**?
- ‘Where are you going on holiday?’ ‘We **don’t know yet.**’

We often use **yet** with the present perfect (**Have you met ... yet?**). See Unit 7D.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- Mike lost his job six months ago and **is still** unemployed.
  
  Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn’t found** another job **yet**.
- **Is it still** raining?
  
  **Has it stopped** raining **yet**?

**Still** is also possible in **negative** sentences (before the negative):

- She said she would be here an hour ago and she **still hasn’t** come.

This is similar to ‘she hasn’t come **yet**’. But **still ... not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:

- I sent him an invitation last week. He ** hasn’t replied yet.** (but I expect he will reply soon)
- I sent him an invitation weeks ago and he **still hasn’t** replied. (he should have replied before now)

Already

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected. **Already** usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- ‘What time is Sue leaving?’ ‘She has **already** left.’ (= sooner than you expected)
- Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he **already** know?
- I’ve just had lunch and I’m **already** hungry.

Present perfect + **already/yet** ➔ Unit 7D  
Word order ➔ Unit 110
Exercises

111.1 Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write sentences with still and any more.

Paul a few years ago
I travel a lot.
I work in a shop.
I write poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I’m interested in politics.
I’m single.
I go fishing a lot.

Paul now
I travel a lot.
I work in a hospital.
I gave up writing poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I’m not interested in politics.
I’m single.
I haven’t been fishing for years.

1 (travel)  He still travels a lot.
2 (shop) He doesn’t work in a shop any more.
3 (poems) He
4 (teacher)
5 (politics)
6 (single)
7 (fishing)
8 (beard)

Now write three sentences about Paul using no longer.
9 He no longer works in a shop.
10
11

111.2 For each sentence (with still) write a sentence with a similar meaning using not ... yet + one of the following verbs:

deck, find, finish, go, stop, take off, wake up

1 It’s still raining.
   It hasn’t stopped raining yet.
2 Gary is still here.
   He
3 They’re still repairing the road.
   They
4 The children are still asleep.
5 Is Ann still looking for a place to live?
   ?
6 I’m still wondering what to do.
7 The plane is still waiting on the runway.

111.3 Put in still, yet, already or any more in the underlined sentence (or part of the sentence). Study the examples carefully.

1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is unemployed. he is still unemployed
2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he know? does he already know?
3 I’m hungry. Is dinner ready? Is dinner ready yet?
4 I was hungry earlier, but I’m not hungry. I’m not hungry any more
5 Can we wait a few minutes? I don’t want to go out.
6 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn’t work there.
7 I used to live in Amsterdam. I have a lot of friends there.
8 ‘Shall I introduce you to Joe?’ ‘There’s no need. We’ve met.’
9 Do you live in the same place or have you moved?
10 Would you like to eat with us or have you eaten?
11 ‘Where’s John?’ ‘He’s not here. He’ll be here soon.’
12 Tim said he’d be here at 8.30. It’s 9 o’clock now and he isn’t here.
13 Do you want to join the club or are you a member?
14 It happened a long time ago, but I can remember it very clearly.
15 I’ve put on weight. These trousers don’t fit me.
16 ‘Have you finished with the paper?’ ‘No, I’m reading it.’
Even

Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching television.
She has a TV in every room of the house, **even** the bathroom.

We use **even** to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a TV in the bathroom.

Some more examples:

- These pictures are really awful. **Even I** take better pictures than these.
  (and I’m certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat, **even in hot weather**.
- The print was very small. I couldn’t read it, **even with glasses**.
- Nobody would help her, **not even her best friend**.
  **or** **Not even** her best friend would help her.

You can use **even** with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- Sue has travelled all over the world. She has **even** been to the Antarctic.
  (It’s especially unusual to go to the Antarctic, so she must have travelled a lot.)
- They are very rich. They **even** have their own private jet.

Study these examples with **even** after a negative (**not/can’t/don’t** etc.):

- I can’t cook. I **can’t even** boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren’t very friendly to us. They **didn’t even** say hello.
- Jessica is very fit. She’s just run five miles and she’s **not even** out of breath.

You can use **even** + **comparative** (**cheaper** / **more expensive** etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up **even earlier**.
- I knew I didn’t have much money, but I’ve got **even less** than I thought.
- We were surprised to get an email from her. We were **even more surprised** when she came to see us a few days later.

**Even though** / **even when** / **even if**

We use **even though** / **even when** / **even if** + **subject** + **verb**:

- **Even though she can’t** drive, she bought a car. **subject + verb**
- He never shouts, **even when he’s** angry.
- This river is dangerous. It’s dangerous to swim in it, **even if you’re** a strong swimmer.

You cannot use **even** in this way (+ **subject** + **verb**). We say:

- **Even though she can’t** drive, she bought a car. (not Even she can’t drive)
- I can’t reach the shelf **even if I stand** on a chair. (not even I stand)

Compare **even if** and **if**:

- We’re going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn’t matter what the weather is like.
  We’re going **even if** it’s raining.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won’t go **if** it’s raining.
Exercises

112.1 Amy, Kate and Lisa are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using **even** or **not even**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amy</th>
<th>Kate</th>
<th>Lisa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is usually happy</td>
<td>isn't very keen on art</td>
<td>is almost always late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is usually on time</td>
<td>is usually miserable</td>
<td>is a keen photographer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likes getting up early</td>
<td>usually hates hotels</td>
<td>loves staying in hotels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is very interested in art</td>
<td>hasn't got a camera</td>
<td>isn't very good at getting up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, **even Kate**.
2. They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time, **not even**.
3. They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it, **not even**.
4. Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this, **not even**.
5. They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood, **not even**.
6. None of them took any pictures, **not even**.

112.2 **Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.**

1. Sue has been all over the world. (the Antarctic) **She has even been to the Antarctic.**
2. We painted the whole room. (the floor) **We**
3. Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the prime minister) **She**
4. You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street) **You**

**In the following sentences you have to use not ... even.**

5. They didn’t say anything to us. (hello) **They didn’t even say hello.**
6. I can’t remember anything about her. (her name) **I**
7. There isn’t anything to do in this town. (a cinema) **There isn’t even anything to do in this town.**
8. He didn’t tell anybody where he was going. (his wife) **He didn’t even tell anybody where he was going.**
9. I don’t know anyone in our street. (the people next door) **I don’t even know anyone in our street.**

112.3 **Complete the sentences using even + comparative.**

1. It was very hot yesterday, but today it’s **even hotter**.
2. The church is 500 years old, but the house next to it is **not even**.
3. That’s a very good idea, but I’ve got an **even better** one.
4. The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was **not even**.
5. I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did **not even**.
6. Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate **not even**.

112.4 **Put in if, even, even if or even though.**

1. **Even though** she can’t drive, she has bought a car.
2. The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it **if we run.**
3. The bus leaves in two minutes. We won’t catch it now **even if we run.**
4. His Spanish isn’t very good, **even though** he lived in Spain for three years.
5. His Spanish isn’t very good, **even though** he lived in Spain for three years.
6. **Even if** with the heating on, it was cold in the house.
7. I couldn’t sleep **even though** I was very tired.
8. I won’t forgive them for what they did, **even if** they apologise.
9. **Even though I hadn’t eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn’t hungry.**
Although / though / even though
In spite of / despite

Study this example situation:

Last year Paul and Sarah had a holiday by the sea. It rained a lot, but they enjoyed it.

You can say:

**Although it rained** a lot, they enjoyed it.

(= It rained a lot, *but* they ...)

or

**In spite of**

**Despite** the rain, they enjoyed it.

After **although** we use a *subject* + *verb*:

- Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
- I didn't get the job although I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of **although** and **because**:

- We went out although it was raining heavily.
- We didn't go out because it was raining heavily.

After **in spite of** or **despite**, we use a *noun, a pronoun* (this/that/what etc.) or -ing:

- In spite of the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.
- I didn't get the job in spite of having the necessary qualifications.
- She wasn't well, but in spite of this she continued working.
- In spite of what I said yesterday, I still love you.

**Despite** is the same as **in spite of**. We say **in spite of**, but **despite** (without):

- She wasn't well, but despite this she continued working. (not despite of this)

You can say **in spite of the fact** (that) ... and **despite the fact** (that) ...:

- I didn't get the job **in spite of the fact** (that) I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare **in spite of** and **because of**:

- We went out in spite of the rain. (or ... despite the rain.)
- We didn't go out because of the rain.

Compare **although** and **in spite of** / **despite**:

- Although the traffic was bad, we arrived on time. (not In spite of the traffic was bad)
- I couldn't sleep although I was very tired. (not despite I was tired)

**Though** is the same as **although**:

- I didn't get the job though I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence:

- The house isn't so nice. I like the garden though. (= but I like the garden)
- I see them every day. I've never spoken to them though. (= but I've never spoken to them)

**Even though** (*but not 'even' alone*) is a stronger form of **although**:

- Even though I was really tired, I couldn't sleep. (not Even I was really tired ...)

Even ➔ Unit 112
Exercises

113.1 Complete the sentences. Use although + a sentence from the box.

I didn’t speak the language well  he has a very important job.
I had never seen her before  we don’t like them very much.
It was quite cold  the heating was on.
I’d met her twice before  we’ve known each other a long time.

1. Although  he has a very important job , he isn’t particularly well-paid.
2. ____________________________________________, I recognised her from a photograph.
3. She wasn’t wearing a coat .
4. We thought we’d better invite them to the party .
5. ____________________________________________, I managed to make myself understood.
6. ____________________________________________, the room wasn’t warm.
7. I didn’t recognise her .
8. We’re not very good friends.

113.2 Complete the sentences with although / in spite of / because / because of.

1. Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday .
2. a. ______________________________________ all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
   b. ______________________________________ we’d planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3. a. I went home early  I was feeling unwell.
    b. I went to work the next day  I was still feeling unwell.
4. a. She only accepted the job  the salary, which was very high.
    b. She accepted the job  the salary, which was rather low.
5. a. I managed to get to sleep  there was a lot of noise.
    b. I couldn’t get to sleep  the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

6. a. He passed the exam although ______________________________________.
    b. He passed the exam because ______________________________________.
7. a. I didn’t eat anything although ______________________________________.
    b. I didn’t eat anything in spite of ______________________________________.

113.3 Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1. I couldn’t sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
   I couldn’t sleep despite being very tired.
2. They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)
   In spite
3. My foot was injured. I managed to walk home. (although)

4. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)

5. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)

6. I got very wet in the rain. I was only out for five minutes. (even though)

113.4 Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with though at the end.

1. The house isn’t very nice. (like / garden) __________________________________________________________________________.
2. It’s warm today. (very windy) __________________________________________________________________________.
3. We didn’t like the food. (ate) __________________________________________________________________________.
4. Liz is very nice. (don’t like / husband) __________________________________________________________________________.
In case

Study this example situation:

Your car should have a spare wheel because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Your car should have a spare wheel in case you have a puncture.

*In case* you have a puncture = because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Some more examples of *in case*:

- I'll leave my mobile phone switched on *in case* Jane calls. (= because it is possible she will call)
- I'll draw a map for you *in case* you have problems finding our house. (= because it is possible you will have problems)
- I'll remind them about the meeting *in case* they've forgotten. (= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use *just in case* for a smaller possibility:

- I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella *just in case*. (= *just in case* it rains)

Do not use *will* after *in case*. Use a present tense for the future (see Unit 25):

- I'll leave my phone switched on *in case* Jane calls. (*not* in case Jane will call)

*In case* is not the same as *if*. We use *in case* to say why somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something *now* *in case* something happens *later*.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in case</th>
<th>if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We'll buy some more food <em>in case</em> Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. We'll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not; then we'll already have the food if he comes.)</td>
<td>We'll buy some more food <em>if</em> Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we'll buy some more food; if he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll give you my phone number <em>in case</em> you need to contact me.</td>
<td>You can call me on this number <em>if</em> you need to contact me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should insure your bike <em>in case</em> it is stolen.</td>
<td>You should inform the police <em>if</em> your bike is stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use *in case + past* to say why somebody did something:

- I left my phone switched on *in case* Jane called. (= because it was possible that Jane would call)
- I drew a map for Sarah *in case* she had problems finding the house.
- We rang the doorbell again *in case* they hadn't heard it the first time.

*In case of* is not the same as *in case*. *In case of* ... = *if* there is ... (especially on notices etc.):

- *In case of fire*, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= *if* there is a fire)
- *In case of emergency*, call this number. (= *if* there is an emergency)
Exercises

114.1 Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You think she should take:
- some chocolate  a map  an anorak  a camera  some water

You think she should take these things because:
- it’s possible she’ll get lost
- she might get hungry
- perhaps she’ll be thirsty
- maybe it will rain
- she might want to take some pictures

What do you say to Sophie? Write sentences with in case.
1. Take some chocolate in case you get hungry.
2. Take
3. Take
4. Take
5. Take

114.2 What do you say in these situations? Use in case.
1. It’s possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you agree to give her your phone number.
   You say: I’ll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me
2. A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won’t see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
   You say: I’ll say goodbye now
3. You are shopping in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you forgot something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
   You say: Can you
4. You advise a friend about using a computer. You think he should back up (= copy) his files because maybe there will be a problem with his computer (and he could lose all his data).
   You say: You should back up

114.3 Complete the sentences using in case.
1. There was a possibility that Jane would call. So I left my phone switched on.
   I left my phone switched on in case Jane called
2. I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.
   I wrote down the name of the book
3. I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them.
   I phoned my parents
4. I sent an email to Lisa, but she didn’t reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn’t get the first one.
   I sent her another email
5. I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my phone number.
   I gave them my phone number

114.4 Put in in case or if.
1. I’ll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house.
2. You should tell the police if you have any information about the crime.
3. I hope you’ll come to Australia sometime. If you come, you must visit us.
4. This book belongs to Susan. Can you give it to her if you see her?
5. Write your name and phone number on your bag if you lose it.
6. Go to the lost property office if you lose your bag.
7. The burglar alarm will ring if somebody tries to break into the house.
8. You should lock your bike to something if somebody tries to steal it.
9. I was advised to get insurance if I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 321)
Unless

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.
You can’t go in unless you are a member.

This means:
You can’t go in except if you are a member.
You can go in only if you are a member.

Unless = except if.

Some more examples of unless:
- I’ll see you tomorrow unless I have to work late. (= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. Unless you have a car, it’s difficult to get there.
  (= except if you have a car)
- ‘Shall I tell Liz what happened?’ ‘Not unless she asks you.’ (= only if she asks you)
- Sally hates to complain. She wouldn’t complain about something unless it was really bad.
  (= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant – unless you’d prefer to walk. (= except if you’d prefer to walk)

Instead of unless it is often possible to say if … not:
- Unless we leave now, we’ll be late. or If we don’t leave now, we’ll …

As long as / provided / providing

as long as or so long as
provided (that) or providing (that)  All these expressions mean ‘if’ or ‘on condition that’.

For example:
- You can borrow my car  as long as  you promise not to drive too fast.
  (= you can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast – this is a condition)
- Travelling by car is convenient provided (that) you have somewhere to park.
  (= but only if you have somewhere to park)
- Providing (that) the room is clean, I don’t mind which hotel we stay at.
  (= the room must be clean – otherwise I don’t mind)

Unless / as long as etc. for the future

When you are talking about the future, do not use will after unless / as long as / so long as / provided / providing. Use a present tense (see Unit 25):
- I’m not going out unless it stops raining. (not unless it will stop)
- Providing the weather is good, we’re going to have a picnic tomorrow.
  (not providing the weather will be good)
Exercises

115.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use unless in your sentence.

1 You must try a bit harder or you won’t pass the exam.
   You won’t pass the exam unless you try a bit harder.

2 Listen carefully or you won’t know what to do.
   You won’t know what to do

3 She must apologise to me or I’ll never speak to her again.

4 You have to speak very slowly or he won’t be able to understand you.

5 Business must improve soon or the company will have to close.

115.2 Write sentences with unless.

1 The club isn’t open to everyone. You’re allowed in only if you’re a member.
   You aren’t allowed in the club unless you’re a member.

2 I don’t want to go to the party alone. I’m going only if you go too.
   I’m not going

3 Don’t worry about the dog. It will attack you only if you move suddenly.
   The dog

4 Ben isn’t very talkative. He’ll speak to you only if you ask him something.
   Ben

5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it’s an emergency.
   The doctor

115.3 Which is correct?

1 You can borrow my car unless / as long as you promise not to drive too fast.
   (as long as is correct)

2 I’m playing tennis tomorrow unless / providing it rains.

3 I’m playing tennis tomorrow unless / providing it doesn’t rain.

4 I don’t mind if you come home late unless / as long as you come in quietly.

5 I’m going now unless / provided you want me to stay.

6 I don’t watch TV unless / as long as I’ve got nothing else to do.

7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless / provided they are with an adult.

8 Unless / Provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.

9 We can sit here in the corner unless / as long as you’d rather sit over there by the window.

10 a: Our holiday cost a lot of money.
    b: Did it? Well, that doesn’t matter unless / as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

115.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We’ll be late unless / we get a taxi

2 I like hot weather as long as

3 It takes about 20 minutes to drive to the airport provided

4 I don’t mind walking home as long as

5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless

6 We can meet tomorrow unless

7 I can lend you the money providing

8 You won’t achieve anything unless
As (As I walked along the street … / As I was hungry …)

As = at the same time as

You can use as when two things happen at the same time:

- We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.
- (We waved and she drove away at the same time)
- As I walked along the street, I looked in the shop windows.
- Can you turn off the light as you go out, please?

Or you can say that something happened as you were doing something else (in the middle of doing something else):

- Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.
- We met Paul as we were leaving the hotel.

For the past continuous (was getting / were going etc.), see Unit 6.

You can also use just as (= exactly at that moment):

- Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.
- I had to leave just as the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use as when two things happen together in a longer period of time:

- As the day went on, the weather got worse.
- I began to enjoy the job more as I got used to it.

Compare as and when:

We use as only if two things happen at the same time.

- As I drove home, I listened to music. (= at the same time)

Use when (not as) if one thing happens after another.

- When I got home, I had something to eat. (not As I got home)

As = because

As also means 'because':

- As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat. (= because I was hungry)
- As we have plenty of time before our flight, let’s go and have a coffee.
- We watched TV all evening as we didn’t have anything better to do.
- As I don’t watch television any more, I gave my TV to a friend of mine.

You can also use since in this way:

- Since we have plenty of time, let’s go and have a coffee.

Compare as (= because) and when:

- I couldn’t contact David as he was on holiday. (= because he was on holiday)
- As they lived near us, we used to see them quite often. (= because they lived near us)

- David’s passport was stolen when he was on holiday. (= during the time he was away)
- When they lived near us, we used to see them quite often. (= at the time they lived near us)
Exercises

**116.1 (Section A) Use as to join sentences from the boxes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>We all waved goodbye to Liz.</th>
<th>we were driving along the road</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I listened</td>
<td>I was taking a hot dish out of the oven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I burnt myself</td>
<td>She drove away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The crowd cheered</td>
<td>She told me her story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>A dog ran out in front of the car</td>
<td>The two teams came onto the field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.

**116.2 (Section B) Join sentences from the boxes. Begin each sentence with as.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>I was hungry.</th>
<th>I need some advice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>today is a public holiday</td>
<td>I was very quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I didn’t want to disturb anybody</td>
<td>I decided to find somewhere to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I don’t know what to do</td>
<td>We didn’t know what time it was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>none of us had a watch</td>
<td>Many of the shops are shut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.

**116.3 What does as mean in these sentences?**

1. As they live near us, we see them quite often.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

2. Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

3. As I was tired, I went to bed early.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

4. Unfortunately, as I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

5. As we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

6. We decided to go out to eat as we had no food at home.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

7. As we don’t use the car very often, we’ve decided to sell it.  
   - because |
   - at the same time as |

**116.4 In some of these sentences, you need when (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.**

1. Julia got married as she was 22.  
   - corrected: when she was 22

2. As the day went on, the weather got worse.  
   - corrected: that day

3. He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard.  
   - corrected: when he took it out of the cupboard

4. I lost my phone as I was in London.  
   - corrected: when I was in London

5. As I left school, I didn’t know what to do.  
   - corrected: when I left school

6. The train slowed down as it approached the station.  
   - corrected: when it approached the station

7. I used to live near the sea as I was a child.  
   - corrected: when I was a child

**116.5 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

1. I saw you as

2. It started to rain just as

3. As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi,  
   - corrected: when I didn’t have enough money for a taxi

4. Just as I took the picture,
Like = 'similar to', 'the same as'. You cannot use as in this way:
- What a beautiful house! It's like a palace. (not as a palace)
- 'What does Sandra do?' 'She's a teacher, like me.' (not as me)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's like walking on ice. (not walking)
- It's raining again. I hate weather like this. (not as this)

In these sentences, like is a preposition. So it is followed by a noun (like a palace), a pronoun (like me / like this) or -ing (like walking).

You can also say '... like (somebody/something) doing something':
- 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds like a baby crying.'

Sometimes like = for example:
- I enjoy water sports, like surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing.
You can also use such as (= for example):
- I enjoy water sports, such as surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing.

As = in the same way as, or in the same condition as. We use as before subject + verb:
- I didn't move anything. I left everything as it was.
- You should have done it as I showed you.

We also use like in this way:
- I left everything like it was.

Compare as and like:
- You should have done it as I showed you. or ... like I showed you.
- You should have done it like this. (not as this)

Note that we say as usual / as always:
- You're late as usual.
- As always, Nick was the first to complain.

Sometimes as (+ subject + verb) has other meanings. For example, after do:
- You can do as you like. (= do what you like)
- They did as they promised. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say as you know / as I said / as she expected / as I thought etc.:
- As you know, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with say (like I said):
- As I said yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. or Like I said yesterday ...

As can also be a preposition, but the meaning is different from like.

Compare:
- As a taxi driver, I spend most of my working life in a car.
  (I am a taxi driver, that is my job)
- Everyone wants me to drive them to places. I'm like a taxi driver.
  (I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one)

As (preposition) = in the position of, in the form of etc.:
- Many years ago I worked as a photographer. (not like a photographer)
- Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used as verbs or nouns.
- London is fine as a place to visit, but I wouldn't like to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came as a great shock.
Exercises

117.1 In some of these sentences, you need like (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 It’s raining again. I hate weather like this. 
2 Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. 
3 Do you think Lisa looks as her mother? 
4 Tim gets on my nerves. I can’t stand people as him. 
5 Why didn’t you do it as I told you to do it? 
6 Brian is a student, as most of his friends. 
7 You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall. 
8 As I said before, I’m thinking of changing my job. 
9 Tom’s idea seems a good one. Let’s do as he suggests. 
10 I’ll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK? 
11 Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was as a bomb exploding. 
12 She’s a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish.

117.2 Complete the sentences using like or as + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a beginner</th>
<th>blocks of ice</th>
<th>a palace</th>
<th>a birthday present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a child</td>
<td>a theatre</td>
<td>winter</td>
<td>a tour guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This house is beautiful. It’s like a palace.
2 My feet are really cold. They’re
3 I’ve been playing tennis for years, but I still play
4 Marion once had a part-time job
5 I wonder what that building is. It looks
6 My brother gave me this watch a long time ago.
7 It’s very cold for the middle of summer. It’s
8 He’s 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves

117.3 Put in like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.

1 We heard a noise like a baby crying.
2 Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak you.
3 Don’t take my advice if you don’t want to. You can do you like.
4 You waste too much time doing things sitting in cafes all day.
5 I wish I had a car yours.
6 You don’t need to change clothes. You can go out you are.
7 My neighbour’s house is full of interesting things. It’s a museum.
8 We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, always.
9 Sally has been working a waitress for the last two months.
10 In several countries in Asia, Japan, Indonesia and Thailand, traffic drives on the left.
11 You’re different from the other people I know. I don’t know anyone else you.
12 We don’t need all the bedrooms in the house, so we use one of them a study.
13 The news that Sarah and Gary were getting married came a complete surprise to me.
14 her father, Catherine has a very good voice.
15 At the moment I’ve got a temporary job in a bookshop. It’s not great, but it’s OK a temporary job.
16 you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.
17 This tea is awful. It tastes water.
18 I think I prefer this room it was, before we decorated it.
Like / as if / as though

You can use like to say how somebody or something looks/sounds/feels:
- That house looks like it’s going to fall down.
- Helen sounded like she had a cold, didn’t she?
- I’ve just got back from holiday, but I feel very tired. I don’t feel like I’ve had a holiday.

You can also use as if or as though in all these examples:
- That house looks as if it’s going to fall down.
- Helen sounded as if she had a cold, didn’t she?
- I don’t feel as though I’ve had a holiday.

Compare:
- You look tired. (look + adjective)
- You look like you haven’t slept. (look like + subject + verb)

As if and as though are more formal than like.

You can say It looks like … / It sounds like …:
- Sarah is very late, isn’t she? It looks like she isn’t coming.
- We took an umbrella because it looked like it was going to rain.
- The noise is very loud next door. It sounds like they’re having a party.

You can also use as if or as though:
- It looks as if she isn’t coming. or
- It looks as though she isn’t coming.
- It looked as if it was going to rain.
- It sounds as though they’re having a party.

You can use like / as if / as though with other verbs to say how somebody does something:
- He ran like he was running for his life.
- After the interruption, the speaker went on talking as if nothing had happened.
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me as though I was mad.

After as if (or as though), we sometimes use the past when we are talking about the present.
For example:
- I don’t like Tim. He talks as if he knew everything.

The meaning is not past in this sentence. We use the past (as if he knew) because the idea is not real: Tim does not know everything. We use the past in the same way in other sentences with if and wish (see Unit 39).
Like is not normally used in this way.

Some more examples:
- She’s always asking me to do things for her – as if I didn’t have enough to do already.
  (I do have enough to do)
- Gary’s only 40. Why do you talk about him as if he was an old man? (he isn’t an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use were instead of was:
- Why do you talk about him as if he were (or was) an old man?
- They treat me as if I were (or was) their own son. (I’m not their son)
Exercises

118.1 What do you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.
1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and some plasters on his face. (look / like / be / a fight)
   You say to him: You look like you’ve been in a fight.
2 Claire comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (look / like / see / a ghost)
   You say to her: What’s the matter? You
3 Joe is on holiday. He’s talking to you on the phone and sounds happy. (sound / as if / have / a
good time)
   You say to him: You
4 You have just run one kilometre. You are absolutely exhausted. (feel / like / run / a marathon)
   You say to a friend: I

118.2 Make sentences beginning It looks like … / It sounds like … .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It looks like…</th>
<th>It sounds like…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you should see a doctor</td>
<td>there’s been an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s going to rain</td>
<td>she isn’t coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they’re having an argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we’ll have to walk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.
   You say: It looks like she isn’t coming.
2 The sky is full of black clouds.
   You say: It
3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.
   You say: _____________________________
4 You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.
   You say: _____________________________
5 You and a friend have just missed the last bus home.
   You say: _____________________________
6 Dave isn’t feeling well. He tells you all about it.
   You say: _____________________________

118.3 Complete the sentences with as if. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>as if</th>
<th>as if</th>
<th>as if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she / enjoy / it</td>
<td>I / go / be sick</td>
<td>he / not / eat / for a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he / need / a good rest</td>
<td>she / hurt / her leg</td>
<td>he / mean / what he / say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / not / exist</td>
<td>she / not / want / come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Mark looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest.
2 I don’t think Paul was joking. He looked
3 What’s the matter with Amanda? She’s walking
4 Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
   He ate
5 Tanya had a bored expression on her face during the movie.
   She didn’t look
6 I’ve just eaten too many chocolates. Now I don’t feel well.
   I feel
7 I phoned Liz and invited her to the party, but she wasn’t very enthusiastic about it.
   She sounded
8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.
   Everybody ignored me

118.4 These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using as if.

1 Andy is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.
2 I’m 20 years old, so please don’t talk to me as if I were a child.
3 Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her as if he were her best friend.
4 It was a long time ago that we first met, but I remember it as if it were yesterday.
For, during and while

For and during

We use for + a period of time to say how long something goes on:

for two hours    for a week    for ages

☐ We watched TV for two hours last night.
☐ Jess is going away for a week in September.
☐ Where have you been? I've been waiting for ages.
☐ Are you going away for the weekend?

We use during + noun to say when something happens (not how long):

during the movie    during our holiday    during the night

☐ I fell asleep during the movie.
☐ We met some really nice people during our holiday.
☐ The ground is wet. It must have rained during the night.

With ‘time words’ (for example: the morning / the afternoon / the summer), you can usually say in or during:

☐ It must have rained in the night. or ... during the night.
☐ I’ll phone you sometime during the afternoon. or ... in the afternoon.

You cannot use during to say how long something goes on:

☐ It rained for three days without stopping. (not during three days)

Compare during and for:

☐ I fell asleep during the movie. I was asleep for half an hour.

During and while

Compare:

We use during + noun:

☐ I fell asleep during the movie.
☐ We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
☐ Robert suddenly began to feel ill during the exam.

We use while + subject + verb:

☐ I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
☐ We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.
☐ Robert suddenly began to feel ill while he was doing the exam.

Some more examples of while:

☐ We saw Clare while we were waiting for the bus.
☐ While you were out, there was a phone call for you.
☐ Alex read a book while I watched TV.

When you are talking about the future, use the present (not will) after while:

☐ I'm going to Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm there. (not while I will be there)
☐ What are you going to do while you're waiting? (not while you'll be waiting)

See also Unit 25.
Exercises

119.1 Put in for or during.
1. It rained __for__ three days without stopping.
2. I fell asleep __during__ the movie.
3. I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue __during__ the interval.
4. Martin hasn’t lived in Britain all his life. He lived in Brazil __for__ four years.
5. Production at the factory was seriously affected __during__ the strike.
6. I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything __for__ three days.
7. I waited for you __for__ half an hour and decided that you weren’t coming.
8. Sarah was very angry with me. She didn’t speak to me __for__ a week.
9. We usually go out at weekends, but we don’t go out __for__ the week very often.
10. Jack started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work __for__ six months.
11. I need a break. I think I’ll go away __for__ a few days.
12. The president gave a long speech. She spoke __for__ two hours.
13. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat __for__ the journey.
14. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat __for__ eight hours.

119.2 Put in during or while.
1. We met a lot of interesting people __while__ we were on holiday.
2. We met a lot of interesting people __during__ our holiday.
3. I met Mike __while__ I was shopping.
4. __During__ I was on holiday, I didn’t read any newspapers or watch TV.
5. __During__ our stay in Paris, we went to a lot of museums and galleries.
6. My phone rang __while__ we were having dinner.
7. There was a lot of noise __during__ the night. What was it?
8. I’d been away for many years. __During__ that time, many things had changed.
9. What did they say about me __while__ I was out of the room?
10. I went out for dinner last night. Unfortunately I began to feel ill __while__ the meal and had to go home.
11. Please don’t interrupt me __while__ I’m speaking.
12. There were many interruptions __while__ the president’s speech.
13. Can you hold my bag __while__ I try on this jacket?
14. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat __during__ we were travelling.

119.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1. I fell asleep __while__ I was watching TV.
2. I fell asleep __during__ the movie.
3. Nobody came to see me __while__
4. Can you wait for me __while__
5. Most of the students looked bored __during__
6. I was asked a lot of questions __during__
7. Don’t open the car door __while__
8. The lights suddenly went out __while__
9. It started to rain __during__
10. It started to rain __while__
11. What are you going to do __while__

→ Additional exercise 33 (page 321)
By and until

By ... = not later than:

☐ I sent the documents to them today, so they should receive them by Monday. (= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)

☐ We’d better hurry. We have to be home by 5 o’clock. (= at or before 5 o’clock, not later than 5 o’clock)

☐ Where’s Sarah? She should be here by now. (= now or before now – so she should have already arrived)

We use until (or till) to say how long a situation continues:

☐ ‘Shall we go now?’ ‘No, let’s wait until it stops raining.’ or ‘... till it stops raining.’

☐ I couldn’t get up this morning. [I stayed in bed until half past ten.]

☐ I didn’t get up until half past ten.

Compare until and by:

Something continues until a time in the future:

☐ Joe will be away until Monday. (so he’ll be back on Monday)

☐ I’ll be working until 11.30. (so I’ll stop working at 11.30)

Something happens by a time in the future:

☐ Joe will be back by Monday. (= he’ll be back not later than Monday)

☐ I’ll have finished my work by 11.30. (= I’ll finish my work not later than 11.30.)

You can say ‘by the time something happens’. Study these examples:

☐ It’s too late to go to the bank now. By the time we get there, it will be closed. (= the bank will close between now and the time we get there)

☐ (from a postcard) Our holiday ends tomorrow. So by the time you receive this postcard, I’ll be back home. (= I will arrive home between tomorrow and the time you receive this postcard)

☐ Hurry up! By the time we get to the cinema, the film will already have started.

You can say ‘by the time something happened’ (for the past):

☐ Karen’s car broke down on the way to the party last night. By the time she arrived, most of the other guests had left. (= it took her a long time to get to the party and most of the guests left during this time)

☐ I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired by the time I finished. (= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired during this time)

☐ We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car. By the time we got to the cinema, the film had already started.

Also by then or by that time:

☐ Karen finally got to the party at midnight, but by then, most of the other guests had left. or ... but by that time, most of the other guests had left.
Exercises

120.1 Complete the sentences with by.
1. We have to be home not later than 5 o'clock.
   We have to be home _______ 5 o'clock.
2. I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30.
   I have to be at the airport _______.
3. Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
   _______ whether you can come to the party.
4. Please make sure that you're here not later than 2 o'clock.
   Please make sure that _______.
5. If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime.
   If we leave now, _______.

120.2 Put in by or until.
1. Steve has gone away. He'll be away _______ until Monday.
2. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home _______ 5 o'clock.
3. I've been offered a job. I haven't decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decide _______ Friday.
4. I think I'll wait _______ Thursday before making a decision.
5. It's too late to go shopping. The shops are open only _______ 5.30 today. They'll be closed _______ now.
6. I need to pay the phone bill. It has to be paid _______ tomorrow.
7. Don't pay the bill today. Wait _______ tomorrow.
8. A: Have you finished redecorating your house?
   B: Not yet. We hope to finish _______ the end of the week.
9. A: I'm going out now. I'll be back at about 10.30. Will you still be here?
   B: I don't think so. I'll probably have gone _______ then.
10. I'm moving into my new flat next week. I'm staying with a friend _______ then.
11. I've got a lot of work to do. _______ the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
12. If you want to take part in the competition, you have to apply _______ 3 April.

120.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use by or until.
1. David is away at the moment. He'll be away _______ Monday.
2. David is away at the moment. He'll be back _______ Monday.
3. I'm just going out. I won't be very long. Wait here _______.
4. I'm going out to buy a few things. It's 4.30 now. I won't be long. I'll be back _______.
5. If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received _______.
6. Last night I watched TV _______.

120.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using By the time _______.
1. I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.
   _______, most of the other guests had left.
2. I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
   _______, my train had already left.
3. I wanted to go shopping after finishing my work. But I finished much later than expected.
   _______, it was too late to go shopping.
4. I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was some time before they arrived.
   _______, the two men had disappeared.
5. We climbed a mountain and it took us a very long time to get to the top. There wasn't much time to enjoy the view.
   _______, we had to come down again.
Compare **at**, **on** and **in**:
- They arrived **at** 5 o’clock.
- They arrived **on** Friday.
- They arrived **in** October. / They arrived **in** 1998.

We use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>at</strong> for the time of day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at five o’clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>on</strong> for days and dates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on Friday / on Fridays</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>in</strong> for longer periods (for example: months/years/seasons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in (the) winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use **at** in these expressions:
- **at night**
- **at the weekend / at weekends**
- **at Christmas**
- **at the moment / at present**
- **at the same time**

We say:
- I’ll see you **in** the morning.
- Do you work **in** the evenings?
- I’ll see you **on** Friday morning(s).
- I’ll see you **on** Friday.
- Do you work **on** Saturday evenings?

We do not use **at/on/in** before **last/next/this/every**:
- I’ll see you **next Friday**.  (not on next Friday)
- They got married **last March**.

In spoken English we often leave out **on** before days (**Sunday/Monday** etc.). So you can say:
- I’ll see you **on Friday**. or I’ll see you **Friday**.
- I don’t work **on Monday mornings**. or I don’t work **Monday mornings**.

**In a few minutes / in six months** etc.
- The train will be leaving **in a few minutes**. (= a few minutes from now)
- Andy has gone away. He’ll be back **in a week**. (= a week from now)
- They’ll be here **in a moment**. (= a moment from now)

You can also say: **in six months’ time**, in a week’s **time** etc.
- They’re getting married **in six months’ time**. or ... **in six months**.

We also use **in ...** to say how long it takes to do something:
- I learnt to drive **in four weeks**. (= it took me four weeks to learn)
Exercises

121.1 Put in at, on or in.
1 Mozart was born in Salzburg in 1756.
2 I've been invited to a wedding on 14 February.
3 Electricity prices are going up in October.
4 ... weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.
5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her on Tuesday.
6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job in two years' time.
7 I'm busy right now, but I'll be with you in a moment.
8 My brother is an engineer, but he doesn't have a job at the moment.
9 There are usually a lot of parties on New Year's Eve.
10 I don't like driving at night.
11 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready in two hours.
12 My phone and the doorbell rang at the same time.
13 Mary and David always go out for dinner on their wedding anniversary.
14 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it in a day.
15 ... Saturday night I went to bed at midnight.
16 We travelled overnight and arrived at 5 o'clock in the morning.
17 The course begins at 7 January and ends sometime in April.
18 I might not be at home on Tuesday morning, but I'll be there in the afternoon.

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use at, on or in + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the evening</th>
<th>about 20 minutes</th>
<th>-1492</th>
<th>the Middle Ages</th>
<th>the same time</th>
<th>night</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the moment</td>
<td>21 July 1969</td>
<td>1492</td>
<td>the 1920s</td>
<td>11 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Columbus made his first voyage from Europe to America in 1492.
2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars.
3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax.
4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon.
5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking.
6 Jazz became popular in the United States.
7 I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back.
8 'Can I speak to Dan?' 'I'm afraid he's busy.'
9 Many of Europe's great cathedrals were built.
10 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres.
11 Liz works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works.

121.3 Which is correct: a, b, or both of them?

1 a I'll see you on Friday. b I'll see you Friday. ___ both
2 a I'll see you on next Friday. b I'll see you next Friday. ___ b
3 a Paul got married in April. b Paul got married April. ___
4 a They never go out on Sunday evenings. b They never go out Sunday evenings. ___
5 a We often have a short holiday on Christmas. b We often have a short holiday at Christmas. ___
6 a What are you doing the weekend? b What are you doing at the weekend? ___
7 a Will you be here on Tuesday? b Will you be here Tuesday? ___
8 a We were ill at the same time. b We were ill in the same time. ___
9 a Sue got married at 18 May 2008. b Sue got married on 18 May 2008. ___
10 a He left school last June. b He left school in last June. ___

Additional exercise 33 (page 321)
On time and in time

On time = punctual, not late. If something happens on time, it happens at the time that was planned:
- The 11.45 train left on time. (= it left at 11.45)
- 'I'll meet you at 7.30.' ‘OK, but please be on time.’ (= don’t be late, be there at 7.30)
- The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished on time.

The opposite of on time is late:
- Be on time. Don’t be late.

In time (for something / to do something) = soon enough:
- Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I’ve sent Tracey a birthday present. I hope it arrives in time (for her birthday).
  (= on or before her birthday)
- I’m in a hurry. I want to get home in time to see the game on TV.
  (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of in time is too late:
- I got home too late to see the game on TV.

You can say just in time (= almost too late):
- We got to the station just in time for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car – I managed to stop just in time.

At the end and in the end

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends. For example:

- at the end of the month    at the end of January    at the end of the game
- at the end of the film     at the end of the course  at the end of the concert

- I’m going away at the end of January / at the end of the month.
- At the end of the concert, everyone applauded.
- The players shook hands at the end of the game.

We do not say ‘in the end of …’. So you cannot say ‘in the end of January’ or ‘in the end of the concert’.

The opposite of at the end (of …) is at the beginning (of …):
- I’m going away at the beginning of January. (not in the beginning)

In the end = finally.

We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was:
- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it in the end. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. In the end he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn’t decide where to go for his holidays. He didn’t go anywhere in the end.
  (not at the end)

The opposite of in the end is usually at first:
- At first we didn’t get on very well, but in the end we became good friends.
Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with on time or in time.
1. The bus was late this morning, but it's usually ______ on time ______.
2. The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin ____________.
3. I like to get up ____________________ to have a big breakfast before going to work.
4. We want to start the meeting ____________________, so please don’t be late.
5. I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry _______.
6. The train service isn’t very good. The trains are rarely ______________.
7. I nearly missed my flight this morning. I got to the airport just _______.
8. I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered ________________.
9. Why are you never ___________? You always keep everybody waiting.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using just in time.
1. A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment. (manage / stop) ____________________
2. You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily. (get / home) ____________________
3. Tim was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!', so he didn't. (stop / him) ____________________
4. You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema. (get / cinema / beginning / film) ____________________

122.3 Complete the sentences using at the end + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the course</th>
<th>the game</th>
<th>the interview</th>
<th>the month</th>
<th>the race</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. The players shook hands ______ at the end of the game ______.
2. I usually get paid ______.
3. The students had a party ______.
4. Two of the runners collapsed ______.
5. To my surprise, I was offered the job ______.

122.4 Write sentences with In the end. Use the verb in brackets.
1. We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) ______.
2. Anna got more and more fed up with her job. (resign) ______.
3. I tried to learn German, but I found it too difficult. (give up) ______.
4. We couldn’t decide whether to go to the party or not. (not / go) ______.

122.5 Put in at or in.
1. I'm going away ______ at the end of the month ______.
2. It took me a long time to find a job. ______ the end I got a job in a hotel ______.
3. Are you going away ______ the beginning of August or ______ the end ______ of August _______? ______
4. I couldn’t decide what to buy Laura for her birthday. I didn’t buy her anything ______ the end ______.
5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up ______ the end and walked home ______.
6. I’ll be moving to a new address ______ the end of September ______.
7. We had a few problems at first, but ______ the end everything was OK ______.
8. I’m going away ______ the end of this week ______.
9. A: I didn’t know what to do ______.
   B: Yes, you were in a difficult position. What did you do ______ the end ______.
### In

- in a room
- in a building
- in a box
- in a garden
- in a town/country
- in the city centre
- in a pool
- in the sea
- in a river

- There's no-one in the room / in the building / in the garden.
- What have you got in your hand / in your mouth?
- When we were in Italy, we spent a few days in Venice.
- I have a friend who lives in a small village in the mountains.
- There were some people swimming in the pool / in the sea / in the river.

### At

- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the roundabout
- at reception

- Who is that man standing at the bus stop / at the door / at the window?
- Turn left at the traffic lights / at the church / at the roundabout / at the junction.
- We have to get off the bus at the next stop.
- When you leave the hotel, please leave your key at reception. (= at the reception desk)

### On

- on the ceiling
- on the door
- on the floor
- on the wall
- on the table
- on her nose
- on a page
- on an island

- I sat on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair.
- There's a dirty mark on the wall / on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt.
- Have you seen the notice on the notice board / on the door?
- You'll find details of TV programmes on page seven (of the newspaper).
- The hotel is on a small island in the middle of a lake.

### Compare in and at:

- There were a lot of people in the shop. It was very crowded.
  - Go along this road, then turn left at the shop.
- I'll meet you in the hotel lobby.
  - I'll meet you at the entrance to the hotel.

### Compare in and on:

- There is some water in the bottle.
  - There is a label on the bottle.

### Compare at and on:

- There is somebody at the door. Shall I go and see who it is?
  - There is a notice on the door. It says 'Do not disturb.'
Exercises

123.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 Where’s the label? **On the bottle.**
2 Where’s the fly? ..................................................
3 Where is the car waiting? ..................................
4 a Where’s the notice? ......................................
   b Where’s the key? ...........................................
5 Where are the shelves? ....................................
6 Where’s the Eiffel Tower? ................................
7 a Where’s the man standing? ............................
   b Where’s the bird? .........................................
8 Where are the children playing? .........................

123.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the window</th>
<th>your coffee</th>
<th>the mountains</th>
<th>that tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my guitar</td>
<td>the river</td>
<td>the island</td>
<td>the next petrol station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Look at those people swimming **in the river**.
2 One of the strings **is** broken.
3 There’s something wrong with the car. We’d better stop **here**.
4 Would you like sugar **in** that cup? ........................
5 The leaves **are** a beautiful colour.
6 Last year we had a wonderful skiing holiday **in** Paris. ...
7 There’s nobody living **inside**. It’s uninhabited. ...
8 He spends most of the day sitting **on** the beach and looking outside.

123.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 There was a long queue of people **at** the bus stop.
2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring **on** her little finger.
3 There was an accident **at** the crossroads this morning.
4 I wasn’t sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name **on** the door.
5 There are some beautiful trees **in** the park.
6 You’ll find the sports results **in** the back page of the newspaper.
7 I wouldn’t like an office job. I couldn’t spend the whole day sitting **in** a computer.
8 My brother lives **in** a small village **in** the south-west of England.
9 The man the police are looking for has a scar **on** his right cheek.
10 The headquarters of the company are **in** Milan.
11 I like that picture hanging **on** the wall **in** the kitchen.
12 If you come here by bus, get off **at** the stop after the traffic lights.
**In/at/on (position) 2**

We say that somebody/something is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in a line / in a row / in a queue</th>
<th>in bed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in the sky / in the world</td>
<td>in the country / in the countryside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in an office / in a department</td>
<td>in a picture / in a photo / in a photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a book / in a paper (= newspaper)</td>
<td>in a magazine / in a letter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When I go to the cinema, I like to sit **in the front row**.
- James isn’t up yet. He’s still **in bed**.
- It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud **in the sky**.
- I’ve just started working **in the sales department**.
- Who is the woman **in that photo**?
- Have you seen this picture **in today’s paper**?

**on the left / on the right / on the left-hand side / on the right-hand side**

- on the ground floor / on the first floor / on the second floor etc.
- on a map / on a menu / on a list
- on a farm

- In Britain we drive **on the left**. or ... **on the left-hand side**.
- Our apartment is **on the second floor** of the building.
- Here’s a shopping list. Don’t buy anything that’s not **on the list**.
- Have you ever worked **on a farm**?

We say that a place is **on a river / on a road / on the coast**:

- Budapest is **on the (river) Danube**.
- The town where you live - is it **on the coast** or inland?

**Also on the way**:

- We stopped to buy some things in a shop **on the way** home.

**at the top (of) / at the bottom (of) / at the end (of)**

- Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- Jane’s house is **at the other end of the street**.

**in the front / in the back of a car**

- I was sitting **in the back** (of the car) when we crashed.

**at the front / at the back of a building / theatre / group of people etc.**

- The garden is **at the back of the house**.
- Let’s sit **at the front** (of the cinema).
- We were **at the back**, so we couldn’t see very well.

**on the front / on the back of a letter / piece of paper etc.**

- I wrote the date **on the back of the photo**.

**in the corner of a room**

- The TV is **in the corner** of the room.

**at the corner or on the corner of a street**

- There is a small shop **at/on the corner** of the street.
1 Exercises

124.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 Where does Sue work? ___________{ sales department}

2 Sue lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly? ____________________________

3 Where is the woman standing? ____________________________

4 Where is the man standing? ____________________________

5 Where's the cat? ____________________________

6 Where's the dog? ____________________________

7 Liz is in this group of people. Where is she? ____________________________

8 Where's the post office? ____________________________

9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting? ____________________________

10 Where does Kate work? ____________________________

124.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

the west coast / the world / the back of the class / the sky / the way to work

the front row / the right / the back of this card

1 It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud ___________{ sky }

2 In most countries people drive ____________________________

3 What is the tallest building? ____________________________

4 I usually buy a newspaper ___________{ morning} in the morning.

5 San Francisco is ___________{ United States} of the United States.

6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats ____________________________

7 I couldn’t hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting ____________________________

8 I don’t have your address. Could you write it? ____________________________

124.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 Write your name ___________{ the top of the page}.

2 Is your sister ___________{ this photograph}? I don’t recognise her.

3 I didn’t feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed ___________{ bed}.

4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there’s another one ___________{ the back}.

5 Is there anything interesting ___________{ the paper} today?

6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn’t ___________{ the list}.

7 ___________{ the end of the street}, there is a path leading to the river.

8 I love to look up at the stars ___________{ the sky} at night.

9 When I’m a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit ___________{ the front}.

10 I live in a very small village. You probably won’t find it ___________{ your map}.

11 Joe works ___________{ the furniture department} of a large store.

12 Paris is ___________{ the river Seine}.

13 I don’t like cities. I’d much prefer to live ___________{ the country}.

14 My office is ___________{ the top floor}. It’s ___________{ the left} as you come out of the lift.

→ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)
In hospital / at work etc.

We say that somebody is in hospital / in prison / in jail:
- Anna’s mother is in hospital.

We say that somebody is at work / at school / at university / at college:
- I’ll be at work until 5.30.
- Julia is studying chemistry at university.

We say that somebody is at home or is home (with or without at), but we say do something at home (with at):
- I’ll be at home all evening. or I’ll be home all evening.
- Shall we go to a restaurant or eat at home?

At a party / at a concert etc.

We say that somebody is at an event (at a party / at a conference etc.):
- Were there many people at the party / at the meeting / at the wedding?
- I saw Steve at a conference / at a concert on Saturday.

In and at for buildings

You can often use in or at with buildings. For example, you can eat in a restaurant or at a restaurant; you can buy something in a supermarket or at a supermarket. We usually say at when we say where an event takes place (for example: a concert, a film, a party, a meeting):
- We went to a concert at the National Concert Hall.
- The meeting took place at the company’s head office in Frankfurt.
- There was a robbery at the supermarket.

We say at the station / at the airport:
- There’s no need to meet me at the station. I can get a taxi.

We say at somebody’s house:
- I was at Helen’s house last night. or I was at Helen’s last night.

Also at the doctor’s / at the hairdresser’s etc.

We use in when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare:
- We had dinner at the hotel.
  All the rooms in the hotel have air conditioning. (not at the hotel)
- I was at Helen’s house last night.
  It’s always cold in Helen’s house. The heating doesn’t work well. (not at Helen’s house)

In and at for towns etc.

We normally use in with cities, towns and villages:
- The Louvre is a famous art museum in Paris. (not at Paris)
- Sam’s parents live in a village in the south of France. (not at a village)

We use at when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey:
- Does this train stop at Oxford? (= at Oxford station)

On a bus / in a car etc.

We usually say on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship but in a car / in a taxi:
- The bus was very full. There were too many people on it.
- Laura arrived in a taxi.

We say on a bike (= bicycle) / on a motorbike / on a horse:
- Jane passed me on her bike.
Exercises

125.1 Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 You can hire a car ___________________________.
   2 Dave is ___________________________.
   3 Karen is ___________________________.
   4 Martin is ___________________________.
   5 Judy is ___________________________.
   6 I saw Gary ___________________________.
   7 We spent a few days ___________________________.
   8 We went to a show ___________________________.

125.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the plane</th>
<th>hospital</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>the station</th>
<th>the cinema</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>prison</td>
<td>the airport</td>
<td>the sports centre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me ___________________________.
2 We walked to the restaurant, but we went home ___________________________.
3 I’d like to see a film. What’s on ___________________________ this week?
4 Some people are ___________________________ for crimes that they did not commit.
5 ‘What does your sister do? Does she have a job?’ ‘No, she’s still ___________________________.’
6 I play basketball ___________________________ on Friday evenings.
7 A friend of mine was injured in an accident a few days ago. She’s still ___________________________.
8 Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ___________________________ for four hours.
9 I enjoyed the flight, but the food ___________________________ wasn’t very nice.
10 Vicky has gone to Japan. She’s living ___________________________.

125.3 Complete these sentences with in, at or on.

1 We went to a concert ___________________________ the National Concert Hall.
2 It was a very slow train. It stopped ___________________________ every station.
3 My parents live ___________________________ a small village about 50 miles from London.
4 I haven’t seen Kate for some time. I last saw her ___________________________ David’s wedding.
5 We stayed ___________________________ a very comfortable hotel when we were ___________________________ Amsterdam.
6 There were about fifty rooms ___________________________ the hotel.
7 I don’t know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it ___________________________ the bus.
8 ‘Where were you on Monday evening?’ ‘I was ___________________________ a friend’s house.’
9 There must be somebody ___________________________ the house. The lights are on.
10 The exhibition ___________________________ the Museum of Modern Art finishes on Saturday.
11 Shall we travel ___________________________ your car or mine?
12 I didn’t expect you to be ___________________________ home. I thought you’d be ___________________________ work.
13 ‘Did you like the movie?’ ‘Yes, but it was too hot ___________________________ the cinema.’
14 Paul lives ___________________________ Birmingham. He’s a student ___________________________ Birmingham University.

Additional exercise 34 (page 322)
To/at/in/into

We say go/come/travel (etc.) to a place or event. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go to</th>
<th>go back to</th>
<th>return to</th>
<th>welcome somebody to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to bed</td>
<td>go to the bank</td>
<td>go to a concert</td>
<td>somebody to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to my house</td>
<td>be taken to hospital</td>
<td>be sent to prison</td>
<td>drive to the airport</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When are your friends going back to Italy? (not going back in Italy)
- Three people were injured in the accident and taken to hospital.
- Welcome to our country! (not Welcome in)

In the same way we say ‘a journey to / a trip to / a visit to / on my way to ...’ etc.:

- Did you enjoy your trip to Paris / your visit to the zoo?

Compare to (for movement) and in/at (for position):

- They are going to France. but They live in France.
- Can you come to the party? but I’ll see you at the party.

We say been to a place or an event:

- I’ve been to Italy four times, but I’ve never been to Rome.
- Amanda has never been to a football match in her life.

Get and arrive

We say get to a place:

- What time did they get to London / to work / to the hotel?

But we say arrive in ... or arrive at ... (not arrive to).

We say arrive in a town, city or country:

- They arrived in London / in Spain a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say arrive at:

- When did they arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party?

Home

We say go home / come home / get home / arrive home / on the way home etc. (no preposition).

We do not say ‘to home’:

- I’m tired. Let’s go home now. (not go to home)
- I met Lisa on my way home. (not my way to home)

Into

Go into, get into ... etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):

- I opened the door, went into the room and sat down.
- A bird flew into the kitchen through the window.
- Every month, my salary is paid directly into my bank account.

With some verbs (especially go/get/put) we often use in (instead of into):

- She got in the car and drove away. (or She got into the car ...)
- I read the letter and put it back in the envelope.

The opposite of into is out of:

- She got out of the car and went into a shop.

We usually say ‘get on/off’ a bus / a train / a plane’ (not usually into/out of):

- She got on the bus and I never saw her again.
Exercises

126.1 Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 Three people were taken _______ hospital after the accident.
2 I met Kate on my way _______ home. (no preposition)
3 We left our luggage _______ the station and went to find something to eat.
4 Shall we take a taxi _______ the station or shall we walk?
5 I have to go _______ the bank today. What time does it open?
6 The Amazon flows _______ the Atlantic Ocean.
7 ‘Do you have your camera with you?’ ‘No, I left _______ the car.’
8 Have you ever been _______ China?
9 I had lost my key, but I managed to climb _______ the house through a window.
10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way _______ the airport.
11 We had lunch _______ the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12 Welcome _______ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
13 We drove along the main road for about a kilometre and then turned _______ a narrow side street.
14 Did you enjoy your visit _______ the museum?
15 I’m tired. As soon as I get _______ home, I’m going _______ bed.
16 Marcel is French. He has just returned _______ France after two years _______ Brazil.
17 Carl was born _______ Chicago, but his family moved _______ New York when he was three.
   He still lives _______ New York.

126.2 Have you been to these places? If so, how many times? Choose three of the places and write a sentence using been to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Athens</th>
<th>Rome</th>
<th>Australia</th>
<th>Hong Kong</th>
<th>Mexico</th>
<th>Paris</th>
<th>the United States</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(example answers)</td>
<td>I’ve never been to Australia. / I’ve been to Mexico once.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

126.3 Put in to/at/in where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 What time does this train get _______ London?
2 We arrived _______ Barcelona a few days ago.
3 What time did you get _______ home last night?
4 What time do you usually arrive _______ work in the morning?
5 When we got _______ the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
6 I arrived _______ home feeling very tired.

126.4 Write sentences using got + into / out of / on / off.

1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I got into _______.
2 You were waiting for the bus. At last your bus came. The doors opened. What did you do then?
   I got _______ the bus.
3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then?
4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got _______ Manchester, what did you do?
5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?
6 You were travelling by air. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?
In/on/at (other uses)

In

in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather etc.
- We sat in the shade. It was too hot to sit in the sun.
- Don't go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.

(write) in ink / in pen / in pencil
- When you do the exam, you're not allowed to write in pencil.

Also (write) in words / in figures / in capital letters etc.
- Please write your name in capital letters.
- Write the story in your own words. (= don't copy somebody else)

(be/fall) in love (with somebody)
- They're very happy together. They're in love.

in (my) opinion
- In my opinion, the movie wasn't very good.

On

on TV / on television / on the radio
- I didn't watch the news on television, but I heard it on the radio.

on the phone
- I've never met her, but I've spoken to her on the phone a few times.

(be/go) on strike
- There are no trains today. The drivers are on strike.

(be/go) on a diet
- I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet.

(be) on fire
- Look! That car is on fire.

on the whole (= in general)
- Sometimes I have problems at work, but on the whole I enjoy my job.

on purpose (= intentionally)
- I'm sorry. I didn't mean to annoy you. I didn't do it on purpose.

On holiday / on a trip etc.

We say: (be/go) on holiday / on business / on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise etc.
- I'm going on holiday next week.
- Emma's away on business at the moment.
- One day I'd like to go on a world tour.

You can also say 'go to a place for a holiday / for my holiday(s)'
- Steve has gone to France for a holiday.

At the age of ... etc.

We say at the age of 16 / at 120 miles an hour / at 100 degrees etc.
- Tracy left school at 16. or ... at the age of 16.
- The train was travelling at 120 miles an hour.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
### Exercises

#### 127.1

Complete the sentences using in + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capital letters</th>
<th>cold weather</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>my opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>the rain</td>
<td>the shade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don’t go out **in the rain**. Wait until it stops.
2. Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn’t go out much **cold weather**
3. If you write **the rain** and make a mistake, you can rub it out and correct it.
4. They fell **the shade** almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
5. Please write your address clearly, preferably **love**
6. It’s too hot in the sun. I’m going to sit **my opinion**.
7. Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but **in** it wasn’t very good.

#### 127.2

Complete the sentences using **on** + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>business</th>
<th>a diet</th>
<th>fire</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>the phone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>strike</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>a tour</td>
<td>the whole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Look! That car is **on fire**! Someone call the fire brigade.
2. Workers at the factory have gone **fire** for better pay and conditions.
3. Soon after we arrived, we were taken **holiday** of the city.
4. I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching **business**?
5. I’m angry. I didn’t do it **on**
6. Richard has put on a lot of weight recently. I think he should go **a diet**
7. Jane’s job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away **on**
8. **Where are you going?** Somewhere nice?
9. **Is Sarah here?**
   a: Yes, but she’s **on** the moment. She won’t be long.
10. **How was your exam?**
    a: Well, there were some difficult questions, but **on** it was OK.

#### 127.3

Complete the sentences with **in**, **on** or **at**.

1. Water boils **at** 100 degrees Celsius.
2. When I was 14, I went **in** a trip to France organised by my school.
3. There was panic when people realised that the building was **at** fire.
4. Julia’s grandmother died recently **on** the age of 79.
5. Can you turn the light on, please? I don’t want to sit **on** the dark.
6. We didn’t go **in** holiday last year. We stayed at home.
7. I hate driving **in** fog. You can’t see anything.
8. I won’t be here next week. I’ll be **on** holiday.
9. Technology has developed **on** great speed.
10. Alan got married **in** 17, which is rather young to get married.
11. I heard an interesting programme **on** the radio this morning.
12. **in** my opinion, violent films should not be shown **on** television.
13. I wouldn’t like to go **on** a cruise. I think I’d get bored.
14. I shouldn’t eat too much. I’m supposed to be **on** a diet.
15. I wouldn’t like his job. He spends most of his time talking **on** the phone.
16. The earth travels round the sun **in** 107,000 kilometres an hour.
17. ‘Did you enjoy your holiday?’ ‘Not every minute, but **in** the whole, yes.’
18. A lot of houses were damaged **on** the storm last week.

→ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)
We use *by* in many expressions to say how we do something. For example, you can:

- send something *by post*
- contact somebody *by phone / by email*
- do something *by hand*
- pay *by credit card / by cheque*

- Can I pay *by credit card*?
- You can contact me *by phone or by email*.

But we say *pay cash* or *pay in cash* (*not usually by cash*). We also say that something happens *by mistake / by accident / by chance*:

- We hadn't arranged to meet. We met *by chance*.
- But we say 'do something on purpose' (= you mean to do it):
  - I didn't do it *on purpose*. It was an accident.

Note that we say *by chance, by credit card* etc. (*not by the chance / by a credit card*). In these expressions we use *by + noun* without the or a.

In the same way we use *by* ... to say how somebody travels:

- *by car / by train / by plane / by boat / by ship / by bus / by bike* etc.
- *by road / by rail / by air / by sea*
  - Jess usually goes to work *by bus*.

But we say *on foot*:

- Did you come here *by car or on foot*?

You cannot use *by* if you say *my car / the train / a taxi* etc. We say:

- *by car but in my car* (*not by my car*)
- *by train but on the train* (*not by the train*)

We use *in* for cars and taxis:

- They didn't come *in their car*. They came *in a taxi*.

We use *on* for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):

- We travelled *on the 6.45 train*.

We say that 'something is done *by somebody/something*' (*passive*):

- Have you ever been bitten *by a dog*?
- The programme was watched *by millions of people*.

Compare *by* and *with*:

- The door must have been opened *with a key*. (*not by a key*)
  (= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened *by somebody* with a key.

We say 'a play *by Shakespeare*' / 'a painting *by Rembrandt*' / 'a novel *by Tolstoy*' etc.:

- Have you read anything *by Ernest Hemingway*?

*By* also means 'next to / beside*:

- Come and sit *by me*. (= next to me)
- 'Where's the light switch?' *By the door*.

Note the following use of *by*:

- Clare's salary has just gone up *from £2,500 a month to £2,750*. So it has increased *by £250 / by ten per cent*.
- Carl and Mike had a race over 200 metres. Carl won *by about three metres*.
Exercises

128.1 Complete the sentences using by + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>canal</th>
<th>chance</th>
<th>credit card</th>
<th>hand</th>
<th>mistake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. We hadn’t arranged to meet. We met _ by chance_ .
2. I didn’t intend to take your umbrella. I took it ____________________________ .
3. Don’t put the sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed ____________________________ .
4. I don’t need cash. I can pay the bill ____________________________ .
5. The town is not on the coast, but is connected to the sea ____________________________ .

128.2 Put in by, in or on.

1. Jess usually goes to work _ by _ bus.
2. I saw Jane this morning. She was _ the bus.
3. How did you get here? Did you come _ train? _
4. I decided not to go _ car. I went _ my bike instead.
5. I didn’t feel like walking home, so I came home _ taxi.
6. Sorry we’re late. We missed the bus, so we had to come _ foot.
7. How long does it take to cross the Atlantic _ ship?

128.3 All these sentences have a mistake. Correct them.

1. Did you come here by Kate’s car or yours? _ in Kate’s car_
2. I don’t like travelling on bus.
3. These photographs were taken by a very good camera.
4. I know this music is from Beethoven, but I can’t remember what it’s called.
5. I couldn’t pay by cash – I didn’t have any money on me.
6. We lost the game because of a mistake of one of our players.

128.4 Write three sentences like the examples. Write about a song, a painting, a film, a book etc.

1. _ War and Peace is a book by Tolstoy. _
2. _ Romeo and Juliet is a play by Shakespeare. _
3. _
4. _
5. _

128.5 Put in by, in, on or with.

1. Have you ever been bitten _ by _ a dog?
2. The plane was badly damaged _ lightning.
3. We managed to put the fire out _ a fire extinguisher.
4. Who is that man standing _ the window?
5. These photographs were taken _ a friend of mine.
6. I don’t mind going _ car, but I don’t want to go _ your car.
7. There was a small table _ the bed _ a lamp and a clock _ it.

128.6 Complete the sentences using by.

1. Clare’s salary was £2,500 a month. Now it is £2,750.
   Her salary _ has increased by _ £250.
2. My daily newspaper used to cost 80 pence. From today it costs 90.
   The price has gone up ____________________________________________.
3. There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23.
   Helen won ____________________________________________
4. I went to Kate’s house to see her, but she had gone out five minutes before I arrived.
   I missed ____________________________________________
Noun + preposition  (reason for, cause of etc.)

A  Noun + for ...

- a demand / a need FOR ...
  - The company closed down because there wasn’t enough demand for its product.
  - There’s no excuse for behaviour like that. There’s no need for it.

- a reason FOR ...
  - The train was late, but nobody knew the reason for the delay. (not reason of)

B  Noun + of ...

- an advantage / a disadvantage OF ...
  - The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.
  - but there is an advantage in (or to) doing something.
  - There are many advantages in living alone. or ... many advantages to living alone.

- a cause OF ...
  - The cause of the explosion is unknown.

- a picture / a photo / a photograph / a map / a plan / a drawing (etc.) OF ...
  - Rachel showed me some pictures of her family.
  - I had a map of the town, so I was able to find my way around.

C  Noun + in ...

- an increase / a decrease / a rise / a fall IN (prices etc.)
  - There has been an increase in the number of road accidents recently.
  - Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big fall in sales.

D  Noun + to ...

- damage TO ...
  - The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage to the other car.

- an invitation TO ...
  - (a party / a wedding etc.)
  - Did you get an invitation to the party?

- a solution TO (a problem) / a key TO (a door) / an answer TO (a question) / a reply TO (a letter) / a reaction TO ...
  - I hope we find a solution to the problem. (not a solution of the problem)
  - I was surprised at her reaction to my suggestion.

- an attitude TO ...
  - His attitude to his job is very negative. or His attitude towards his job ...

E  Noun + with ... / between ...

- a relationship / a connection / contact WITH ...
  - Do you have a good relationship with your parents?
  - The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.
  - but a relationship / a connection / contact / a difference BETWEEN two things or people
  - The police believe that there is no connection between the two crimes.
  - There are some differences between British and American English.
Exercises

129.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1 What caused the explosion? What was the cause of the explosion?
2 We’re trying to solve the problem. We’re trying to find a solution.
3 Sue gets on well with her brother. Sue has a good relationship.
4 The cost of living has gone up a lot. There has been a big increase.
5 I don’t know how to answer your question. I can’t think of an answer.
6 I don’t think that a new road is necessary. I don’t think there is any need.
7 I think that working at home has many advantages. I think there are many advantages.
8 The number of people without jobs fell last month. Last month there was a fall.
9 Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more. There is no demand.
10 In what way is your job different from mine? What is the difference?

129.2 Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cause</th>
<th>connection</th>
<th>contact</th>
<th>photographs</th>
<th>damage</th>
<th>invitation</th>
<th>reply</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>map</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 On the wall there were some pictures and a map of the world.
2 Thank you for the invitation to your party next week.
3 Since she left home two years ago, Sophie has had little contact with her family.
4 I can’t open this door. Do you have a key to the other door?
5 The cause of the fire at the hotel last week is still unknown.
6 Did you get a photograph of the email you sent to the company?
7 The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection between them.
8 Jane showed me some old photographs of the city as it looked 100 years ago.
9 Carol has decided to give up her job. I don’t know her reason for doing this.
10 It wasn’t a bad accident. The damage to the car wasn’t serious.

129.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1 There are some differences between British and American English.
2 Money isn’t the solution to every problem.
3 There has been an increase in the amount of traffic using this road.
4 The advantage of having a car is that you don’t have to rely on public transport.
5 There are many advantages to being able to speak a foreign language.
6 Everything can be explained. There’s a reason for everything.
7 When Paul left home, his attitude towards his parents seemed to change.
8 Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don’t have much contact with him now.
9 There has been a sharp rise in property prices in the past few years.
10 What was Sarah’s reaction to the news?
11 If I give you the camera, can you take a picture of me?
12 The company has rejected the workers’ demands for a rise in pay.
13 What was the answer to question 3 in the test?
14 The fact that Jane was offered a job has no connection with the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.

→ Additional exercise 35 (page 322)
### Adjective + preposition 1

**It was nice of you to ...**

- nice / kind / good / generous / polite / stupid / silly etc. OF somebody (to do something)
  - Thank you. It was very kind of you to help me.
  - It is stupid of me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

**but**

- (be) nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel etc. TO somebody
  - They have always been very nice to me. (not with me)
  - Why were you so unfriendly to Lucy?

### Adjective + about / with

- angry / annoyed / furious / upset ABOUT something

- There's no point in getting angry about things that don't matter.
- Are you annoyed with me for being late?
- Lisa is upset about not being invited to the party.

- excited / worried / nervous / happy etc. ABOUT a situation

- Are you nervous about the exam?

- pleased / satisfied / happy / delighted / disappointed WITH something you receive, or the result of something

- They were delighted with the present I gave them.
- Were you happy with your exam results?

### Adjective + at / by / with / of

- surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished / upset AT or BY something

- Everybody was surprised at (or by) the news.
- I hope you weren't shocked by (or at) what I said.

- impressed WITH or BY somebody/something

- I'm very impressed with (or by) her English. It's very good.

- fed up / bored WITH something

- I don't enjoy my job any more. I'm fed up with it. / I'm bored with it.

- tired / sick OF something

- Come on, let's go! I'm tired of waiting. / I'm sick of waiting.

### Sorry about / for

- sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened

- I'm sorry about the mess. I'll clear it up later.
- Sorry about last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

- sorry FOR or ABOUT something you did

- Alex is very sorry for what he said. (or sorry about what he said)
- I'm sorry for shouting at you yesterday. (or sorry about shouting)

You can also say 'I'm sorry I (did something)'

- I'm sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

### feel / be sorry FOR somebody who is in a bad situation

- I feel sorry for Matt. He's had a lot of bad luck. (not I feel sorry about Matt)
Exercises

130.1 Complete the sentences using nice of ..., kind of ... etc.

1. I went out in the cold without a coat. (silly) That was silly of you.
2. Tom offered to drive me to the airport. (nice) That was ................. him.
3. I needed money and Sue gave me some. (generous) That ................. .
4. They didn’t invite us to their party. (not very nice) That wasn’t ................. .
5. Can I help you with your luggage? (very kind) ................. .
6. Kevin never says ‘thank you’. (not very polite) ................. .
7. They’ve had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other. (a bit childish) ................. .

130.2 Complete the sentences using these adjectives + a preposition:

amazed angry bored careless excited impressed kind nervous

1. Are you ................. about the exam?
2. Thank you for all you’ve done. You’ve been very ................. me.
3. What have I done wrong? Why are you ................. me?
4. You must be very ................. your trip next week. It sounds really great.
5. I wasn’t ................. the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages before our food arrived.
6. Ben isn’t very happy at college. He says he’s ................. the course he’s doing.
7. I’d never seen so many people before. I was ................. the crowds.
8. It was ................. you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. They were delighted ................. the present I gave them.
2. It was nice ................. you to come and see me when I was ill.
3. Why are you so rude ................. people? Why can’t you be more polite?
4. We always have the same food every day. I’m fed up ................. it.
5. We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed ................. the hotel.
6. I can’t understand people who are cruel ................. animals.
7. I was surprised ................. the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
8. I’ve been trying to learn Spanish, but I’m not very satisfied ................. my progress.
9. Tanya doesn’t look very well. I’m worried ................. her.
10. They told me they were sorry ................. the situation, but there was nothing they could do.
11. I wouldn’t like to be in her position. I feel sorry ................. her.
12. Are you still upset ................. what I said to you yesterday?
13. Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she’s always been very nice ................. me.
14. I’m tired ................. doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
15. The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent and we were impressed ................. the way he answered our questions.
16. I’m sorry ................. the smell of paint in this room. I’ve just finished redecorating it.
17. I was shocked ................. what I saw. I’d never seen anything like it before.
18. Our neighbours were very angry ................. the noise we made.
19. Our neighbours were furious ................. us ................. making so much noise.
20. I’m sorry ................. what I did. I hope you’re not angry ................. me.
Adjective + of (1)

- afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF ...
  - 'Are you afraid of spiders?' ‘Yes, I’m terrified of them.’
- fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF ...
  - Why are you always so jealous of other people?
- suspicious / critical / tolerant OF ...
  - He didn’t trust me. He was suspicious of my motives.

Adjective + of (2)

- aware / conscious OF ...
  - 'Did you know he was married?’ ‘No, I wasn’t aware of that.’
- capable / incapable OF ...
  - I’m sure you are capable of passing the examination.
- full / short OF ...
  - Amy is a very active person. She’s always full of energy.
  - I’m short of money. Can you lend me some?
- typical OF ...
  - He’s late again. It’s typical of him to keep everybody waiting.
- certain / sure OF or ABOUT ...
  - I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not sure of that. or … not sure about that.

Adjective + at / to / from / in / on / with / for

- good / bad / brilliant / better / hopeless etc. AT ...
  - I’m not very good at repairing things. (not good in repairing things)
- married / engaged TO ...
  - Louise is married to an American. (not married with)
  - but Louise is married with three children. (= she is married and has three children)
- similar TO ...
  - Your writing is similar to mine.
- different FROM or different TO ...
  - The film was different from what I’d expected. or … different to what I’d expected.
- interested IN ...
  - Are you interested in art?
- keen ON ...
  - We stayed at home because Chris wasn’t very keen on going out.
- dependent ON ... (but independent OF …)
  - I don’t want to be dependent on anybody.
- crowded WITH (people etc.)
  - The streets were crowded with tourists. (but … full of tourists)
- famous FOR ...
  - The Italian city of Florence is famous for its art treasures.
- responsible FOR ...
  - Who was responsible for all that noise last night?
Exercises

131.1 Complete the sentences using these adjectives + the correct preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afraid</th>
<th>capable</th>
<th>different</th>
<th>interested</th>
<th>proud</th>
<th>responsible</th>
<th>similar</th>
<th>sure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not ___________ that.
2. Your camera is __________________________ mine, but it isn’t exactly the same.
3. Don’t worry. I’ll look after you. There’s nothing to be ____________________
4. I never watch the news on TV. I’m not ______________________ the news.
5. The editor is the person who is __________________________ what appears in a newspaper.
6. Sarah is a keen gardener. She’s very ______________________ her garden and loves showing it to visitors.
7. I was surprised when I met Lisa for the first time. She was __________________________ what I expected.
8. He could become world champion one day. He’s ______________________ it.

131.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded __________________________ tourists.
2. There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full __________________________
3. I don’t like sport very much. I’m not very keen __________________________
4. We don’t have enough time. We’re short __________________________
5. I’m not a very good tennis player. I’m not very good __________________________
6. Catherine’s husband is Russian. Catherine is married __________________________
7. I don’t trust Robert. I’m suspicious __________________________
8. My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different __________________________

131.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. Amy is always full __________ energy.
2. My home town is not a very interesting place. It’s not famous __________ anything.
3. Kate is very fond __________ her younger brother.
4. I don’t like going up ladders. I’m scared __________ heights.
5. You looked bored. You don’t seem interested __________ what I’m saying.
6. ‘Our flight departs at 10.35.’ ‘Are you sure __________ that?’
7. I’m not ashamed __________ what I did. In fact I’m quite proud __________ it.
8. I wanted to go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen __________ the idea.
9. These days everybody is aware __________ the dangers of smoking.
10. The station platform was crowded __________ people waiting for the train.
11. Sue is much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous __________ her.
12. Do you know anyone who might be interested __________ buying an old car?
13. We’ve got plenty to eat. The fridge is full __________ food.
14. She’s very honest. I don’t think she is capable __________ telling a lie.
15. Helen works hard and she’s extremely good __________ her job.
16. It’s typical __________ him to change his mind at the last minute.
17. Mark has no money of his own. He’s totally dependent __________ his parents.
18. We’re short __________ staff in our office at the moment. We need more people to do the work.

131.4 Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? Use the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>pretty good</th>
<th>not very good</th>
<th>hopeless</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. (repairing things) I’m not very good __________ repairing things.
2. (telling jokes) __________________________
3. (maths) __________________________
4. (remembering names) __________________________
5. (sport) __________________________

Additional exercise 35 (page 322)
# Verb + preposition 1  to and at

## Verb + to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>talk / speak</td>
<td>To somebody (with is also possible but less usual)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>To ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologise</td>
<td>To somebody (for ...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>Something to somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain / describe</td>
<td>(to somebody) what/how/why ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We do not use to with these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phone / call / email / text</td>
<td>Somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>(letter) to somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>Somebody / something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply</td>
<td>To an email / a letter etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank</td>
<td>Somebody (for something)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Verb + at

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look / stare / glance</td>
<td>AT ... , have a look / take a look AT ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>AT ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aim / point</td>
<td>(something) AT ... , shoot / fire (a gun) AT ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Some verbs can be followed by at or to, with a difference in meaning. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shout</td>
<td>AT somebody (when you are angry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shout TO</td>
<td>Somebody (so that they can hear you)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>Something AT somebody / something (in order to hit them)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw TO</td>
<td>Somebody (for somebody to catch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa shouted</td>
<td>‘Catch!’ and threw the keys to me from the window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

132.1 Which is correct?

1 a Can you explain this word to me? ✓
   b Can you explain me this word? □

2 a I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised to him. □
   b I got angry with Mark. Afterwards I apologised him. □

3 a Amy won’t be able to help you. There’s no point in asking to her. □
   b Amy won’t be able to help you. There’s no point in asking her. □

4 a I need somebody to explain me what I have to do. □
   b I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do. □

5 a They didn’t understand the system, so I explained it to them. □
   b They didn’t understand the system, so I explained it them. □

6 a I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the sea. □
   b I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the sea. □

7 a I asked them to describe me exactly what happened. □
   b I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened. □

8 a We’d better phone the restaurant to reserve a table. □
   b We’d better phone to the restaurant to reserve a table. □

9 a It was a difficult question. I couldn’t answer to it. □
   b It was a difficult question. I couldn’t answer it. □

10 a I explained everybody the reasons for my decision. □
     b I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision. □

11 a I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me. □
     b I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me. □

12 a My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late. □
     b My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late. □

132.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

- explain - laugh - listen - look - point - reply - speak - throw - throw

1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh at me.
2 I don’t understand this. Can you explain it to me?
3 Sue and Kevin had an argument and now they’re refusing to look at each other.
4 Be careful with those scissors! Don’t give them a pair of scissors me!
5 I’m not sure where we are. I’ll have to point to the map.
6 Please listen to me! I’ve got something important to tell you.
7 Don’t throw stones at the birds! It’s cruel.
8 If you don’t want that sandwich, leave it alone the birds. They’ll eat it.
9 I tried to contact Tina, but she didn’t reply to my emails.

132.3 Put in to or at.

1 They apologised to me for what happened.
2 I glanced at my watch to see what time it was.
3 Please don’t shout at me! Try to calm down.
4 I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted at her, but she didn’t hear me.
5 Don’t listen to what he says. He doesn’t know what he’s talking about.
6 What’s so funny? What are you laughing about?
7 Could I have a look at your magazine, please?
8 I’m lonely. I need somebody to talk to.
9 She was so angry she threw a book at the wall.
10 The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring at me.
11 Can I speak to you a moment? There’s something I want to ask you.
Verb + preposition 2  about/for/of/after

### Verb + about

- **talk / read / know ABOUT ...**
  - We talked about a lot of things at the meeting.
- **have a discussion ABOUT something,**
  - We had a discussion about what we should do.
  - We discussed a lot of things at the meeting. (not discussed about)
- **do something ABOUT something = do something to improve a bad situation**
  - If you’re worried about the problem, you should do something about it.

### Verb + for

- **ask (somebody) FOR ...**
  - I sent an email to the company asking them for more information about the job.
  - but ‘I asked him the way to...’, ‘She asked me my name’ (no preposition)
- **apply (TO a person, a company etc.) FOR a job etc.**
  - I think you’d be good at this job. Why don’t you apply for it?
- **wait FOR ...**
  - Don’t wait for me. I’ll join you later.
  - I’m not going out yet. I’m waiting for the rain to stop.
- **search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR ...**
  - I’ve searched the house for my keys, but I still can’t find them.
- **leave (a place) FOR another place**
  - I haven’t seen her since she left (home) for the office this morning.
  - (not left to the office)

### Care about, care for and take care of

- **care ABOUT somebody/something = think that somebody/something is important**
  - He’s very selfish. He doesn’t care about other people.
  - We say ‘care what/where/how...’ etc. (without about):
    - You can do what you like. I don’t care what you do.
- **care FOR somebody/something**
  - (1) = like something (usually negative sentences)
    - I don’t care for very hot weather. (= I don’t like ...)
  - (2) = look after somebody
    - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to care for him.
- **take care OF ... = look after, keep safe, take responsibility for**
  - Don’t worry about me. I can take care of myself.
  - I’ll take care of the travel arrangements. You don’t need to do anything.

### Look for and look after

- **look FOR ... = search for, try to find**
  - I’ve lost my keys. Can you help me to look for them?
- **look AFTER ... = take care of, keep safe or in good condition**
  - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to look after him. (not look for)
  - You can borrow this book, but you must promise to look after it.
Exercises

133.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 I’m not going out yet. I’m waiting ________ the rain to stop.
2 Don’t ask me ________ money. I don’t have any.
3 I’ve applied ________ a job at the factory. I don’t know if I’ll get it.
4 I’ve applied ________ three colleges. I hope one of them accepts me.
5 I’ve searched everywhere ________ Joe, but I haven’t been able to find him.
6 I don’t want to talk ________ what happened last night. Let’s forget it.
7 I don’t want to discuss ________ the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
8 We had an interesting discussion ________ the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
9 I sent her an email. Now I’m waiting ________ her to reply.
10 Ken and Sonia are travelling in Italy. They’re in Rome right now, and tomorrow they leave ________ Venice.
11 The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something ________ it.
12 We waited ________ Steve for half an hour, but he never came.
13 Tomorrow morning I have to catch a plane. I’m leaving my house ________ the airport at 7.30.

133.2 Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 He’s very selfish. He doesn’t care ________ other people.
2 Who’s going to take care ________ you when you are old?
3 She doesn’t care ________ the exam. She doesn’t care whether she passes or fails.
4 ‘Do you like this coat?’ ‘Not really. I don’t care ________ the colour.’
5 Don’t worry about the shopping. I’ll take care ________ that.
6 He gave up his job to care ________ his elderly father.
7 I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care ________ the cost.
8 I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care ________ how much it costs.

133.3 Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/looked/looking).
1 I ________ for ________ my keys, but I couldn’t find them anywhere.
2 Kate is ________ a job. I hope she finds one soon.
3 Who ________ you when you were ill?
4 I’m ________ Liz. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?
5 The car park was full, so we had to ________ somewhere else to park.
6 A babysitter is somebody who ________ other people’s children.

133.4 Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

apply ask do leave look search talk wait

1 Police are ________ the man who escaped from prison.
2 Sarah wasn’t ready. We had to ________ her.
3 I think Ben likes his job, but he doesn’t ________ it much.
4 When I’d finished my meal, I ________ the waiter ________ the bill.
5 Cathy is unemployed. She has ________ several jobs, but she hasn’t had any luck.
6 If something is wrong, why don’t you ________ something ________ it?
7 Helen’s car is very old, but it’s in excellent condition. She ________ it very well.
8 Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She ________ Boston ________ Paris when she was 19.
Verb + preposition 3  about and of

**A**

hear ABOUT ... = be told about something

- Did you hear about the fire at the hotel yesterday?

hear OF ... = know that somebody/something exists

- 'Who is Tom Hart?’ I have no idea. I’ve never heard of him.’ (not heard from him)

hear FROM ... = be in contact with somebody

- ‘Have you heard from Jane recently?’ ‘Yes, she called me a few days ago.’

**B**

think ABOUT ... and think OF ...

When you think ABOUT something, you consider it, you concentrate your mind on it:

- I’ve thought about what you said and I’ve decided to take your advice.
- ‘Will you lend me the money?’ ‘I’ll think about it.’

When you think OF something, the idea comes to your mind:

- It was my idea. I thought of it first. (not thought about it)
- I felt embarrassed. I couldn’t think of anything to say. (not think about anything)

We also use think of when we ask or give an opinion:

- ‘What did you think of the movie?’ ‘I didn’t think much of it.’ (= I didn’t like it much)

The difference is sometimes very small and you can use of or about:

- When I’m alone, I often think of (or about) you.

You can say think of or think about doing something (for possible future actions):

- My sister is thinking of (or about) going to Canada. (= she is considering it)

**C**

dream ABOUT ... (when you are asleep)

- I dreamt about you last night.

dream OF or ABOUT being something / doing something = imagine

- Do you dream of (or about) being rich and famous?

I wouldn’t dream OF doing something = I would never do it

- ‘Don’t tell anyone what I said.’ ‘No, I wouldn’t dream of it.’ (= I would never do it)

**D**

complain (TO somebody) ABOUT ... = say that you are not satisfied

- We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.

complain OF a pain, an illness etc. = say that you have a pain etc.

- We called the doctor because George was complaining of a pain in his stomach.

**E**

remind somebody ABOUT ... = tell somebody not to forget

- I’m glad you reminded me about the meeting. I’d completely forgotten about it.

remind somebody OF ... = cause somebody to remember

- This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child.
- Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he remind you of?

**F**

warn somebody ABOUT a person or thing which is bad, dangerous, unusual etc.

- I knew he was a strange person. I had been warned about him. (not warned of him)
- Vicky warned me about the traffic. She said it would be bad.

warn somebody ABOUT or OF a danger, something bad which might happen later

- Scientists have warned us about (or of) the effects of climate change.

Remind/warn somebody to ... \( \rightarrow \) Unit 55B
Exercises

13.4.1 Complete the sentences using hear or heard + a preposition (about/of/from).

1. I’ve never ____________ Tom Hart. Who is he?
2. ‘Did you __________________ the accident last night?’ ‘Yes, Vicky told me.’
3. Jane used to call me quite often, but I haven’t __________________ her for a long time now.
4. A: Have you __________________ a writer called William Hudson?
   B: No, I don’t think so. What sort of writer is he?
5. Thanks for your email. It was good to __________________ you.
6. ‘Do you want to __________________ our holiday?’ ‘Not now. Tell me later.’

13.4.2 Complete the sentences using think about or think of. Sometimes both about and of are possible. Use the correct form of think (think/thinking/thought).

1. You look serious. What are you ____________ about?
2. I need time to make decisions. I like to ____________ things carefully.
3. That’s a good idea. Why didn’t I ____________ that?
   B: What did you ____________ it? Did you think it was good?
5. We’re ____________ going out to eat this evening. Would you like to come?
6. I don’t really want to go out with Tom tonight. I’ll have to ____________ an excuse.
7. When I was offered the job, I didn’t accept immediately. I went away and __________________ it for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.
8. I don’t ____________ much __________________ this coffee. It’s like water.
9. Katherine is homesick. She’s always ____________ her family back home.
10. A: Do you think I should apply to do the course?
    B: I can’t ____________ any reason why not.

13.4.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. Did you hear ____________ the fire at the hotel yesterday?
2. ‘I had a strange dream last night.’ ‘Did you? What did you dream ____________?’
3. Our neighbours complained ____________ us ____________ the noise we made last night.
4. Kevin was complaining ____________ pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
5. I love this music. It reminds me ____________ a warm day in spring.
6. He loves his job. He thinks ____________ his work all the time, he dreams ____________ it, he talks ____________ it and I’m fed up with hearing ____________ it.
7. ‘We’ve got no money. What can we do?’ ‘Don’t worry. I’ll think ____________ something.’
8. Jackie warned me ____________ the water. She said it wasn’t safe to drink.
9. We warned our children ____________ the dangers of playing in the street.

13.4.4 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>complain</th>
<th>dream</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>remind</th>
<th>remind</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>warn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. It was my idea. I ____________ it first.
2. Ben is never satisfied. He’s always ____________ something.
3. I can’t make a decision yet. I need time to ____________ your proposal.
4. Before you go into the house, I must ____________ you ____________ the dog. He’s bitten people before, so be careful.
5. She’s not a well-known singer. Not many people have ____________ her.
6. A: You wouldn’t go away without telling me, would you?
   B: Of course not. I wouldn’t ____________ it.
7. I would have forgotten my appointment if Jane hadn’t ____________ me ____________ it.
8. Do you see that man over there? Does he ____________ you ____________ anybody you know?
Verb + of

accuse / suspect somebody OF ...
- Sue accused me of being selfish.
- Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.

approve / disapprove OF ...
- His parents don’t approve of what he does, but they can’t stop him.

die OF or FROM an illness etc.
- ‘What did he die of?’ ‘A heart attack.’

consist OF ...
- We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses.

Verb + for

pay (somebody) FOR ...
- I didn’t have enough money to pay for the meal. (not pay the meal)
- but pay a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money etc. (no preposition)
- I didn’t have enough money to pay the rent.

thank / forgive somebody FOR ...
- I’ll never forgive them for what they did.

apologise (TO somebody) FOR ...
- When I realised I was wrong, I apologised to them for my mistake.

blame somebody/something FOR ..., somebody is to blame FOR ...
- Everybody blamed me for the accident.
- Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident.

blame (a problem etc.) ON ...
- The accident wasn’t my fault. Don’t blame it on me.

Verb + from

suffer FROM an illness etc.
- There’s been an increase in the number of people suffering from heart disease.

protect somebody/something FROM ...
- Sun block protects the skin from the sun.

Verb + on

depend / rely ON ...
- ‘What time will you be home?’ ‘I don’t know. It depends on the traffic.’
- You can rely on Anna. She always keeps her promises.

You can use depend + when/where/how etc. with or without on:
- ‘Are you going to buy it?’ ‘It depends how much it is.’ (or it depends on how much)

live ON money/food
- Michael’s salary is very low. It isn’t enough to live on.

congratulate / compliment somebody ON ...
- I congratulated her on doing so well in her exams.
- The meal was really good. I complimented Mark on his cooking skills.
Exercises

135.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 Some students were suspected ______ of ______ cheating in the exam.
2 Are you going to apologise ______ what you did?
3 The apartment consists ______ three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
4 I was accused ______ lying, but I was telling the truth.
5 We finished our meal, paid ______ the bill, and left the restaurant.
6 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay ______ the repairs.
7 Some people are dying ______ hunger, while others eat too much.
8 I called Helen to thank her ______ the present she sent me.
9 The government is popular. Most people approve ______ what they’re doing.
10 Do you blame the government ______ the economic situation?
11 When something goes wrong, you always blame it ______ other people.

135.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
1 Sue said that I was selfish.
   Sue accused me ______ of ______ being selfish.
2 The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.
   I apologised ______.
3 Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
   I congratulated ______.
4 He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.
   He has a bodyguard to protect ______.
5 There are eleven players in a football team.
   A football team consists ______.
6 Sandra eats only bread and eggs.
   Sandra lives ______.
7 You can’t say that your problems are my fault.
   You can’t blame ______.

135.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

Accuse  apologise  approve  congratulate  depend  live  pay  suffer

1 His parents don’t ______ of ______ what he does, but they can’t stop him.
2 When you went to the theatre with Paul, who ______ the tickets?
3 It’s not pleasant when you are ______ something you didn’t do.
4 We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it ______ the weather.
5 Things are cheap there. You can ______ very little money.
6 You were rude to Lisa. I think you should ______ her.
7 Alex ______ back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.
8 When I saw David, I ______ him ______ passing his driving test.

135.4 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 I’ll never forgive them ______ what they did.
2 They wore warm clothes to protect themselves ______ the cold.
3 You know you can always rely ______ me if you need any help.
4 Sophie doesn’t have enough money to pay ______ her college fees.
5 She’s often unwell. She suffers ______ very bad headaches.
6 I don’t know whether I’ll go out tonight. It depends ______ how I feel.
7 She hasn’t got a job. She depends ______ her parents for money.
8 My usual breakfast consists ______ fruit, cereal and coffee.
9 I complimented her ______ her English. She spoke really well.
Verb + in

**believe IN**
- Do you believe in God? (= Do you believe that God exists?)
- I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)

**but believe** something (= believe it is true), **believe somebody** (= believe they are telling the truth)
- The story can’t be true. I don’t believe it. (not believe in it)

**specialise IN**
- Helen is a lawyer. She specialises in company law.

**succeed IN**
- I hope you succeed in finding the job you want.

Verb + into

**break INTO**
- Our house was broken into a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

**crash / drive / bump / run INTO**
- He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.

**divide / cut / split** something INTO two or more parts
- The book is divided into three parts.

**translate** a book etc. FROM one language INTO another
- She’s a famous writer. Her books have been translated into many languages.

Verb + with

**collide** WITH...
- There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

**fill** something WITH...
- Take this saucepan and fill it with water.

**provide / supply** somebody WITH...
- The school provides all its students with books.

Verb + to

**happen TO**
- What happened to that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

**invite** somebody TO a party / a wedding etc.
- They only invited a few people to their wedding.

**prefer** one thing/person TO another
- I prefer tea to coffee.

Verb + on

**concentrate ON**
- I tried to concentrate on my work, but I kept thinking about other things.

**insist ON**
- I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine insisted on coming with me.

**spend** (money) ON...
- How much do you spend on food each week?
Exercises

136.1 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

believe  concentrate  divide  drive  fill  happen  insist  invite  succeed

1. I wanted to go alone, but my friends **insisted on** coming with me.
2. I haven’t seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has **happened** to him.
3. We've been **driving** to the party, but unfortunately we can't go.
4. It's a very large house. It's **divided** into four apartments.
5. I don't **believe** in ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.
6. Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to **fill** it **with** water.
7. I was driving along when the car in front stopped suddenly. I couldn’t stop in time and **hit** the back of it.
8. Don’t try and do two things together. **Spend** one thing at a time.
9. It wasn’t easy, but in the end we **succeeded** in finding a solution to the problem.

136.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. There was a collision between a bus and a car.
   A bus collided **with** a car.
2. I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
   I prefer **to** live in a small town.
3. I got all the information I needed from Jane.
   Jane provided me **with** the information I needed.
4. This morning I bought a pair of shoes which cost £70.
   This morning I spent **£70** on a pair of shoes.
5. There are ten districts in the city.
   The city is divided **into** ten districts.

136.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1. The school provides all its students **with** books.
2. A strange thing happened **a few** days ago.
3. Mark decided to give up sport to concentrate **on** his studies.
4. Money should be used well. I don’t believe **in** wasting it.
5. My present job isn’t wonderful, but I prefer it **to** what I did before.
6. I hope you succeed **in** getting what you want.
7. As I was coming out of the room, I collided **with** somebody who was coming in.
8. There was an awful noise as the car crashed **into** a tree.
9. Patrick is a photographer. He specialises **in** sports photography.
10. Do you spend a lot of money **on** clothes?
11. I was amazed when Joe walked into the room. **To** believe it.
12. Somebody broke **into** my car and stole the radio.
13. I was quite cold, but Tom insisted **on** having the window open.
14. The teacher decided to split the class **into** four groups.
15. I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it **with** the wrong kind of petrol.
16. Some words are difficult to translate **between** one language **and** another.

136.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1. I wanted to go out alone, but my friend **insisted on** coming with me.
2. I spend a lot of money **on** clothes.
3. I saw the accident. The car crashed **into** a tree.
4. Chris prefers basketball **to** football.
5. The restaurant we went to specialises **in** Chinese food.
6. Shakespeare’s plays have been translated **into** many languages.
Phrasal verbs 1  General points

We often use verbs with the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>away</th>
<th>by</th>
<th>about</th>
<th>over</th>
<th>round</th>
<th>or around</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>along</td>
<td>forward</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So you can say look out / get on / take off / run away etc. These are phrasal verbs.

We often use on/off/out etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

- **get on**  
  The bus was full. We couldn't get on.
- **drive off**  
  A woman got into the car and drove off.
- **come back**  
  Sarah is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.
- **turn round**  
  When I touched him on the shoulder, he turned round.

But often the second word (on/off/out etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

- **break down**  
  Sorry I'm late. The car broke down. (= the engine stopped working)
- **look out**  
  Look out! There's a car coming. (= be careful)
- **take off**  
  It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane took off. (= went into the air)
- **get on**  
  How was the exam? How did you get on? (= How did you do?)
- **get by**  
  My French isn't very good, but it's enough to get by. (= manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 138–145.

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a preposition. For example:

- **run away** with **from**  
  Why did you run away from me?
- **keep up** with **at**  
  You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
- **look up** at **to**  
  We looked up at the plane as it flew above us.
- **look forward** to **to**  
  Are you looking forward to your trip?

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an object. Usually there are two possible positions for the object.

So you can say:

I turned on the light. or I turned the light on.

If the object is a pronoun (it/them/me/him etc.), only one position is possible:

I turned it on. (not I turned on it)

Some more examples:

- **fill** in **this** form?  
  Can you fill in this form?  
  but They gave me a form and told me to fill it in. (not fill in it)

- **throw** away **this** box.  
  Don't throw this box away.  
  but I want to keep this box, so don't throw it away. (not throw away it)

- **take off** my shoes.  
  I'm going to take off my shoes.  
  but These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to take them off. (not take off them)

- **wake up** the baby.  
  Don't wake up the baby.  
  but The baby is asleep. Don't wake her up. (not wake up her)
Exercises

137.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A    fly    get    go    look    sit    speak
B    away    by    down    on    out    round    up

1. The bus was full. We couldn’t _____get on_____.
2. I’ve been standing for the last two hours. I’m going to _______________ for a bit.
3. A cat tried to catch the bird, but it _______________ just in time.
4. We were trapped in the building. We couldn’t _______________.
5. I can’t hear you very well. Can you _______________ a little?
6. ‘Do you speak German?’ ‘Not very well, but I can _______________.’
7. Everything has got so expensive. Prices have _______________ a lot.
8. I thought there was somebody behind me, but when I _______________ , there was nobody there.

137.2 Complete the sentences using a word from A and a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A    away    back    forward    in    up
B    at    through    to    with

1. You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep _______________ with you.
2. My holidays are nearly over. Next week I’ll be _______________ work.
3. We went _______________ the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4. The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I’m not looking _______________ it.
5. There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got _______________ £50,000.
6. I love to look _______________ the stars in the sky at night.
7. I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew _______________ the open window.

137.3 Complete the sentences using these phrasal verbs + it/them/me:

- fill in
- get out
- give back
- switch on
- take off
- wake up

1. They gave me a form and told me to _______________ it in.
2. I’m going to bed now. Can you _______________ at 6.30?
3. I’ve got something in my eye and I can’t _______________.
4. I don’t like it when people borrow things and don’t _______________.
5. I want to use the hair dryer. How do I _______________ ?
6. My shoes are dirty. I’d better _______________ before going into the house.

137.4 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use a noun (this box etc.) or a pronoun (it/Them etc.) + the word in brackets (away/up etc.).

1. Don’t throw _______________ this box. I want to keep it. (away)
2. I don’t want this newspaper. You can throw _______________. (away)
3. I borrowed these books from the library. I have to take _______________ tomorrow. (back)
4. We can turn _______________. Nobody is watching it. (off)
5. A: How did the vase get broken?
   B: I’m afraid I knocked _______________ while I was cleaning. (over)
6. Shh! My mother is asleep. I don’t want to wake _______________. (up)
7. It’s cold today. You should put _______________ if you’re going out. (on)
8. It was only a small fire. I was able to put _______________ easily. (out)
9. A: Is this hotel more expensive than when we stayed here last year?
   B: Yes, they’ve put _______________. (up)
10. It’s a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn _______________ ? (on)
Phrasal verbs 2 in/out

Compare in and out:

**in** = into a room, a building, a car etc.
- How did the thieves get in?
- Here's a key, so you can let yourself in.
- Lisa walked up to the edge of the pool and dived in. (= into the water)
- I've got a new apartment. I'm moving in on Friday.
- As soon as I got to the airport, I checked in.

In the same way you can say go in, come in, walk in, break in etc.

**out** = out of a room, building, a car etc.
- He just stood up and walked out.
- I had no key, so I was locked out.
- She swam up and down the pool, and then climbed out.
- Andy opened the window and looked out.
- (at a hotel) What time do we have to check out?

In the same way you can say go out, get out, move out, let somebody out etc.

Compare out and out of:
- He walked out.
- He walked out of the room.

Other verbs + in

drop in = visit somebody for a short time without arranging to do this
- I dropped in to see Chris on my way home.

join in = take part in an activity that is already going on
- They were playing cards, so I joined in.

plug in an electrical machine = connect it to the electricity supply
- The fridge isn't working because you haven't plugged it in.

fill in a form, a questionnaire etc. = write the necessary information on a form
- Please fill in the application form and send it to us by 28 February.

You can also say fill out a form.

take somebody in = deceive somebody
- The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely taken in.

Other verbs + out

eat out = eat at a restaurant, not at home
- There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to eat out.

drop out of college, university, a course, a race = stop before you have completely finished a course/race etc.
- Gary went to university but dropped out after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = avoid doing it
- I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't get out of it now.

cut something out (of a newspaper etc.)
- There was a beautiful picture in the magazine, so I cut it out and kept it.

leave something out = omit it, not include it
- In the sentence 'She said that she was ill', you can leave out the word 'that'.

cross something out / rub something out
- Some of the names on the list had been crossed out.
Exercises

138.1 Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

1. Here’s a key so that you can _______________ yourself in.
2. Liz doesn’t like cooking, so she _______________ out a lot.
3. Amy isn’t living in this apartment any more. She _______________ out a few weeks ago.
4. If you’re in our part of town, you should _______________ in and say hello.
5. When I _______________ in at the airport, I was told my flight would be delayed.
6. There was an article in the paper that I wanted to keep, so I _______________ it out.
7. I wanted to iron some clothes, but there was nowhere to _______________ the iron in.
8. I hate _______________ in questionnaires.
9. Steve was upset because he’d been _______________ out of the team.
10. Be careful! The water’s not very deep here, so don’t _______________ in.
11. If you write in pencil and you make a mistake, you can _______________ it out.
12. Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he _______________ out after a few weeks.

138.2 Complete the sentences with in, into, out or of.

1. I’ve got a new flat. I’m moving _______________ on Friday.
2. We checked _______________ the hotel as soon as we arrived.
3. As soon as we arrived at the hotel, we checked _______________.
4. The car stopped and the driver got _______________.
5. Thieves broke _______________ the house while we were away.
6. Why did Sarah drop _______________ college? Did she fail her exams?

138.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + in or out (of).

1. Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, _______________ and swam to the other end.
2. Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them _______________.
3. I went to see Joe and Sophie in their new house. They _______________ last week.
4. I’ve told you everything you need to know. I don’t think I’ve _______________ anything.
5. Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people _______________ and soon everybody was singing.
6. We go to restaurants a lot. We like _______________.
7. Don’t be _______________ by him. If I were you, I wouldn’t believe anything he says.
8. I _______________ to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.
9. A: Can we meet tomorrow morning at 10?
   B: Probably. I’m supposed to go to another meeting, but I think I can _______________ it.

138.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

1. A: The fridge isn’t working.
   B: That’s because you haven’t _______________ it in. (plug)

2. A: What do I have to do with these forms?
   B: _______________ and send them to this address. (fill)

3. A: I’ve made a mistake on this form.
   B: That’s all right. Just _______________ and correct it. (cross)

4. A: Did you believe the story they told you?
   B: Yes, I’m afraid they completely _______________. (take)

5. A: Have you been to that new club in Bridge Street?
   B: We wanted to go there a few nights ago, but they wouldn’t _______________ because we weren’t members. (let)
Phrasal verbs 3  out

out = not burning, not shining

go out
put out a fire / a cigarette / a light
turn out a light
blow out a candle

Suddenly all the lights in the building went out.

We managed to put the fire out.

I turned the lights out before leaving.

We don’t need the candle. You can blow it out.

work out

work out = do physical exercises
Rachel works out at the gym three times a week.

work out = develop, progress
Good luck for the future. I hope everything works out well for you.

work out (for mathematical calculations)
The total bill for three people is £84.60. That works out at £28.20 each.
work something out = calculate, think about a problem and find the answer
345 × 76? I need to do this on paper. I can’t work it out in my head.

Other verbs + out

carry out an order, an experiment, a survey, an investigation, a plan etc.
Soldiers are expected to carry out orders.
An investigation into the accident will be carried out as soon as possible.

fall out (with somebody) = stop being friends
They used to be very good friends. I’m surprised to hear that they have fallen out.
David fell out with his father and left home.

find out that/what/when ... etc., find out about something = get information
The police never found out who committed the murder.
I just found out that it’s Helen’s birthday today.
I checked a few websites to find out about hotels in the town.

give/hand things out = give to each person
At the end of the lecture, the speaker gave out information sheets to the audience.

point something out (to somebody) = draw attention to something
As we drove through the city, our guide pointed out all the sights.
I didn’t realise I’d made a mistake until somebody pointed it out to me.

run out of something
We ran out of petrol on the motorway. (= we used all our petrol)

sort something out = find a solution to, put in order
There are a few problems we need to sort out.
All these papers are mixed up. I’ll have to sort them out.

turn out to be ..., turn out good/nice etc., turn out that ...
Nobody believed Paul at first, but he turned out to be right. (= it became clear in the end that he was right)
The weather wasn’t so good in the morning, but it turned out nice later.
I thought they knew each other, but it turned out that they’d never met.

try out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = test it to see if it is OK
The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
Exercises

139.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a candle</th>
<th>a cigarette</th>
<th>a light</th>
<th>a mess</th>
<th>a mistake</th>
<th>a new product</th>
<th>an order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn out</td>
<td>a light</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 put out
6 try out
7 sort out

139.2 Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

1 The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and runs out regularly.
3 The road will be closed for two days next week while building work is being carried out.
4 We didn’t manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We ran out of time.
5 You have to sort out the problem yourself. I can’t do it for you.
6 I don’t know what happened exactly. I need to find out.
7 The new drug will be tested out on a small group of patients.
8 I thought the two books were the same until a friend of mine pointed out the difference.
9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn’t work out and they separated.
10 There was a power cut and all the lights went out.
11 We thought she was American at first, but she turned out to be Swedish.
12 Sometimes it is cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.
13 I haven’t applied for the job yet. I want to find out more about the company first.
14 It took the fire brigade two hours to put out the fire.

139.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.

1 They’ve run out of petrol.
2 The man with the beard is running out of leaflets.
3 The weather has stayed out.
4 Sally and Kim are working out at the gym.
5 They’ve run out of the books.
6 Lisa is trying to put him out.

139.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 A: Was the fire serious?
   B: No, we were able to put it out.
2 A: This recipe looks interesting.
   B: Yes, let’s carry it out.
3 A: How much money do I owe you exactly?
   B: Just a moment. I’ll have to work it out.
4 A: What happened about your problem with your bank?
   B: It’s OK now. I went to see them and we sorted it out.

Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)
Phrasal verbs 4  on/off (1)

On and off for lights, machines etc.

We say: the light is on / put the light on / leave the light on etc.
      turn the light on/off or switch the light on/off

☐ Shall I leave the lights on or turn them off?
☐ 'Is the heating on?' 'No, I switched it off.'
☐ We need some boiling water, so I'll put the kettle on.

Also put on some music / a CD etc.
☐ I haven't listened to this CD yet. Shall I put it on? (= shall I play it)

On and off for events etc.

go on = happen
☐ What's all that noise? What's going on? (= what's happening)

call something off = cancel it
☐ The open air concert had to be called off because of the weather.

put something off, put off doing something = delay it
☐ The wedding has been put off until January.
☐ We can't put off making a decision. We have to decide now.

On and off for clothes etc.

put on clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc.
☐ My hands were cold, so I put my gloves on.

Also put on weight = get heavier
☐ I've put on two kilograms in the last month.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)
☐ I tried on a jacket in the shop, but it didn't fit me very well.

take off clothes, glasses etc.
☐ It was warm, so I took off my jacket.

Off = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)
☐ Tomorrow I'm off to Paris / I'm off on holiday.
      (= I'm going to Paris / I'm going on holiday)

walk off / run off / drive off / ride off / go off (similar to walk away / run away etc.)
☐ Diane got on her bike and rode off.
☐ Mark left home at the age of 18 and went off to Canada.

set off = start a journey
☐ We set off very early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)

take off = leave the ground (for planes)
☐ After a long delay the plane finally took off.

see somebody off = go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye
☐ Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to see her off.
Exercises

140.1 Complete the sentences using put on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>the heating</th>
<th>the kettle</th>
<th>the light</th>
<th>the oven</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>It was getting dark, so I ______ put the light on.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>It was getting cold, so I __________________________________</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I wanted to bake a cake, so I ____________________________</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I wanted to make some tea, so I ____________________________</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I wanted to listen to some music, so I ______________________</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

140.2 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + on or off.

1. It was warm, so I ______ took off ______ my jacket.
2. What are all these people doing? What's ____________? 
3. The weather was too bad for the plane to _____________, so the flight was delayed.
4. I didn't want to be disturbed, so I ___________________________ my phone.
5. Rachel got into her car and ___________________________ at high speed.
6. Tim has ___________________________ weight since I last saw him. He used to be quite thin.
7. A: What time are you leaving tomorrow?
   B: I'm not sure yet, but I'd like to ___________________________ as early as possible.
8. Don't ___________________________ until tomorrow what you can do today.
9. There was going to be a strike by bus drivers, but now they have been offered more money and the strike has been ___________________________.
10. Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to ___________________________?
11. When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to ___________________________ me.

140.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. Her hands were cold, so she ______ put her gloves on ______.
2. The plane _____________ at 10.55.
3. Maria ______ but it was too big for her.
4. The match ______ because of the weather.
5. Mark's parents went to the airport to ______.
6. He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and ______.
Phrasal verbs 5  on/off (2)

Verb + on = continue doing something

drive on / walk on / play on = continue driving/walking/playing etc.
  ○ Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we drive on to the next one?
go on = continue
  ○ The party went on until 4 o’clock in the morning.
go on / carry on doing something = continue doing something
  ○ We can’t go on spending money like this. We’ll have nothing left soon.
  ○ I don’t want to carry on working here. I’m going to look for another job.
Also go on with / carry on with something
  ○ Don’t let me disturb you. Please carry on with what you’re doing.
keep on doing something = do it continuously or repeatedly
  ○ He keeps on criticising me. I’m fed up with it!

Get on

got on = progress
  ○ How are you getting on in your new job? (= How is it going?)
get on (with somebody) = have a good relationship
  ○ Joanne and Karen don’t get on. They’re always arguing.
  ○ Richard gets on well with his neighbours. They’re all very friendly.
get on with something = continue doing something you have to do, usually after an interruption
  ○ I must get on with my work. I have a lot to do.

Verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = fall asleep
  ○ The lecture wasn’t very interesting. In fact I dozed off in the middle of it.
finish something off = do the last part of something
  ○ A: Have you finished painting the kitchen?
     ○ B: Nearly. I’ll finish it off tomorrow.
go off = explode
  ○ A bomb went off in the city centre, but fortunately nobody was hurt.
Also an alarm can go off = ring
  ○ Did you hear the alarm go off?
put somebody off (doing something) = cause somebody not to want something or to do something
  ○ We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were put off by the long queue.
  ○ What put you off applying for the job? Was the salary too low?
rip somebody off (informal)
  ○ Did you really pay £2,000 for that painting? I think you were ripped off. (= you paid too much)
show off = try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.
  ○ Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He’s just showing off.
tell somebody off = speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong
  ○ Clare’s mother told her off for wearing dirty shoes in the house.
Exercises

141.1 Change the underlined words. Keep the same meaning, but use a verb + on or off.
1 Did you hear the bomb explode?
   Did you hear the bomb ___________________?
2 The meeting ___________________ longer than I expected.
   The meeting ___________________ longer than I expected.
3 We didn’t stop to rest. We ___________________ walking.
   We didn’t stop to rest. We ___________________.
4 I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
   I ___________________ while I was watching TV.
5 Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to continue working.
   Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to ___________________.
6 The fire alarm rang in the middle of the night.
   The fire alarm ___________________ in the middle of the night.
7 Martin phones me continuously. It’s very annoying.
   Martin ___________________ continuously. It’s very annoying.

141.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.
1 We can’t ___________________ spending money like this. We’ll have nothing left soon.
2 I was standing by the car when suddenly the alarm ___________________.
3 I’m not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to ___________________.
4 ‘Shall I stop the car here?’ ‘No, ___________________.’
5 Bill paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was ___________________.
6 ‘Is Emma enjoying her course at university?’ ‘Yes, she’s ___________________ very well.’
7 I was very tired at work today. I nearly ___________________ at my desk a couple of times.
8 Ben was ___________________ by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.
9 I really like working with my colleagues. We all ___________________ really well together.
10 There was a very loud noise. It sounded like a bomb ___________________.
11 I ___________________ making the same mistake. It’s very frustrating.
12 I’ve just had a coffee break, and now I must ___________________ with my work.
13 Peter is always trying to impress people. He’s always ___________________.
14 We decided not to go to the concert. We were ___________________ by the cost of tickets.

141.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well:

| carry | finish | get | get | get | go | rip | tell |

1 A: How ___________________ in your new job?
   B: Fine, thanks. It’s going very well.
2 A: Have you written the letter you had to write?
   B: I’ve started it. I’ll ___________________ in the morning.
3 A: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40.
   B: £40! Normally it costs about £20. You ___________________.
4 A: Why were you late for work this morning?
   B: I overslept. My alarm clock didn’t ___________________.
5 A: How ___________________ in your interview? Do you think you’ll get the job?
   B: I hope so. The interview was OK.
6 A: Did you stop playing tennis when it started to rain?
   B: No, we ___________________. The rain wasn’t very heavy.
7 A: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly.
   B: Why didn’t their parents ___________________?
8 A: Why does Paul want to leave his job?
   B: He ___________________ his boss.
Phrasal verbs 6   up/down

Compare up and down:

**Put** something up (on a wall etc.)
- I put a picture up on the wall.

**Pick** something up
- There was a letter on the floor. I picked it up and looked at it.

**Stand up**
- Alan stood up and walked out.

**Turn** something up
- I can’t hear the TV. Can you turn it up a bit?

**Take** something down (from a wall etc.)
- I didn’t like the picture, so I took it down.

**Put** something down
- I stopped writing and put down my pen.

**Sit down** / **Bend down** / **Lie down**
- I bent down to tie my shoelace.

**Turn** something down
- The oven is too hot. Turn it down to 150 degrees.

Knock down, cut down etc.

**Knock** down a building, **blow** something down, **cut** something down etc.
- Some old houses were knocked down to make way for the new shopping centre.
- Why did you cut down the tree in your garden?

**Be** knocked down (by a car etc.)
- A man was knocked down by a car and taken to hospital.

**Burn down** = **be destroyed by fire**
- They were able to put out the fire before the house burnt down.

Down = getting less

**Slow down** = go more slowly
- You’re driving too fast. Slow down.

**Calm** (somebody) down = become calmer, make somebody calmer
- Calm down. There’s no point in getting angry.

**Cut down** (on something) = eat, drink or do something less often
- I’m trying to cut down on coffee. I drink too much of it.

Other verbs + down

**Break down** = stop working (for machines, cars, relationships etc.)
- The car broke down and I had to phone for help.
- Their marriage broke down after only a few months.

**Close down** / **Shut down** = stop doing business
- There used to be a shop at the end of the street; it closed down a few years ago.

**Let** somebody down = disappoint them because you didn’t do what they hoped
- You can always rely on Paul. He’ll never let you down.

**Turn** somebody/something down = refuse an application, an offer etc.
- I applied for several jobs, but I was turned down for all of them.
- Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to turn it down.

**Write** something down = write something on paper because you may need the information later
- I can’t remember Tim’s address. I wrote it down, but I can’t find it.
142.1 For each picture, complete the sentences using a verb + up or down. In most sentences you will need other words as well.

1. There used to be a tree next to the house, but we ___________ it down.  
2. There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I ___________ them.  
3. The ceiling was so low, he couldn’t ___________ straight.  
4. She couldn’t hear the radio very well, so she ___________ it on the ground.  
5. While they were waiting for the bus, they ___________ in the storm last week.  
6. We’ve got some new curtains, but we haven’t ___________ yet.  
7. Lisa dropped her keys, so she ___________ and ___________.

142.2 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + down:
calm  let  take  turn  turn  write

1. I don’t like this picture on the wall. I’m going to ___________ it.  
2. The music is too loud. Can you ___________ it down?  
3. David was very angry. I tried to ___________ him down.  
4. Sarah gave me her phone number. I ___________ it down on a piece of paper.  
5. I promised I would help Anna. I don’t want to ___________ her down.  
6. I was offered the job, but I decided I didn’t want it. So I ___________ it down.

142.3 Complete each sentence using a verb (in the correct form) + down.

1. I stopped writing and ___________ my pen.  
2. I was really angry. It took me a long time to ___________ down.  
3. The train ___________ down as it approached the station.  
4. Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she ___________ down.  
5. Our car is very reliable. It has never ___________ down.  
6. I need to spend less money. I’m going to ___________ down on things I don’t really need.  
7. I didn’t play very well. I felt that I had ___________ the other players in the team.  
8. The shop ___________ down because it was losing money.  
9. This is a very ugly building. Many people would like it to ___________ down.  
10. I can’t understand why you ___________ the chance of working abroad for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.  
11. A: Did you see the accident? What happened exactly?  
   B: A man ___________ by a car as he was crossing the road.  
12. Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage ___________ a few years later.
Phrasal verbs 7  up (1)

**go up / come up / walk up (to ...) = approach**
- A man came up to me in the street and asked me for money.

**catch up (with somebody), catch somebody up = move faster than somebody in front of you so that you reach them**
- I’m not ready to go yet. You go on and I’ll catch up with you / I’ll catch you up.

**keep up (with somebody) = continue at the same speed or level**
- You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep up (with you).
- You’re doing well. Keep it up!

**set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = start it**
- The government has set up a committee to investigate the problem.

**take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = start doing it**
- Laura took up photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

**fix up a meeting etc. = arrange it**
- We’ve fixed up a meeting for next Monday.

**grow up = become an adult**
- Ann was born in Hong Kong but grew up in Australia.

**bring up a child = raise, look after a child**
- Her parents died when she was a child and she was brought up by her grandparents.

**clean up / clear up / tidy up something = make it clean, tidy etc.**
- Look at this mess! Who’s going to tidy up? (or tidy it up)

**wash up = wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal**
- I hate washing up. (or I hate doing the washing-up.)

**end up somewhere, end up doing something etc.**
- There was a fight in the street and three men ended up in hospital. (= that’s what happened to these men in the end)
- I couldn’t find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station. (= that’s what happened to me in the end)

**give up = stop trying, give something up = stop doing it**
- Don’t give up. Keep trying!
- Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up. (= stop doing it)

**make up something, be made up of something**
- Children under 16 make up half the population of the city. (= half the population are children under 16)
- Air is made up mainly of nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of ...)

**take up space or time = use space or time**
- Most of the space in the room was taken up by a large table.

**turn up / show up = arrive, appear**
- We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn’t turn up.

**use something up = use all of it so that nothing is left**
- I’m going to make some soup. We have a lot of vegetables and I want to use them up.
Exercises

143.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.

1. A man  **came up to** me in the street and asked me the way to the station.
2. Sue  **rang the doorbell** of the house and rang the doorbell.

3. Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to  **catch up** with them.
4. Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn’t  **keep up** with her.

143.2 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + up:

- end - end - give - give - grow - make - take - take - turn - use - wash

1. I couldn’t find a hotel and  **ended up** sleeping on a bench at the station.
2. I’m feeling very tired now. I’ve  **used up** all my energy.
3. After dinner I  **gave up** and put the dishes away.
4. People often ask children what they want to be when they  **grow up**.
5. We invited Tom to the party, but he didn’t  **turn up**.
6. Two years ago James  **ended up** his studies to be a professional footballer.
7. A: Do you do any sports?
   B: Not at the moment, but I’m thinking of  **taking up** tennis.
8. You don’t have enough determination. You  **gave up** too easily.
9. Karen travelled a lot for a few years and  **settled down** in Canada, where she still lives.
10. I do a lot of gardening. It  **takes up** most of my free time.
11. There are two universities in the city, and students  **travelled** 20 per cent of the population.

143.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs + up (with any other necessary words):

- bring - catch - fix - give - go - keep - keep - make - set - tidy

1. Sue got bored with her job and decided to  **give it up**.
2. I’m not ready yet. You go on and I’ll  **catch up with** you.
3. The room is in a mess. I’d better  **tidy up**.
4. We expect to go away on holiday sometime in July, but we haven’t  **booked** yet.
5. Stephen is having problems at school. He can’t  **keep up** the rest of the class.
6. Although I  **travelled** in the country, I have always preferred cities.
7. Our team started the game well, but we couldn’t  **catch on** and in the end we lost.
8. I saw Mike at the party, so I  **went over** to him and said hello.
9. When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group  **visited** two Americans, three Germans, five Italians and myself.
10. Helen has her own internet website. A friend of hers helped her to  **set up**.
**Phrasal verbs 8  up (2)**

**bring up** a topic etc. = introduce it in a conversation
- I don’t want to hear any more about this matter. Please don’t bring it up again.

**come up** = be introduced in a conversation
- Some interesting points came up in our discussion yesterday.

**come up with** an idea, a suggestion etc. = produce an idea
- Sarah is very creative. She’s always coming up with new ideas.

**make something up** = invent something that is not true
- What Kevin told you about himself wasn’t true. He made it all up.

**cheer up** = be happier, cheer somebody up = make somebody feel happier
- You look so sad! Cheer up!
- Helen is depressed at the moment. What can we do to cheer her up?

**save up** for something / to do something = save money to buy something
- Dan is saving up for a trip round the world.

**clear up** = become bright (for weather)
- It was raining when I got up, but it cleared up later.

**blow up** = explode, blow something up = destroy it with a bomb etc.
- The engine caught fire and blew up.
- The bridge was blown up during the war.

**tear** something up = tear it into pieces
- I didn’t read the letter. I just tore it up and threw it away.

**beat** somebody up = hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt
- A friend of mine was attacked and beaten up a few days ago. He was badly hurt and had to go to hospital.

**break up** / **split up** (with somebody) = separate
- I’m surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have split up. They seemed very happy together.

**do up** a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = fasten, tie etc.
- It’s quite cold. Do up your coat before you go out.

**do up** a building, a room etc. = repair and improve it
- The kitchen looks great now that it has been done up.

**look** something up in a dictionary, encyclopaedia etc.
- If you don’t know the meaning of a word, you can look it up in a dictionary.

**put up with** something = tolerate it
- We live on a busy road, so we have to put up with a lot of noise from the traffic.

**hold up** a person, a plan etc. = delay
- Don’t wait for me. I don’t want to hold you up.
- Plans to build a new factory have been held up because of the company’s financial problems.

**mix up** people/things, get people/things **mixed up** = you think one is the other
- The two brothers look very similar. Many people mix them up. (or … get them mixed up)
144.1 Which goes with which?

| 1. I’m going to tear up | a. a new camera |
| 2. Jane came up with | b. a lot of bad weather |
| 3. Paul is always making up | c. your jacket |
| 4. I think you should do up | d. an interesting suggestion |
| 5. I don’t think you should bring up | e. excuses |
| 6. I’m saving up for | f. -the-letter |
| 7. We had to put up with | g. that subject |

144.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.

1. The weather was horrible this morning, but it’s cleared up now.
2. Amy was late because she was ................... in the traffic.
3. They bought an old house and ................... . It’s really nice now.
4. Joe was really depressed. We took him out for a meal to ...................

144.3 Complete the sentences using a verb (in the correct form) + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1. Some interesting matters ...... came up ...... in our discussion yesterday.
2. The ship ................... and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
3. Two men have been arrested after a man was ................... outside a restaurant last night. The injured man was taken to hospital.
4. ‘Is Robert still going out with Tina?’ ‘No, they’ve ................... .’
5. My hands were so cold, I found it hard to ................... my shoelaces.
6. I wish it would stop raining! I hope it ................... soon.
7. I wanted to phone Chris, but I dialled Laura’s number by mistake. I got their phone numbers ...................

144.4 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as well.

1. Don’t wait for me. I don’t want to ................... you up ...........
2. I don’t know what this word means. I’ll have to ................... ......
3. There’s nothing we can do about the problem. We’ll just have to ................... it.
4. ‘Was that story true?’ ‘No, I ................... it.’
5. I think we should follow Tom’s suggestion. Nobody has ................... a better plan.
6. I hate this photo. I’m going to ...................
7. I’m trying to spend less money at the moment. I’m ................... a trip to Australia.
### Phrasal verbs 9  away/back

#### Compare away and back:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away = away from home</th>
<th>back = back home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We’re going away on holiday today.</td>
<td>We’ll be back in three weeks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away = away from a place, a person etc.</th>
<th>back = back to a place, a person etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove away.</td>
<td>a: I’m going out now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it flew away.</td>
<td>b: What time will you be back?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I dropped the ticket and it blew away in the wind.</td>
<td>After eating at a restaurant, we walked back to our hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The police searched the house and took away a computer.</td>
<td>I’ve still got Jane’s keys. I forgot to give them back to her.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the same way you can say:

- walk away, run away, look away etc.
- go back, come back, get back, take something back etc.

#### Other verbs + away

**get away** = escape, leave with difficulty

- We tried to catch the thief, but she managed to get away.

**get away with** something = do something wrong without being caught

- I parked in a no-parking zone, but I got away with it. I didn’t have to pay a fine.

**keep away (from …)** = don’t go near

- Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

**give** something away = give it to somebody else because you don’t want it any more

- ‘Did you sell your old computer?’ ‘No, I gave it away.’

**put** something away = put it in the place where it is kept, usually out of sight

- When the children had finished playing with their toys, they put them away.

**throw** something away = put it in the rubbish

- I kept the letter, but I threw away the envelope.

#### Other verbs + back

**wave back / smile back / shout back / write back / hit** somebody back

- I waved to her and she waved back.

**call/phone/ring (somebody)** back = return a phone call

- I can’t talk to you now. I’ll call you back in ten minutes.

**get back to** somebody = reply to them by phone etc.

- I sent him an email, but he never got back to me.

**look back (on something)** = think about what happened in the past

- My first job was in a travel agency. I didn’t like it very much at the time but, looking back on it, I learnt a lot and it was a very useful experience.

**pay back** money, pay somebody back

- If you borrow money, you have to pay it back.
- Thanks for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back next week.
145.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

She waved to him and he waved back.
It was windy. I dropped a twenty-pound note and it disappeared.
Sue opened the letter, read it and dropped it in the envelope.
He tried to talk to her, but she just ignored him.
Ellie threw the ball to Ben and he kicked it away.
His shoes were worn out, so he threw them away.

145.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + away or back.
1. I was away all day yesterday. I got back very late.
2. I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must have moved away.
3. 'I'm going out now.' 'OK, what time will you be back?'
4. A man was trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he turned and walked away.
5. I smiled at him, but he didn't look happy.
6. If you cheat in the exam, you might get caught with it. But you might get away with it.
7. Be careful! That's an electric fence. Don't get electrocuted by it.

145.3 Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.
1. The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove away.
2. Here's the money you need. Please drive me back when you can.
3. Don't throw that box away. It could be useful.
4. Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she survived away with it.
5. I'm going out now. I'll be back in about an hour.
6. You should think more about the future; don't fall back all the time.
7. Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and gave it all away.
8. I'll call you as soon as I have the information you need.

145.4 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + away or back.
1. A: Do you still have my keys?  
   B: No. Don't you remember? I gave them back to you yesterday. (give)
2. A: Do you want this magazine?  
   B: No, I've finished with it. You can have it. (throw)
3. A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?  
   B: No, I'm going to take them back to the shop. (take)
4. A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.  
   B: Thanks. I'll pay you back as soon as I can. (pay)
5. A: What happened to all the books you used to have?  
   B: I didn't want them any more, so I gave them away. (give)
6. A: Did you phone Sarah?  
   B: She wasn't there. I left a message asking her to call. (call)
Appendix 1
Regular and irregular verbs

1.1 Regular verbs
If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in -ed. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>clean</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>painted</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the past simple (I cleaned / they finished / she carried etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the past participle to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

Perfect tenses (have/has/had cleaned):
- I have cleaned the windows. (present perfect – see Units 7–8)
- They were still working. They hadn’t finished. (past perfect – see Unit 15)

Passive (is cleaned / was cleaned etc.):
- He was carried out of the room. (past simple passive)
- This gate has just been painted. (present perfect passive) see Units 42–44

1.2 Irregular verbs
When the past simple and past participle do not end in -ed (for example, I saw / I have seen), the verb is irregular.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (infinitive, past simple and past participle) are the same.

For example, hit:
- Don’t hit me. (infinitive)
- Somebody hit me as I came into the room. (past simple)
- I’ve never hit anybody in my life. (past participle – present perfect)
- George was hit on the head by a stone. (past participle – passive)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, tell → told:
- Can you tell me what to do? (infinitive)
- She told me to come back the next day. (past simple)
- Have you told anybody about your new job? (past participle – present perfect)
- I was told to come back the next day. (past participle – passive)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, wake → woke/woken:
- I’ll wake you up. (infinitive)
- I woke up in the middle of the night. (past simple)
- The baby has woken up. (past participle – present perfect)
- I was woken up by a loud noise. (past participle – passive)

1.3 The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned or burnt</td>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled or smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed or dreamt [dremt]*</td>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelled or spelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leaned or leant [lent]*</td>
<td>spill</td>
<td>spilled or spilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned or learnt</td>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>spoiled or spoilt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

So you can say:
- I leant out of the window. or I leaned out of the window.
- The dinner has been spoiled. or The dinner has been spoilt.

In British English the irregular form (burnt/learnt etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.
### 1.4 List of irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>fled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got/gotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek</td>
<td>sought</td>
<td>sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew</td>
<td>sewed</td>
<td>sewn/sewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown/showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>shrank</td>
<td>shrank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide</td>
<td>slid</td>
<td>slid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>sprung</td>
<td>sprung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>stuck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sting</td>
<td>stung</td>
<td>stung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stink</td>
<td>stank</td>
<td>stank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td>struck</td>
<td>struck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swear</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>sworn</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swing</td>
<td>swung</td>
<td>swung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep</td>
<td>wept</td>
<td>wept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

293
### Appendix 2
Present and past tenses

#### Simple

**Present**
- I do
  - Present simple (→ Units 2–4)
    - Ann often **plays** tennis.
    - I **work** in a bank, but I **don't enjoy** it much.
    - Do you **like** parties?
    - It **doesn't rain** so much in summer.

**Past**
- I did
  - Past simple (→ Units 5–6, 13–14)
    - Ann **played** tennis yesterday afternoon.
    - I **lost** my key a few days ago.
    - There was a film on TV last night, but we **didn't watch** it.
    - What **did you do** when you finished work yesterday?

**Perfect**
- I have done
  - Present perfect simple (→ Units 7–8, 10–14)
    - Ann **has played** tennis many times.
    - I've **lost** my key. **Have you seen** it anywhere?
    - How long **have you and Sam known** each other?
    - A: Is it still raining?  
      B: No, it **has stopped**.
    - The house is dirty. I **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.

- I had done
  - Past perfect (→ Unit 15)
    - It wasn't her first game of tennis. She **had played** many times before.
    - They couldn't get into the house because they **had lost** the key.
    - The house was dirty because I **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.

**Continuous**
- I am doing
  - Present continuous (→ Units 1, 3–4)
    - 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **playing** tennis.'
    - Please don't disturb me now. I'm **working**.
    - Hello. Are you **enjoying** the party?
    - It **isn't raining** at the moment.

- I have been doing
  - Present perfect continuous (→ Units 9–11)
    - Ann is tired. She **has been playing** tennis.
    - You're out of breath. **Have you been running**?
    - How long **have you been learning** English?
    - It's still raining. **It has been raining** all day.
    - I **haven't been feeling** well recently. Perhaps I should go to the doctor.

- I was doing
  - Past continuous (→ Unit 6)
    - I saw Ann at the sports centre yesterday. She **was playing** tennis.
    - I dropped my key when I **was trying** to open the door.
    - The television was on, but we **weren't watching** it.
    - What **were you doing** at this time yesterday?

- I had been doing
  - Past perfect continuous (→ Unit 16)
    - Ann was tired yesterday evening because she **had been playing** tennis in the afternoon.
    - James decided to go to the doctor because he **hadn't been feeling** well.

---

For the passive, see Units 42–44.
Appendix 3
The future

3.1 List of future forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future form</th>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>(→ Unit 19 A)</th>
<th>(→ Unit 19B)</th>
<th>(→ Units 20, 23)</th>
<th>(→ Units 21–23)</th>
<th>(→ Unit 24)</th>
<th>(→ Unit 24)</th>
<th>(→ Unit 25)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm leaving</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My train leaves at 9.30.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm going to leave tomorrow.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll leave tomorrow.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll be leaving tomorrow.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll have left by this time tomorrow.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow.</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19 A)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 19B)</td>
<td>(→ Units 20, 23)</td>
<td>(→ Units 21–23)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 24)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 25)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Future actions

We use the present continuous (I'm doing) for arrangements:

- I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- 'When are they getting married?' ‘On 24 July.’

We use the present simple (I leave / it leaves etc.) for timetables, programmes etc.:

- My train leaves at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
- What time does the film begin?

We use (be) going to ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:

- I've decided not to stay here any longer. I'm going to leave tomorrow. (or I'm leaving tomorrow.)
- 'Your shoes are dirty.' ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.’

We use will ('ll) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:

- a: I don't want you to stay here any longer.
- b: OK. I'll leave tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking)
- That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
- I won't tell anybody what happened. I promise. (won't = will not)

3.3 Future happenings and situations

Most often we use will to talk about future happenings ('something will happen') or situations ('something will be'):

- I don't think John is happy at work. I think he'll leave soon.
- This time next year I'll be in Japan. Where will you be?

We use (be) going to when the situation now shows what is going to happen in the future:

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. (you can see the clouds now)

3.4 Future continuous and future perfect

Will be (doing = will be in the middle of (doing something):

- This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on a beach or swimming in the sea.

We also use will be -ing for future actions (see Unit 24C):

- What time will you be leaving tomorrow?

We use will have (done) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:

- I won't be here this time tomorrow. I'll have already left.

3.5 We use the present (not will) after when/if/while/before etc. (see Unit 25):

- I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow. (not before I will leave)
- When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
- If we don't hurry, we'll be late.
### Appendix 4

**Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.)**

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21–41.

#### 4.1

**Compare can/could etc. for actions:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>I can go out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me)</td>
<td>I couldn't go out tonight. (= I wasn't able)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>I could go out tonight, but I'm not very keen.</td>
<td>I couldn't go out last night. (= I wasn't able)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can or may</td>
<td>Can I go out tonight? (= do you allow me?)</td>
<td>May I go out tonight? (= do you expect me to?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>I must go out tonight. (= it is necessary)</td>
<td>I mustn't go out tonight. (= it is necessary that I do not go out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needn't</td>
<td>I needn't go out tonight. (= it is not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 5
Short forms (I'm / you've / didn't etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc. (short forms or contractions) rather than I am / you have / did not etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (‘) for the missing letter(s):

I’m = I am 
you’re = you have  didn’t = did not

5.2 List of short forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>‘m = am</th>
<th>’s = is or has</th>
<th>’re = are</th>
<th>’ve = have</th>
<th>’ll = will</th>
<th>’d = would or had</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m</td>
<td>he’s</td>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>you’re</td>
<td>we’re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve</td>
<td>I’ll</td>
<td>he’ll</td>
<td>she’ll</td>
<td>you’ll</td>
<td>we’ll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d</td>
<td>I’ll</td>
<td>he’d</td>
<td>she’d</td>
<td>you’d</td>
<td>we’d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

’s can be is or has:

- She’s ill. (= She is ill.)
- She’s gone away. (= She has gone)

but let’s = let us:

- Let’s go now. (= Let us go)

’d can be would or had:

- I’d see a doctor if I were you. (= I would see)
- I’d never seen her before. (= I had never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially ‘s) after question words (who/what etc.) and after that/there/here:

- who’s  what’s  where’s  how’s  that’s  there’s  who’ll  there’ll  who’d
- Who’s that woman over there? (= who is)
- What’s happened? (= what has)
- Do you think there’ll be many people at the party? (= there will)

We also use short forms (especially ‘s) after a noun:

- Katherine’s going out tonight. (= Katherine is)
- My best friend’s just got married. (= My best friend has)

You cannot use ’m / ’s / ’re / ’ve / ’ll / ’d at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ (not Yes, I’m.)
- Do you know where she is? (not Do you know where she’s?)

5.3 Negative short forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>isn’t</th>
<th>don’t</th>
<th>haven’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(= is not)</td>
<td>(= do not)</td>
<td>(= have not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t</td>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td>hasn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= are not)</td>
<td>(= does not)</td>
<td>(= has not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>hadn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= was not)</td>
<td>(= did not)</td>
<td>(= had not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= were not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>couldn’t</td>
<td>mustn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= cannot)</td>
<td>(= could not)</td>
<td>(= must not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>wouldn’t</td>
<td>needn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= will not)</td>
<td>(= would not)</td>
<td>(= need not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan’t</td>
<td>shouldn’t</td>
<td>daren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= shall not)</td>
<td>(= should not)</td>
<td>(= dare not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative short forms for is and are can be:

- he isn’t / she isn’t / it isn’t  or  he’s not / she’s not / it’s not
- you aren’t / we aren’t / they aren’t  or  you’re not / we’re not / they’re not
Appendix 6
Spelling

6.1 Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun + -s/ -es (plural)</th>
<th>books</th>
<th>ideas</th>
<th>matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + -s/ -es (after he/she/it)</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>enjoys</td>
<td>washes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + -ing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>enjoying</td>
<td>washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + -ed</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
<td>washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -er (comparative)</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>quicker</td>
<td>brighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -est (superlative)</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td>quickest</td>
<td>brightest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -ly (adverb)</td>
<td>cheaply</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>brightly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + -s/-es

The ending is -es when the word ends in -s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bus/buses</th>
<th>miss/misses</th>
<th>wash/washes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>match/matches</td>
<td>search/searches</td>
<td>box/boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>potato/potatoes</th>
<th>tomato/tomatoes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do/does</td>
<td>go/goes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Words ending in -y (baby, carry, easy etc.)

If a word ends in a consonant* + y (-by/-ry/-sy/-vy etc.)

| y changes to ie before the ending -s: |
| baby/babies | story/stories | country/countries | secretary/secretaries |
| hurry/hurries | study/studies | apply/applies | try/tries |
| y changes to i before the ending -ed: |
| hurry/hurried | study/studied | apply/applied | try/tried |
| y changes to i before the endings -er and -est: |
| easy/easier/easiest | heavy/heavier/heaviest | lucky/luckier/luckiest |
| y changes to i before the ending -ly: |
| easy/easily | heavy/heavily | temporary/temporarily |

y does not change before -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hurrying</th>
<th>studying</th>
<th>applying</th>
<th>trying</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

y does not change if the word ends in a vowel* + y (-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy):

| play/plays/played | monkey/monkeys | enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed | buy/buys |

An exception is: day/daily

Note also: pay/paid | lay/laid | say/said |

6.4 Verbs ending in -ie (die, lie, tie)

If a verb ends in -ie, ie changes to y before the ending -ing:

| die/dying | lie/lying | tie/tying |

* a e i o u are vowel letters.

The other letters (b c d f g etc.) are consonant letters.
6.5 Words ending in -e (hope, dance, wide etc.)

**Verbs**
If a verb ends in -e, we leave out e before the ending -ing:
- hope/hoping
- smile/smiling
- dance/dancing
- confuse/confusing

Exceptions are be/being
and verbs ending in -ee:
- see/seeing
- agree/agreeing

If a verb ends in -e, we add -d for the past (of regular verbs):
- hope/hoped
- smile/smiled
- dance/danced
- confuse/confused

**Adjectives and adverbs**
If an adjective ends in -e, we add -r and -st for the comparative and superlative:
- wide/wider/widest
- late/later/latest
- large/larger/largest

If an adjective ends in -e, we keep e before -ly in the adverb:
- polite/politely
- extreme/extremely
- absolute/absolutely

If an adjective ends in -le (simple, terrible etc.), the adverb ending is -ply, -bly etc.:
- simple/simply
- terrible/terribly
- reasonable/reasonably

6.6 Doubling consonants (stop/stopping/stopped, wet/wetter/wettest etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in vowel + consonant. For example:
- stop
- plan
- rub
- big
- wet
- thin
- prefer
- regret

Before the endings -ing/-ed/-er/-est, we double the consonant at the end. So p → pp, n → nn etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Double Consonant</th>
<th>Ending</th>
<th>Double Consonant</th>
<th>Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>p → pp</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>p → pp</td>
<td>stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>planning</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td>b → bb</td>
<td>rubbing</td>
<td>b → bb</td>
<td>rubbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>g → gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>g → gg</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>wetter</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the word has more than one syllable (prefer, begin etc.), we double the consonant at the end only if the final syllable is stressed:
- preFER / preferring / preferred
- reGRET / regretting / regretted
- perMIT / permitting / permitted
- beGIN / beginning

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do not double the final consonant:
- VISt / visiting / visited
- HAPpen / happening / happened
- deVELop / developing / developed
- reMEMber / remembering / remembered

In British English, verbs ending in -l have -ll- before -ing and -ed whether the final syllable is stressed or not:
- travel / travelling / travelled
- cancel / cancelling / cancelled

For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that
we do not double the final consonant if the word ends in two consonants (-rt, -lp, -ng etc.):
- start / starting / started
- help / helping / helped
- long / longer / longest

we do not double the final consonant if there are two vowel letters before it (-oil, -eed etc.):
- boil / boiling / boiled
- need / needing / needed
- explain / explaining / explained
- loud / louder / loudest
- quiet / quieter / quietest

we do not double y or w at the end of words. (At the end of words y and w are not consonants.)
- stay / staying / stayed
- grow / growing
- new / newer / newest
Appendix 7
American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>BRITISH</th>
<th>AMERICAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7A–B</td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> or <em>past simple</em> can be used for new or recent happenings. The <em>present perfect</em> is more common:</td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> or <em>past simple</em> can be used for new or recent happenings. The <em>past simple</em> is more common:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’ve lost my key. <em>Have you seen</em> it? (or I lost my key. <em>Did you see</em> it?)</td>
<td>I lost my key. <em>Did you see</em> it? (or I’ve lost my key. <em>Have you seen</em> it?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sally isn’t here. <em>She’s gone</em> out.</td>
<td>Sally isn’t here. <em>She went</em> out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> or <em>past simple</em> can be used with <em>just, already</em> and <em>yet</em>. The <em>present perfect</em> is more common:</td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> or <em>past simple</em> can be used with <em>just, already</em> and <em>yet</em>. The <em>past simple</em> is more common:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’m not hungry. <em>I’ve just had</em> lunch. (or I <em>just had</em> lunch.)</td>
<td>I’m not hungry. <em>I just had</em> lunch. (or I’ve <em>just had</em> lunch.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Have you finished</em> your work yet?</td>
<td><em>Did you finish</em> your work yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17C</td>
<td>British speakers usually say:</td>
<td>American speakers say:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>have</em> a bath <em>have</em> a shower</td>
<td><em>take</em> a bath <em>take</em> a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>have</em> a break <em>have</em> a holiday</td>
<td><em>take</em> a break <em>take</em> a vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21D</td>
<td>Shall or <em>shall</em> can be used with <em>I/we:</em></td>
<td>Shall is unusual:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I will/shall</em> be late this evening.</td>
<td><em>I will</em> be late this evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Shall I ...? and shall we ...?</em> are used to ask for advice etc.:</td>
<td><em>Should I ...? and should we ...?</em> are more usual to ask for advice etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Which way shall we go?</em></td>
<td><em>Which way should we go?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>British speakers use <em>can’t</em> to say they believe something is not probable:</td>
<td>American speakers use <em>must not</em> in this situation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sarah hasn’t contacted me. She <em>can’t</em> have got my message.</td>
<td>Sarah hasn’t contacted me. She <em>must not</em> have gotten my message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>You can use <em>needn’t</em> or <em>don’t need to</em>:</td>
<td><em>Needn’t</em> is unusual. The usual form is <em>don’t need to</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>We needn’t</em> hurry.</td>
<td><em>We don’t need to</em> hurry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>or</em> <em>We don’t need to</em> hurry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34A–B</td>
<td>After <em>insist, demand</em> etc. you can use <em>should</em>:</td>
<td>The <em>subjunctive</em> is normally used. <em>Should</em> is unusual after <em>insist, demand</em> etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I insisted that he <em>should apologise</em>.</td>
<td>I insisted that he <em>apologize</em>.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Many people are demanding that something <em>should be</em> done about the problem.</td>
<td><em>Many people are demanding that something be done</em> about the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51B</td>
<td>British speakers generally use <em>Have you? / Isn’t she?</em> etc.:</td>
<td>American speakers generally use <em>You have? / She isn’t?</em> etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A: Lisa isn’t very well today. B: <em>Isn’t she?</em> What’s wrong with her?</td>
<td>A: Lisa isn’t very well today. B: <em>She isn’t?</em> What’s wrong with her?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70B</td>
<td><em>Accommodation</em> is usually uncountable:</td>
<td><em>Accommodation</em> can be countable:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There isn’t enough <em>accommodation</em>.</td>
<td>There aren’t enough <em>accommodations</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Many verbs ending in -ise in British English (apologise/organise/specialise etc.) are spelt with -ize (apologize/organize/specialize etc.) in American English.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>BRITISH</th>
<th>AMERICAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>The verbs in this section (burn, spell etc.) can be regular or irregular (burned or burnt, spelled or spelt etc.).</td>
<td>The verbs in this section are normally regular (burned, spelled etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The past participle of get is got:</td>
<td>The past participle of get is gotten:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Your English has got much better. (= has become much better)</td>
<td>Your English has gotten much better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have got is also an alternative to have:</td>
<td>Have got = have (as in British English):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’ve got two brothers. (= I have two brothers.)</td>
<td>I’ve got two brothers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>British spelling:</td>
<td>American spelling:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>travel → travelling / travelled</td>
<td>travel → traveling / traveled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cancel → cancelling / cancelled</td>
<td>cancel → canceling / canceled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These exercises are divided into the following sections:

| Present and past  | Present and past (Units 1–6) | Present and past (Units 1–14) | Present and past (Units 1–17) | Past continuous and **used to** (Units 6, 18) | The future (Units 19–25) | Past, present and future (Units 1–25) | Modal verbs (**can/must/would** etc.) (Units 26–36) | if (conditional) (Units 25, 38–40) | Passive (Units 42–45) | Reported speech (Units 47–48, 50) | -ing and to (Units 53–66) | a/an and the (Units 69–78) | Pronouns and determiners (Units 82–91) | Adjectives and adverbs (Units 98–108) | Conjunctions (Units 25, 38, 112–118) | Prepositions (time) (Units 12, 119–122) | Prepositions (position etc.) (Units 123–128) | Noun/adjective + preposition (Units 129–131) | Verb + preposition (Units 132–136) | Phrasal verbs (Units 137–145) | Exercis**e 1** | Exercis**e 2–4** | Exercis**e 5–8** | Exercis**e 9** | Exercis**e 10–13** | Exercis**e 14–15** | Exercis**e 16–18** | Exercis**e 19–21** | Exercis**e 22–24** | Exercis**e 25** | Exercis**e 26–28** | Exercis**e 29** | Exercis**e 30** | Exercis**e 31** | Exercis**e 32** | Exercis**e 33** | Exercis**e 34** | Exercis**e 35** | Exercis**e 36** | Exercis**e 37–41** |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

### Present and past exercises

1. **Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (I do), present continuous (I am doing), past simple (I did) or past continuous (I was doing).**

1. We can go out now. **It isn’t raining** (it / not / rain) any more.
2. Katherine **was waiting** (wait) for me when I **arrived** (I / arrive).
3. **I / get** hungry. Let’s go and have something to eat.
4. What **you / do** in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
5. The weather was horrible when **we / arrive**. It was cold and **it / rain** hard.
6. Louise usually **phone** me on Fridays, but **she / not / phone** last Friday.
7. **A:** When I last saw you, **you / think** of moving to a new flat. **B:** That’s right, but in the end **I / decide** to stay where I was.
8. Why **you / look** at me like that? What’s the matter?
9. It’s usually dry here at this time of the year. **it / not / rain** much.
10. **Sorry I’m late.** My phone **ring** three times while **I / get** ready to go out.
11. Lisa was busy when **we / go** to see her yesterday. She had an exam today and **she / prepare** for it. **we / not / want** to disturb her, so **we / not / stay** very long.
12. When I first **tell** Tom what happened, **he / not / believe** me. **he / think** that **I / joke**.
2 Which is correct?
1. Everything is going well. We <u>-didn’t have</u> / haven’t had any problems so far.
   (haven’t had is correct)
2. Lisa <u>didn’t go</u> / hasn’t gone to work yesterday. She wasn’t feeling well.
3. Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4. I <u>went</u> / have been to New Zealand last year.
5. I <u>didn’t hear</u> / haven’t heard from Jess recently. I hope she’s OK.
6. I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn’t usually like that.
7. Jane had a book open in front of her, but she <u>didn’t read</u> / wasn’t reading it.
8. I wasn’t very busy. I <u>didn’t have</u> / wasn’t having much to do.
9. It begins / It’s beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?
10. After finishing school, Tim <u>got</u> / has got a job in a factory.
11. When Sue heard the news, she <u>wasn’t</u> / hasn’t been very pleased.
12. This is a nice restaurant, isn’t it? Is this the first time you are / you’ve been here?
13. I need a new job. I’m doing / I’ve been doing the same job for too long.
14. ‘Anna has gone out.’ ‘Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?’
15. ‘You looked tired.’ ‘Yes, I’ve played / I’ve been playing basketball.’
16. Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17. I’d like to see Tina again. It’s a long time since I saw her / that I didn’t see her.
18. Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

3 Complete each question using a suitable verb.
1. A: I’m looking for Paul. <u>Have</u> you seen him?
   B: Yes, he was here a moment ago.
2. A: Why <u>did</u> you go to bed so early last night?
   B: I was feeling very tired.
3. A: Where <u>does</u> your brother work?
   B: Just to the shop at the end of the street. I’ll be back in a few minutes.
4. A: <u>Do</u> you watch TV every evening?
   B: No, only if there’s something special on.
5. A: Your house is very beautiful. How long <u>have</u> you lived here?
   B: Nearly ten years.
6. A: How was your holiday? <u>Was</u> it a nice time?
   B: Yes, thanks. It was great.
7. A: <u>Have</u> you heard from Sarah recently?
   B: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.
8. A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What <u>did</u> she wear?
   B: A red sweater and black jeans.
9. A: I’m sorry to keep you waiting. <u>Have</u> you been waiting long?
   B: No, only about ten minutes.
10. A: How long <u>have</u> you been trying to get to work in the morning?
    B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.
11. A: <u>Have</u> you ever ridden a horse before?
    B: No, this is the first time. I’m a little nervous.
12. A: <u>Have</u> you ever been to the United States?
    B: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.
Additional exercises

4 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 A: What’s the new restaurant like? Is it good?
   B: I’ve no idea. I’ve never been there.

2 A: How well do you know Ben?
   B: Very well. We’ve been friends since we were children.

3 A: Did you enjoy your holiday?
   B: Yes, it was really good. It’s the best holiday I’ve ever had.

4 A: Is David still here?
   B: No, I’m afraid he isn’t. He’s been out for about ten minutes.

5 A: I like your suit. I haven’t seen it before.
   B: It’s new. It’s the first time I’ve seen it.

6 A: How did you cut your knee?
   B: I slipped and fell when I was playing tennis.

7 A: Do you ever go swimming?
   B: Not these days. I haven’t been swimming for a long time.

8 A: How often do you go to the cinema?
   B: Very rarely. It’s nearly a year since I went to the cinema.

9 A: I’ve bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
   B: Yes, they’re very nice. Where did you buy them?

Present and past

5 Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

Yesterday afternoon Sarah went to the station to meet Paul. When she arrived there, Paul was waiting for her. His train had arrived early.

When I got home, Ben was (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he wasn’t watching it. He fell asleep and snored loudly. I turned the TV off and just then he woke up.
**Additional exercises**

3. Last night I ______________________________________ (just / go) to bed and ______________________________________ (read) a book when suddenly I ______________________________________ (hear) a noise. I ______________________________________ (get) up to see what it was, but I ______________________________________ (not / see) anything, so I ______________________________________ (go) back to bed.

4. Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost ______________________________________ (miss) the plane. She ______________________________________ (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly ______________________________________ (realise) that she ______________________________________ (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she ______________________________________ (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She ______________________________________ (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.

5. I ______________________________________ (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I ______________________________________ (walk) through the park. They ______________________________________ (be) to the sports centre where they ______________________________________ (play) tennis. They ______________________________________ (go) to a cafe and ______________________________________ (invite) me to join them, but I ______________________________________ (arrange) to meet another friend and ______________________________________ (not / have) time.

6. Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1. Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath.  
   (she / run) __________ She has been running __________.

2. Where's my bag? I left it under this chair.  
   (somebody / take / it) __________

3. We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year.  
   (they / only / know / each other / a few weeks) __________

4. It's still raining. I wish it would stop.  
   (it / rain / all day) __________

5. Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was.  
   (I / dream) __________
6. I wasn’t hungry at lunchtime, so I didn’t have anything to eat.
   (I / have / a big breakfast)

7. Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea.
   (they / go / there for years)

8. I’ve got a headache.
   (I / have / it / since I got up)

9. Next month Gary is going to run in a marathon.
   (he / train / very hard for it)

---

**Additional exercises**

**Put the verb into the correct form.**

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.

**Sarah:** Hello, Joe. (1) ______________________ (I / not / see)
   you for ages. How are you?
**Joe:** I’m fine. How about you?
   (2) ______________________ (you / look) good.

**Sarah:** Thanks. You too.
   So, (3) ______________________ (you / go) somewhere or
   (4) ______________________ (you / meet) somebody?

**Joe:** (5) ______________________ (I / go) to London for a business meeting.

**Sarah:** Oh. (6) ______________________ (you / often / go) away on business?

**Joe:** Quite often, yes. And you? Where (7) ______________________ (you / go)?

**Sarah:** Nowhere. (8) ______________________ (I / meet) a friend.
   Unfortunately her train (9) ______________________ (be) delayed –
   (10) ______________________ (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.

**Joe:** How are your children?

**Sarah:** They’re all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) ______________________ (just / start)
   school.

**Joe:** How (12) ______________________ (she / get) on?
   (13) ______________________ (she / like) it?

**Sarah:** Yes, (14) ______________________ (she / think) it’s great.

**Joe:** (15) ______________________ (you / work) at the moment? The last time I
   (16) ______________________ (speak) to you, (17) ______________________
   (you / work) in a travel agency.

**Sarah:** That’s right. Unfortunately the company (18) ______________________ (go) out
   of business a couple of months after (19) ______________________ (I / start) work
   there, so (20) ______________________ (I / lose) my job.

**Joe:** And (21) ______________________ (you / not / have) a job since then?

**Sarah:** Not a permanent job. (22) ______________________ (I / have) a few temporary
   jobs. By the way, (23) ______________________ (you / see) Matt recently?

**Joe:** Matt? He’s in Canada.

**Sarah:** Really? How long (24) ______________________ (he / be) in Canada?

**Joe:** About a year now. (25) ______________________ (I / see) him a few days before
   (26) ______________________ (he / go). (27) ______________________ (he / be)
   unemployed for months, so (28) ______________________ (he / decide) to try his
   luck somewhere else. (29) ______________________ (he / really / look forward)
   to going.

**Sarah:** So, what (30) ______________________ (he / do) there?

**Joe:** I have no idea. (31) ______________________ (I / not / hear) from him since
   (32) ______________________ (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train.
   It was really nice to see you again.

**Sarah:** You too. Bye. Have a good trip.

**Joe:** Thanks. Bye.
**Additional exercises**

**8. Put the verb into the most suitable form.**

1. Who _______________________ (invent) the bicycle?
2. ‘Do you still have a headache?’ ‘No, ________________________ (it / go). I’m OK now.’
3. I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else ______________________ (go) home when I ______________________ (leave).
4. What ______________________ (you / do) last weekend? ______________________ (you / go) away?
5. I like your car. How long ______________________ (you / have) it?
6. It’s a shame the trip was cancelled. I ______________________ (look) forward to it.
7. Jane is an experienced teacher and loves her job. ______________________ (she / teach) for 15 years.
8. ______________________ (I / buy) a new jacket last week, but ______________________ (I / not / wear) it yet.
9. A few days ago ______________________ (I / see) a man at a party whose face ______________________ (be) very familiar. At first I couldn’t think where ______________________ (I / see) him before. Then suddenly ______________________ (I / remember) who ______________________ (it / be).
10. ______________________ (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? ______________________ (she / be) a writer who ______________________ (die) in 1976. ______________________ (she / write) more than 70 detective novels. ______________________ (you / read) any of them?

A: What ______________________ (this word / mean)?
B: I’ve no idea. ______________________ (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.

A: ______________________ (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?
B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, ______________________ (it / already / start).

13. I went to Sarah’s room and ______________________ (knock) on the door, but there ______________________ (be) no answer. Either ______________________ (she / go) out or ______________________ (she / not / want) to see anyone.

14. Patrick asked me how to use the photocopier. ______________________ (he / never / use) it before, so ______________________ (he / not / know) what to do.

15. Lisa ______________________ (go) for a swim after work yesterday. ______________________ (she / need) some exercise because ______________________ (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

---

**Past continuous and used to**

**9. Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to ... . Use the verb in brackets.**

1. I haven’t been to the cinema for ages now. We ______________________ (go) a lot. (go)
2. Ann didn’t see me wave to her. She ______________________ (look) in the other direction. (look)
3. I ______________________ a lot, but I don’t use my car very much these days. (drive)
4. I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She ______________________ too fast. (drive)
5. Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they ______________________ in the same bank. (work)
6. When I was a child, I ______________________ a lot of bad dreams. (have)
7. I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He ______________________ in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)
8. ‘Where were you yesterday afternoon?’ ‘I ______________________ volleyball.’ (play)
9. ‘Do you do any sports?’ ‘Not these days, but I ______________________ volleyball.’ (play)
10. George looked very nice at the party. He ______________________ a very smart suit. (wear)
The future

10 What do you say to your friend in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to or will (I'll).

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.
   FRIEND: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?
   YOU: I'm going to Jamaica. (I / go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.
   FRIEND: Shall we meet on Friday morning?
   YOU: I can't on Friday. (I / meet)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Spain. You have decided to hire a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.
   FRIEND: How do you plan to travel round Spain? By train?
   YOU: No, we will go by car. (we / hire)

4 Your friend has two young children. She wants to go out tomorrow evening. You offer to look after the children.
   FRIEND: I want to go out tomorrow evening, but I don't have a babysitter.
   YOU: That's no problem. (I / look after)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.
   FRIEND: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
   YOU: No, I already have lunch planned. (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and your friend are looking at the menu. Maybe your friend has decided what to have. You ask her/him.
   YOU: What are you having? (you / have)
   FRIEND: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and your friend is having trouble reading. You decide to turn on the light.
   FRIEND: It's getting a bit dark, isn't it? It's difficult to read.
   YOU: Yes, I think it is. (I / turn on)

8 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and you decide to turn on the light. You stand up and walk towards the light switch.
   FRIEND: What are you doing?
   YOU: I'm going to turn the light on. (I / turn on)

11 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Use a present tense (simple or continuous), will (I'll) or shall.

Conversational 1 (in the morning)

JENNY: (1) Are you doing... (you / do) anything tomorrow evening, Helen?
HELEN: No, why?
JENNY: Well, would you like to go to the cinema? *Strangers on a Plane* is on. I want to see it, but I don't want to go alone.
HELEN: OK, (2) I'll come (I / come) with you. What time (3) we meet (we / meet)?
JENNY: Well, the film (4) starts (start) at 8.45, so (5) I'll meet (I / meet) you at about 8.30 outside the cinema, OK?
HELEN: Fine. (6) I'll see (I / see) Tina later this evening.
JENNY: Yes, do that. (8) I'll see (I / see) you tomorrow then. Bye.
Conversation 2 (later the same day)

HELEN: Jenny and I (9) __________________________ (go) to the cinema tomorrow night to see *Strangers on a Plane*. Why don’t you come too?
TINA: I’d love to come. What time (10) __________________________ (the film / start)?
HELEN: 8.45.
TINA: (11) __________________________ (you / meet) outside the cinema?
HELEN: Yes, at 8.30. Is that OK for you?
TINA: Yes, (12) __________________________ (I / be) there at 8.30.

12 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

1 A has decided to learn a language.

A: I’ve decided to try and learn a foreign language.
B: Have you? Which language (1) __________________________ (you / learn)?
A: Spanish.
B: (2) __________________________ (you / do) a course?
A: Yes, (3) __________________________ (it / start) next week.
B: That’s great. I’m sure (4) __________________________ (you / enjoy) it.
A: I hope so. But I think (5) __________________________ (it / be) difficult.

2 A wants to know about B’s holiday plans.

A: I hear (1) __________________________ (you / go) on holiday soon.
B: That’s right. (2) __________________________ (we / go) to Finland.
A: I hope (3) __________________________ (you / have) a nice time.
B: Thanks. (4) __________________________ (I / send) you a postcard and
    (5) __________________________ (I / get) in touch with you when
    (6) __________________________ (I / get) back.

3 A invites B to a party.

A: (1) __________________________ (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?
B: On Saturday? I’m not sure. Some friends of mine (2) __________________________ (come)
    to stay with me next week, but I think (3) __________________________ (they / leave)
    by Saturday. But if (4) __________________________ (they / be) still here,
    (5) __________________________ (I / not / be) able to come to the party.
A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) __________________________ (you / know).
B: Right. (7) __________________________ (I / call) you during the week.

4 A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.

A: Well, what time (1) __________________________ (we / meet)?
B: Come to the cafe by the station at 4 o’clock.
(2) __________________________ (I / wait) for you
when (3) __________________________ (you / arrive).
(4) __________________________ (I / sit) by the window
and (5) __________________________ (I / wear) a bright green sweater.
A: OK. (6) __________________________ (Agent 307 / come) too?
B: No, she can’t be there.
A: Oh. (7) __________________________ (I / bring) the documents?
B: Yes. (8) __________________________ (I / explain) everything when
(9) __________________________ (I / see) you. And don’t be late.
A: OK. (10) __________________________ (I / try) to be on time.
Additional exercises

Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

- present continuous (I am doing)
- present simple (I do)
- going to (I'm going to do)
- will (I'll) / won't
- shall

1. I feel a bit hungry. I think .................................................. (I / have) something to eat.
2. Why are you putting on your coat? ...................................(you / go) somewhere?
3. What time ................................................................. (I / phone) you tonight? About 7.30?
4. Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. ........................................ (it / land).
5. We must do something soon, before ...........................................(it / be) too late.
6. I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. ........................................ (I / miss) you when
   ........................................................................................
   .............................................................. (I / give) you my phone number? If ........................................
   (I / give) you my number, ...........................................(you / call) me?
7. Are you still watching that programme? What time ........................................ (it / end)?
8. ................................................................. (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. A friend of mine
   ................................................................. (get) married.
9. I'm not ready yet. ................................................................. (I / tell) you when
   ................................................................. (I / be) ready. I promise ...........................................
   (I / not / be) very long.
10. A: Where are you going?
    B: To the hairdresser's. ...................................................(I / have) my hair cut.
11. A: B: She was very rude to me. I refuse to speak to her again until
    ................................................................. (she / apologise).
12. I wonder where ..................................................... (we / live) ten years from now?
13. I: A: B: Do you plan to do when ............................................ (you / finish) your course at
    college?

Use your own ideas to complete B’s sentences.

1. A: How did the accident happen?
   B: I ...................................................... (was / going) too fast and couldn’t stop in time.
2. A: Is that a new camera?
   B: No, I ..................................................... it a long time.
3. A: Is that a new computer?
   B: Yes, I ..................................................... it a few weeks ago.
4. A: I can’t talk to you right now. You can see I’m very busy.
   B: OK. I ..................................................... back in about half an hour.
5. A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
   B: No, it’s the first time I ..................................................... here.
6. A: Do you do any sport?
   B: No, I ..................................................... football, but I gave it up.
7. A: I’m sorry I’m late.
   B: That's OK. I ..................................................... long.
8. A: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?
   B: No, I ..................................................... there twice before.
9. A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
   B: Yes, I ..................................................... to a party on Saturday night.
10. A: Do you know what Steve’s doing these days?
    B: No, I ..................................................... him for ages.
11. A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
    B: No, I ..................................................... by then.
Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.

Subject: 
To: 

Hi

(1) I’ve just arrived. (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2) 
(I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) (I / begin) to think about coming home. Everything (4) (I / see) so far (5) (be) really interesting, and (6) (I / meet) some really kind people.

(7) (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8) (I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and hospitable and although (9) (I / plan) to stay only a couple of days, (10) (I / end up) staying more than a week.

(11) (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here. 
(12) (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) (meet) some really interesting people – everybody was really friendly. 

So now I’m here, and (14) (I / stay) here for a few days before (15) (I / continue) up to Canada. I’m not sure exactly when (16) (I / get) to Winnipeg – it depends what happens while (17) (I / be) here. But (18) (I / let) you know as soon as (19) (I / know) myself.

(20) (I / stay) with a family here – they’re friends of some people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) (we / visit) some people they know who (22) (build) a house in the mountains. It isn’t finished yet, but (23) (it / be) interesting to see what it’s like.

Anyway, that’s all for now. (24) (I / be) in touch again soon.

Robert

---

**Modal verbs (can/must/would etc.)**

Units 26–36, Appendix 4

15 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

1 ‘What time will you be home tonight?’ ‘I’m not sure. I ___________________ late.’
   A may be    B might be    C can be   (both A and B are correct)

2 I can’t find the theatre tickets. They ___________________ out of my pocket.
   A must have fallen    B should have fallen    C had to fall

3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Fortunately I ___________________ just in time.
   A could stop    B could have stopped    C managed to stop

4 We’ve got plenty of time. We ___________________ yet.
   A mustn’t leave    B needn’t leave    C don’t need to leave
Additional exercises

5 I ___________ out but I didn’t feel like it, so I stayed at home.
   A could go    B could have gone    C must have gone

6 ‘I’m sorry I ___________ come to your party last week.
   A couldn’t come    B couldn’t have come    C wasn’t able to come

7 ‘What do you think of my theory?’ ‘I’m not sure. You ___________ right.’
   A could be    B must be    C might be

8 I couldn’t wait for you any longer. I ___________, and so I went.
   A must go    B must have gone    C had to go

9 ‘Do you know where Sarah is?’ ‘No. I suppose she ___________ shopping.’
   A should have gone    B may have gone    C could have gone

10 At first they didn’t believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end
    I ___________ them that I was telling the truth.
   A was able to convince    B managed to convince    C could convince

11 I promised I’d call Gary this evening. I ___________.
   A mustn’t forget    B needn’t forget    C don’t have to forget

12 Why did you leave without me? You ___________ for me.
   A must have waited    B had to wait    C should have waited

13 Lisa called me and suggested ___________ lunch together.
   A we have    B we should have    C to have

14 You look nice in that jacket, but you hardly ever wear it. ___________ it more often.
   A You’d better wear    B You should wear    C You ought to wear

15 Shall I buy a car? What’s your advice? What ___________?
   A will you do    B would you do    C shall you do

17 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Don’t phone them now.
   They ___________ having lunch. (might / have )

2 I’ve eaten too much. Now I feel sick.
   I ___________ so much. (shouldn’t / eat)

3 I wonder why Tom didn’t phone me.
   He ___________. (must / forget)

4 Why did you go home so early?
   You ___________ home so early. (needn’t / go)

5 You’ve signed the contract.
   It ___________ now. (can’t / change)

6 ‘What’s Linda doing?’ ‘I’m not sure.’
   She ___________ TV. (may / watch)

7 Laura was standing outside the cinema.
   She ___________ for somebody. (must / wait)

8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed.
   He ___________ it. (couldn’t / do)

9 Why weren’t you here earlier?
   You ___________ here earlier. (ought / be)

10 Why didn’t you ask me to help you?
   I ___________ you. (would / help)

11 I’m surprised you weren’t told that the road was dangerous.
   You ___________ about it. (should / warn)

12 Gary was in a strange mood yesterday.
   He ___________ very well. (might not / feel)
Complete B’s sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can’t/couldn’t etc.).

1 A: I’m hungry.
   B: But you’ve just had lunch. You  

2 A: I haven’t seen our neighbours for ages.
   B: No. They  

3 A: What’s the weather like? Is it raining?
   B: Not at the moment, but it  

4 A: Where’s Julia?
   B: I’m not sure. She  

5 A: I didn’t see you at Michael’s party last week.
   B: No, I had to work that night, so I  

6 A: I think I saw you at Michael’s party last week.
   B: No, you  

7 A: What time will we get to Sue’s house?
   B: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o’clock, we  

8 A: When was the last time you saw Bill?
   B: Years ago. I  

9 A: Did you hear the explosion?
   B: What explosion?
   A: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You  

10 A: We weren’t sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.
    B: You went the wrong way. You  

if (conditional)

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If  
   you  

2 I must hurry. My friend will be annoyed if I’m not on time. (I / not / be)

3 I didn’t realise that Gary was in hospital. If I’d known he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I / know)

4 If the phone  
   , can you answer it? (ring)

5 I can’t decide what to do. What would you do if  
   in my position? (you / be)

6 A: What shall we do tomorrow?
   B: Well, if  

7 A: Let’s go to the beach.
   B: No, it’s too cold. If  

8 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday?
   B: No, it was too cold. If  

9 If  
   enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (you / have)

10 I’m glad we had a map. I’m sure we would have got lost if  
   one. (we / not / have)

11 The accident was your fault. If  
   more carefully, it wouldn’t have happened. (you / drive)

12 A: Why do you read newspapers?
   B: Well, if  

Additional exercises

20 Complete the sentences.
1 Lisa is tired all the time. She shouldn’t go to bed so late.
   If Lisa _________ go to bed so late, she _________ tired all the time.
2 It’s getting late. I don’t think Sarah will come to see us now.
   I’d be surprised if Sarah ______________ to see us now.
3 I’m sorry I disturbed you. I didn’t know you were busy.
   If __________ you were busy, I __________________________ you.
4 I don’t want them to be upset, so I’ve decided not to tell them what happened.
   _______________ upset if I ___________________________ them what happened.
5 The dog attacked you, but only because you frightened it.
   If you __________________ the dog, it __________________________ you.
6 Unfortunately I didn’t have an umbrella and so I got very wet in the rain.
   I ____________________ so wet if _______________ an umbrella.
7 Martin failed his driving test. He was very nervous and that’s why he failed.
   If he ________________ so nervous, he ____________________ the test.

21 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.
1 I’d go out tonight if ________________.
2 I’d have gone out last night if ________________.
3 If you hadn’t reminded me, ________________.
4 If I had my camera, ________________.
5 If you give me the camera, ________________.
6 Who would you phone if ________________?
7 We wouldn’t have been late if ________________.
8 If I’d been able to get a ticket, ________________.
9 If I’d done better at the interview, ________________.
10 You wouldn’t be hungry now if ________________.
11 Cities would be nicer places if ________________.
12 If there was no TV, ________________.

Passive

22 Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.
1 There’s somebody behind us. I think ____________ (we / follow).
2 A mystery is something that ____________ (can’t / explain).
3 We didn’t play football yesterday. The game _______________ (cancel).
4 The TV _______________ (repair). It’s working again now.
5 In the middle of the village there is a church which _______________ (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.
6 The tower is the oldest part of the church. _______________ (it / believe) to be over 600 years old.
7 If I didn’t do my job properly, _______________ (I / would / sack).
8 A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn’t there now.
   B: _______________ (it / might / throw) away.
9 I learnt to swim when I was very young. _______________ (I / teach) by my mother.
10 After _______________ (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
11 ‘ _______________ (you / ever / arrest)?’ ‘No, never.’
12 Two people _______________ (report) to _______________ (injure) in an explosion at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.
23 Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

1. This house is quite old. It **was built** (build) over 100 years ago.
2. My grandfather was a builder. He **built** (build) this house many years ago.
3. ‘Is your car still for sale?’ ‘No, I **sold** (sell) it.’
4. a. Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
   b. No, it **will be sold** (sell).
5. Sometimes mistakes **are made** (make). It’s inevitable.
6. I wouldn’t leave your car unlocked. It **may be stolen** (might / steal).
7. My bag has disappeared. It **will be stolen** (must / steal).
8. I can’t find my hat. Somebody **must have stolen** (must / take) it by mistake.
9. It’s a serious problem. I don’t know how it **can be solved** (can / solve).
10. We didn’t leave early enough. We **should have left** (should / leave) earlier.
11. Nearly every time I travel by plane, my flight **is delayed** (delay).
12. A new bridge **is being built** (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge **will be expected** (expect) to open next year.

24 Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.

1. **Castle Fire**

   Winton Castle (1) **was damaged** (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which (2) **was discovered** (discover) at about 9 o’clock, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) **was injured** (injure), but two people had to (4) **be rescued** (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings (5) **were believed** (believe / destroy). It (6) **is not known** (not / know) how the fire started.

2. **SHOP ROBBERY**

   In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant (1) **was forced** (force) to hand over £500 after (2) **was threatened** (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which (3) **was stolen** (steal) earlier in the day. The car (4) **was later found** (later / find) in a car park where it (5) **was abandoned** (abandon) by the thief. A man (6) **was arrested** (arrest) in connection with the robbery and (7) **is still being questioned** (still / question) by the police.

3. **ROAD DELAYS**

   Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham–Longworth road. The road (1) **is being resurfaced** (resurface) and there will be long delays. Drivers (2) **are asked** (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work (3) **is expected** (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road (4) **will be closed** (close), and traffic (5) **will be diverted** (divert).

4. **Accident**

   A woman (1) **was taken** (take) to hospital after her car collided with a lorry near Norstock yesterday. She (2) **is allowed** (allow) home later after treatment. The road (3) **is blocked** (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) **be diverted** (divert). A police inspector said afterwards: ‘The woman was lucky. She could (5) **have been killed** (kill).’
**25** Complete the sentences using reported speech.

1. **Can I speak to Paul, please?**
   **I’ll try again later.**
   **Paul has gone out. I don’t know when he’ll be back. Do you want to leave a message?**

   A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked if she could speak to Paul and I told her I asked but she said later. But she never did.

2. **We have no record of a reservation in your name.**
   **We’re sorry, but the hotel is full.**
   **Do you have any rooms free anyway?**

   I went to London recently, but my visit didn’t begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told me they said but there was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3. **Why are you visiting the country?**
   **We’re on holiday.**
   **How long do you intend to stay?**

   After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally it was our turn. The immigration official asked us and we told him then he wanted to know and he seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

4. **I’ll phone you from the airport when I arrive.**
   **Don’t come to the airport. I’ll take the bus.**

   A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?
   B: About three. She said to us.

   A: Aren’t you going to meet her?
   B: No, she said . She said .
A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know [ ] and asked [ ] . I don’t like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told [ ] and I put the phone down.

Louise and Sarah are in a restaurant waiting for Paul. LOUISE: I wonder where Paul is. He said [ ] . SARAH: Maybe he’s got lost. LOUISE: I don’t think so. He said [ ] . And I told [ ] .

Five minutes later

-ing and to ...

Put the verb into the correct form.

1. How old were you when you learnt to drive? (drive)
2. I don’t mind walking home, but I’d rather get a taxi. (walk, get)
3. I can’t make a decision. I keep [ ] in my mind. (change)
4. He had made his decision and refused [ ] his mind. (change)
5. Why did you change your decision? What made you [ ] your mind? (change)
6. It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed [ ] by the sea again. (be)
7. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don’t remember [ ] that. (say)
8. ‘Remember [ ] Tom tomorrow.’ ‘OK. I won’t forget.’ (call)
Additional exercises

9 The water here is not very good. I’d avoid drinking it if I were you. (drink)
10 I pretended to be interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring. (be)
11 I got up and looked out of the window to see what the weather was like. (see)
12 I have a friend who claims to be able to speak five languages. (be)
13 I like to think carefully about things before making a decision. (think, make)
14 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn’t like living there, so I decided to move. (live, move)
15 Steve used to be a footballer. He had to stop playing because of an injury. (be, play)
16 After being stopped by the police, the man admitted to driving the car, but denied to have done so at 100 miles an hour. (stop, steal, drive)
17 A: How do you make this machine work?
   B: I’m not sure. Try pressing that button and see what happens. (press)

27 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I can’t find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
   I seem to have lost them.

2 I don’t have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
   It’s not worth taking a taxi.

3 I’m feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)

4 Tim isn’t very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)

5 I’ve got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)

6 There’s nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)

7 We don’t like our apartment. (we / think / move)

8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)

9 Ben never carries a lot of money with him. (he / afraid / robbed)

10 I wouldn’t go to see the film. (it / not / worth / see)

11 I’m very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)

12 Sue is on holiday. I received a postcard from her yesterday. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)

13 Dan had lots of photographs he’d taken while on holiday. (he / insist / show / them to me)

14 I don’t want to do the shopping. (I’d rather / somebody else / do / it)
Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

1. I was surprised I passed the exam. 
   I didn’t expect __________ to pass the exam. 

2. Did you manage to solve the problem? 
   Did you succeed __________ solving the problem? 

3. I don’t read newspapers any more. 
   I’ve given up __________ newspapers. 

4. I’d prefer not to go out tonight. 
   I’d rather __________. 

5. He finds it difficult to sleep at night. 
   He has trouble __________. 

6. Shall I phone you this evening? 
   Do you want __________? 

7. Nobody saw me come in. 
   I came in __________. 

8. They said I was a cheat. 
   I was accused __________. 

9. It will be good to see them again. 
   I’m looking forward __________. 

10. What do you think I should do? 
    What do you advise me __________? 

11. It’s a pity I couldn’t go out with you last night. 
   I’d like __________. 

12. I wish I’d taken your advice. 
    I regret __________. 

Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. I don’t usually like staying at __________ hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at __________ very nice hotel by __________ sea. 

2. If you go to live in __________ foreign country, you should try and learn __________ language. 

3. Helen is __________ economist. She lives in __________ United States and works for __________ investment company. 

4. I love __________ sport, especially __________ tennis. I play two or three times __________ week if I can, but I’m not __________ very good player. 

5. I won’t be home for __________ dinner this evening. I’m meeting some friends after __________ work and we’re going to __________ cinema. 

6. When __________ unemployment is high, it’s difficult for __________ people to find __________ work. It’s __________ big problem. 

7. There was __________ accident as I was going __________ home last night. Two people were taken to __________ hospital. I think __________ most accidents are caused by __________ people driving too fast. 

8. A: What’s __________ name of __________ hotel where you’re staying? 
   B: __________ Ambassador. It’s in __________ Queen Street in __________ city centre. It’s near __________ station. 

9. I have two brothers. __________ older one is training to be __________ pilot with __________ British Airways. __________ younger one is still at __________ school. When he leaves __________ school, he wants to go to __________ university to study __________ law.
30 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

1. I don’t remember ____________ about the accident.
   A anything   B something   C nothing (A is correct)

2. Chris and I have known ____________ for quite a long time.
   A us   B each other   C ourselves

3. ‘How often do the buses run?’ ‘__________________ twenty minutes.’
   A All   B Each   C Every

4. I shouted for help, but ________________ came.
   A nobody   B no-one   C anybody

5. Last night we went out with some friends of ____________.
   A us   B our   C ours

6. It didn’t take us a long time to get here. ________________ traffic.
   A It wasn’t much   B There wasn’t much   C It wasn’t a lot

7. Can I have ________________ milk in my coffee, please?
   A a little   B any   C some

8. Sometimes I find it difficult to ________________.
   A concentrate   B concentrate me   C concentrate myself

9. There’s ________________ on at the cinema that I want to see, so there’s no point in going.
   A something   B anything   C nothing

10. I drink ________________ water every day.
    A much   B a lot of   C lots of

11. ________________ in the centre are open on Sunday.
    A Most of shops   B Most of the shops   C The most of the shops

12. There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn’t recognise ________________ of them.
    A any   B none   C either

13. I’ve been waiting ________________ for Sarah to phone.
    A all morning   B the whole morning   C all the morning

14. I can’t afford to buy anything in this shop. ________________ so expensive.
    A All is   B Everything is   C All are

31 There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1. The building was total destroyed in the fire. ________________
totally destroyed

2. I didn’t like the book. It was such a stupid story. ________________

3. The city is very polluted. It’s the more polluted place ________________
I’ve ever been to.

4. I was disappointing that I didn’t get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well. ________________

5. It’s warm today, but there’s quite a strong wind. ________________

6. Joe works hardly, but he doesn’t get paid very much. ________________

7. The company’s offices are in a modern large building. ________________

8. Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him. ________________
9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill.
10 You don't look happy. What's the matter?
11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year.
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it.
13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time.
14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one?
15 This morning I got up more early than usual.

Conjunctions

Units 25, 38, 112–118

Which is correct?
1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / when I'm late. (if is correct)
2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.
3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.
4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.
5 Tanya is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.
6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?
7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.
8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't phone me if / unless it's something important.
9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.
10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.
11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.
12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.
13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.
14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.
15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.
16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.
17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'
18 I think Ann will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)

Units 12, 119–122

Put in one of the following: at on in during for since by until

1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back in a week.
2 We're having a party on Saturday. Can you come?
3 I've got an interview next week. It's on 9.30 Tuesday morning.
4 Sue isn't usually here on weekends. She goes away.
5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always on time.
6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening during the same time.
7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. During the end I decided not to.
8 The road is busy all the time, even at night.
9 I met a lot of nice people during my stay in New York.
10 I saw Helen on Friday, but I haven't seen her since then.
11 Robert has been doing the same job since five years.
12 Lisa's birthday is during the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.
13 We have some friends staying with us during the moment. They're staying until Friday.
14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received by Friday.
15 I'm just going out. I won't be long – I'll be back in ten minutes.
Additional exercises

Prepositions (position and other uses) Units 123–128

34 Put in the missing preposition.

1 I’d love to be able to visit every country ______ the world.
2 Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything ______ her?
3 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, there’s one ______ the end of this road.’
4 Tim is away at the moment. He’s ______ holiday.
5 We live ______ the country, a long way from the nearest town.
6 I’ve got a stain ______ my jacket. I’ll have to have it cleaned.
7 We went ______ a party ______ Lisa’s house on Saturday.
8 Boston is ______ the east coast of the United States.
9 Look at the leaves ______ that tree. They’re a beautiful colour.
10 ‘Have you ever been ______ Tokyo?’ ‘No, I’ve never been ______ Japan.’
11 Mozart died ______ Vienna in 1791 ______ the age of 35.
12 ‘Are you ______ this photo?’ ‘Yes, that’s me, ______ the left.’
13 We went ______ the theatre last night. We had seats ______ the front row.
14 ‘Where’s the light switch?’ ‘It’s ______ the wall ______ the door.’
15 It was late when we arrived ______ the hotel.
16 I couldn’t decide what to eat. There was nothing ______ the menu that I liked.
17 We live ______ a tower block. Our apartment is ______ the fifteenth floor.
18 A: What did you think of the film?
   B: Some parts were a bit stupid, but ______ the whole I enjoyed it.
19 ‘When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?’ ‘No, I paid ______ credit card.’
20 ‘How did you get here? Did you come ______ the bus?’ ‘No, ______ car.’
21 A: I wonder what’s ______ TV this evening. Do you have a newspaper?
   B: Yes, the TV programmes are ______ the back page.
22 Helen works for a telecommunications company. She works ______ the customer services department.
23 Anna spent two years working ______ Chicago before returning ______ Italy.
24 ‘Did you enjoy your trip ______ the beach?’ ‘Yes, it was great.’
25 Next summer we’re going ______ a trip to Canada.

Noun/adjective + prepositions Units 129–131

35 Put in the missing preposition.

1 The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason ______ this.
2 Don’t ask me to decide. I’m not very good ______ making decisions.
3 Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she’s always very nice ______ me.
4 What do you think is the best solution ______ the problem?
5 There has been a big increase ______ the price of oil recently.
6 He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn’t have much contact ______ other people.
7 Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures ______ people.
8 Michael got married ______ a woman he met when he was studying at college.
9 He’s very brave. He’s not afraid ______ anything.
10 I’m surprised ______ the amount of traffic today. I didn’t think it would be so busy.
11 Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full ______ useful information.
12 I’m afraid I’ve had to change my plans, so I can’t meet you tomorrow. I’m sorry ______ that.
Verb + preposition

36 Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. She works quite hard. You can’t accuse her _______ being lazy.
2. Who’s going to look _______ your children while you’re at work?
3. The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss _______ it.
4. The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something _______ it.
5. I prefer this chair _______ the other one. It’s more comfortable.
6. I need to phone _______ the office to tell them I won’t be at work today.
7. The river divides the city _______ two parts.
8. ‘What do you think _______ your new boss?’ ‘She’s all right, I suppose.’
9. Can somebody please explain _______ me what I have to do?
10. I said hello to her, but she didn’t answer _______ me.
11. ‘Do you like staying at hotels?’ ‘It depends _______ the hotel.’
12. ‘Have you ever been to Borla?’ ‘No, I’ve never heard _______ it. Where is it?’
13. You remind me _______ somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
14. This is wonderful news! I can’t believe _______ it.
15. George is not an idealist – he believes _______ being practical.
16. What’s funny? What are you laughing _______?
17. What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it _______?
18. If Alex asks _______ you _______ money, don’t give him any.
19. I apologised _______ Sarah _______ keeping her waiting so long.
20. Lisa was very helpful. I thanked _______ her _______ everything she’d done.

Phrasal verbs

37 A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

A
1. I’ve made a mistake on this form.
2. I’m too warm with my coat on.
3. This jacket looks nice.
4. My phone number is 576920.
5. This room is in a mess.
6. What’s 45 euros in dollars?
7. How did you find the mistake?
8. I’m not sure whether to accept their offer or not.
9. I need a place to stay when I’m in London.
10. It’s a subject he doesn’t like to talk about.
11. I don’t know what this word means.

B
a. Don’t worry. I’ll clear it up.
b. No problem. I can fix it up.
c. Kate pointed it out.
d. That’s OK. Cross it out and correct it.
e. Yes, why don’t you try it on?
f. OK, I won’t bring it up.
g. Just a minute. I’ll write it down.
h. Why don’t you take it off then?
i. You can look it up.
j. I think you should turn it down.
k. Give me a moment. I’ll work it out.

1. d
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
**38** Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

1. Nobody believed Paul at first but he ___ B ___ to be right. (B is correct)
   A came out   B turned out   C worked out   D carried out

2. Here’s some good news. It will ________________ .
   A turn you up   B put you up   C blow you up   D cheer you up

3. I was annoyed with the way the children were behaving, so I ________________ .
   A told them up   B told them off   C told them out   D told them over

4. The club committee is ________________ of the president, the secretary and seven other members.
   A set up   B made up   C set out   D made out

5. You were going to apply for the job, and then you decided not to. So what ________________ ?
   A put you off   B put you out   C turned you off   D turned you away

6. I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely ________________ .
   A taken in   B taken down   C taken off   D taken over

7. Helen started a course at college, but she ________________ after six months.
   A went out   B fell out   C turned out   D dropped out

8. You can’t predict everything. Often things don’t ________________ as you expect.
   A make out   B break out   C work out   D get out

9. Why are all these people here? What’s ________________ ?
   A going off   B getting off   C going on   D getting on

10. It’s a very busy airport. There are planes ________________ or landing every few minutes.
    A going up   B taking off   C getting up   D driving off

11. The traffic was moving slowly because a bus had ________________ and was blocking the road.
    A broken down   B fallen down   C fallen over   D broken up

12. How are you ________________ in your new job? Are you enjoying it?
    A keeping on   B going on   C carrying on   D getting on

**39** Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

1. Keep ____________ from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

2. I didn’t notice that the two pictures were different until Tanya pointed it ________________ me.

3. I asked Dan if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn’t come ________________ anything.

4. I’m glad Sarah is coming to the party. I’m really looking ________________ seeing her again.

5. Things are changing all the time. It’s difficult to keep ________________ all these changes.

6. I don’t want to run ________________ food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?

7. Don’t let me interrupt you. Carry ________________ your work.

8. Steve was very happy in his job until he fell ________________ his boss. After that, it was impossible for them to work together, and Steve decided to leave.

9. I’ve had enough of being treated like this. I’m not going to put ________________ it any more.

10. I didn’t enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look ________________ it now, I realise it was a good experience and I’m glad I went on it.

11. The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find ________________ it? Did Jess tell you?

12. There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets ________________ everybody else.
40 Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that means the same as the words in brackets.

1 The football match had to be **called off** because of the weather. (cancelled)
2 The story Kate told wasn’t true. She **made it up**. (invented it)
3 A bomb **exploded** near the station, but no-one was injured. (exploded)
4 Paul finally **arrived** nearly an hour late. (arrived)
5 Here’s an application form. Can you **complete** and sign it, please? (complete it)
6 A number of buildings are going to be **demolished** to make way for the new road. (demolished)
7 I’m having a few problems with my computer which need to be **fixed** as soon as possible. (put right)
8 Be positive! You must never **give up**! (stop trying)
9 I was very tired and **fell asleep** in front of the television. (fell asleep)
10 After eight years together, they’ve decided to **separate**. (separate)
11 The noise is terrible. I can’t **tolerate** it any longer. (tolerate it)
12 We don’t have a lot of money, but we have enough to **manage**. (manage)
13 I’m sorry I’m late. The meeting **continued** longer than I expected. (continued)
14 We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can’t **delay it** any longer. (delay it)

41 Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

1 You’re driving too fast. Please **slow** down.
2 It was only a small fire and I managed to **put it out** with a bucket of water.
3 The house is empty at the moment, but I think the new tenants are **arriving** in next week.
4 I’ve **put on** weight. My clothes don’t fit any more.
5 Their house is really nice now. They’ve **tidied it up** really well.
6 I was talking to the woman sitting next to me on the plane, and it **came out** that she works for the same company as my brother.
7 ‘Do you know what happened?’ ‘Not yet, but I’m going to **find out**.’
8 There’s no need to get angry. **Shut up** down! (silent)
9 If you’re going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you **set off**.
10 Sarah has just phoned to say that she’ll be late. She’s been **waking up**.
11 You’ve written my name wrong. It’s Martin, not Marin – you **got it wrong** out the T.
12 Three days at £45 a day – that **comes out** at £135.
13 We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn’t **listen** in. She just listened.
14 Jonathan is pretty fit. He **goes in** out in the gym every day.
15 Come and see us more often. You can **come in** in any time you like.
16 We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to **decide** out.
17 My alarm clock **went off** in the middle of the night and **woke** me up.
This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (Present and past, Articles and nouns etc.) in the same way as the units in the Contents (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don’t know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.
2.8 It's two years ___________________ Joe.
A that I don't see    B that I haven't seen    C since I didn't see
D since I last saw

2.9 It ___________________ raining for a while, but now it's raining again.
A stopped    B has stopped    C was stopped

2.10 My mother ___________________ in Italy.
A grew up    B has grown up    C had grown up

2.11 ___________________ a lot of sweets when you were a child?
A Have you eaten    B Had you eaten    C Did you eat

A lived    B has lived    C has been living

2.13 The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He ___________________ before.
A hasn't flown    B didn't fly    C hadn't flown    D wasn't flying

2.14 Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because ___________________ very hard.
A she was working    B she's been working    C she'd been working

2.15 ___________________ a car when you were living in Paris?
A Had you    B Were you having    C Have you had    D Did you have

2.16 I ___________________ tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.
A was playing    B was used to play    C used to play

Future

3.1 I'm tired. ___________________ to bed now. Goodnight.
A I go    B I'm going

3.2 ___________________ tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
A I'm not working    B I don't work    C I won't work

3.3 That bag looks heavy. ___________________ you with it.
A I'm helping    B I help    C I'll help

3.4 I think the weather ___________________ be nice later.
A will    B shall    C is going to

3.5 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. ___________________ her this evening.'
A I visit    B I'm going to visit    C I'll visit

3.6 We're late. The film ___________________ by the time we get to the cinema.
A will already start    B will be already started    C will already have started

3.7 Don't worry ___________________ late tonight.
A if I'm    B when I'm    C when I'll be    D if I'll be
Modals

4.1 The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody 

A was able to escape  B managed to escape  C could escape

4.2 I’m so tired I __________________ for a week.
A can sleep  B could sleep  C could have slept

4.3 The story __________________ be true, but I don’t think it is.
A might  B can  C could  D may

4.4 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You __________________ with Sarah.
A can stay  B could stay  C could have stayed

4.5 ‘I’ve lost one of my gloves.’ ‘You __________________ it somewhere.’
A must drop  B must have dropped  C must be dropping
D must have been dropping

4.6 ‘Why wasn’t Amy at the meeting yesterday?’ ‘She __________________ about it.’
A might not know  B may not know  C might not have known
D may not have known

4.7 What was the problem? Why __________________ leave early?
A had you to  B did you have to  C must you  D you had to

4.8 We’ve got plenty of time. We __________________ hurry.
A don’t need to  B mustn’t  C needn’t

4.9 You missed a great party last night. You __________________. Why didn’t you?
A must have come  B should have come  C ought to have come
D had to come

4.10 Jane won the lottery. I __________________ a car with the money she’d won.
A suggested that she buy  B suggested that she should buy
C suggested her to buy  D suggested that she bought

4.11 You’re always at home. You __________________ out more often.
A should go  B had better go  C had better to go

4.12 It’s late. It’s time __________________ home.
A we go  B we must go  C we should go  D we went  E to go

4.13 __________________ a little longer, but I really have to go now.
A I’d stay  B I’ll stay  C I can stay  D I’d have stayed

If and wish

5.1 I’m not going to bed yet. I’m not tired. If I __________________ to bed now, I wouldn’t sleep.
A go  B went  C had gone  D would go

5.2 If I were rich, __________________ a lot.
A I’ll travel  B I can travel  C I would travel  D I travelled

5.3 I wish I __________________ have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.
A don’t  B didn’t  C wouldn’t  D won’t
5.4 The view was wonderful. If __________ a camera with me, I would have taken some pictures.
A I had    B I would have    C I would have had    D I’d had

5.5 The weather is horrible. I wish it __________ raining.
A would stop    B stopped    C stops    D will stop

Passive
6.1 We __________ by a loud noise during the night.
A woke up    B are woken up    C were woken up    D were waking up

6.2 A new supermarket is going to __________ next year.
A build    B be built    C be building    D building

6.3 There’s somebody walking behind us. I think __________.
A we are following    B we are being following    C we are followed    D we are being followed

6.4 ‘Where __________ ?’ ‘In Chicago.’
A were you born    B are you born    C have you been born    D did you born

6.5 There was a fight at the party, but nobody __________.
A was hurt    B got hurt    C hurt

6.6 Jane __________ to phone me last night, but she didn’t.
A supposed    B is supposed    C was supposed

6.7 Where __________ ? Which hairdresser did you go to?
A did you cut your hair    B have you cut your hair    C did you have cut your hair    D did you have your hair cut

Reported speech
7.1 Paul left the room suddenly. He said he __________ to go.
A had    B has    C have

7.2 Hi, Joe. I didn’t expect to see you. Sonia said you __________ in hospital.
A are    B were    C was    D should be

7.3 Ann __________ and left.
A said goodbye to me    B said me goodbye    C told me goodbye

Questions and auxiliary verbs
8.1 ‘What time __________ ?’ ‘At 8.30.’
A starts the film    B does start the film    C does the film start

8.2 ‘Do you know where __________ ?’ ‘No, he didn’t say.’
A Tom has gone    B has Tom gone    C has gone Tom

8.3 The police officer stopped us and asked us where __________
A were we going    B are we going    C we are going    D we were going
8.4  'Do you think it will rain?' ‘__________________________’
A I hope not.  B I don't hope.  C I don't hope so.

8.5  'You don't know where Karen is, ___________________?'  'Sorry, I have no idea.’
A don't you  B do you  C is she  D are you

- ing and to ...

9.1  You can’t stop me __________________ what I want.
A doing  B do  C to do  D that I do

9.2  I must go now. I promised __________________ late.
A not being  B not to be  C to not be  D I wouldn’t be

9.3  Do you want __________________ with you or do you want to go alone?
A me coming  B me to come  C that I come  D that I will come

9.4  I know I locked the door. I clearly remember __________________ it.
A locking  B to lock  C to have locked

9.5  She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help __________________.
A laughing  B to laugh  C that she laughed  D laugh

9.6  Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes __________________ there.
A living  B to live

9.7  It’s not my favourite job, but I like __________________ the kitchen as often as possible.
A cleaning  B clean  C to clean  D that I clean

9.8  I’m tired. I’d rather __________________ out this evening, if you don’t mind.
A not going  B not to go  C don’t go  D not go

9.9  I’d rather __________________ anyone what I said.
A you don’t tell  B not you tell  C you didn’t tell  D you wouldn’t tell

9.10 Are you looking forward __________________ on holiday?
A going  B to go  C to going  D that you go

9.11 When Lisa came to Britain, she had to get used __________________ on the left.
A driving  B to driving  C to drive

9.12 I’m thinking __________________ a house. Do you think that’s a good idea?
A to buy  B of to buy  C of buying  D about buying

9.13 I had no __________________ a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.
A difficulty to find  B difficulty finding  C trouble to find  D trouble finding

9.14 I phoned the restaurant __________________ a table.
A for reserve  B to reserve  C for reserving  D for to reserve

9.15 James doesn’t speak very clearly. __________________
A It is difficult to understand him.  B He is difficult to understand.
C He is difficult to understand him.
9.16 The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid
A of falling    B from falling    C to fall    D to falling
9.17 I didn’t hear you __________________________ in. You must have been very quiet.
A come      B to come      C came
9.18 __________________________ a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
   A Finding    B After finding    C Having found    D We found

Articles and nouns
10.1 It wasn’t your fault. It was __________________________.
      A accident     B an accident     C some accident
10.2 Where are you going to put all your __________________________?
      A furniture     B furnitures
10.3 ‘Where are you going?’ ‘I’m going to buy __________________________.’
      A a bread      B some bread      C a loaf of bread
10.4 Sandra is __________________________. She works at a large hospital.
      A nurse      B a nurse      C the nurse
10.5 Helen works six days __________________________ week.
      A in      B for      C a      D the
10.6 There are millions of stars in __________________________.
      A space      B a space      C the space
10.7 Every day __________________________ begins at 9 and finishes at 3.
      A school      B a school      C the school
10.8 __________________________ a problem in most big cities.
      A Crime is      B The crime is      C The crimes are
10.9 When __________________________ invented?
      A was telephone      B were telephones      C were the telephones
      D was the telephone
10.10 Have you been to __________________________?
      A Canada or United States     B the Canada or the United States
      C Canada or the United States     D the Canada or United States
10.11 On our first day in Moscow, we visited __________________________.
      A Kremlin     B a Kremlin     C the Kremlin
10.12 What time __________________________ on TV?
      A is the news     B are the news     C is news     D is the new
10.13 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was __________________________ journey.
      A three hour      B a three-hours      C a three-hour
10.14 This isn’t my book. It’s __________________________.
      A my sister      B my sister’s      C from my sister      D of my sister
      E of my sister’s
Pronouns and determiners

11.1 What time shall we ______________ tomorrow?
A meet B meet us C meet ourselves

11.2 I’m going to a wedding on Saturday. ______________ is getting married.
A A friend of me B A friend of mine C One my friends

11.3 They live on a busy road. ______________ a lot of noise from the traffic.
A It must be B It must have C There must have D There must be

11.4 He’s lazy. He never does ______________ work.
A some B any C no

11.5 ‘What would you like to eat?’ ‘I don’t mind. ______________ – whatever you have.’
A Something B Anything C Nothing

11.6 We couldn’t buy anything because ______________ of the shops were open.
A all B no-one C none D nothing

11.7 We went shopping and spent ______________ money.
A a lot of B much C lots of D many

11.8 ______________ don’t visit this part of the town.
A The most tourists B Most of tourists C Most tourists

11.9 I asked two people the way to the station, but ______________ of them could help me.
A none B either C both D neither

11.10 ______________ had a great time at the party.
A Everybody B All C All of us D Everybody of us

11.11 The bus service is excellent. There’s a bus ______________ ten minutes.
A each B every C all

Relative clauses

12.1 I don’t like stories ______________ have unhappy endings.
A that B they C which D who

12.2 I didn’t believe them at first, but in fact everything ______________ was true.
A they said B that they said C what they said

12.3 What’s the name of the man ______________?
A you borrowed his car B which car you borrowed
C whose car you borrowed D his car you borrowed

12.4 Anna told me about her new job, ______________ a lot.
A that she’s enjoying B which she’s enjoying C she’s enjoying
D she’s enjoying it

12.5 Sarah couldn’t meet us, ______________ was a shame.
A that B it C what D which

12.6 George showed me some pictures ______________ by his father.
A painting B painted C that were painted D they were painted
Adjectives and adverbs

13.1 Jane doesn’t enjoy her job any more. She’s ____________ because every day she does exactly the same thing.
A boring  B bored

13.2 Lisa was carrying a ____________ bag.
A black small plastic  B small and black plastic  C small black plastic
D plastic small black

13.3 Maria’s English is excellent. She speaks ____________.  
A perfectly English  B English perfectly  C perfect English
D English perfect

13.4 He ___________ to find a job, but he had no luck.
A tried hard  B tried hardly  C hardly tried

13.5 I haven’t seen her for ____________, I’ve forgotten what she looks like.
A so long  B so long time  C a such long time  D such a long time

13.6 We don’t have ___________ on holiday right now.
A money enough to go  B enough money to go
C money enough for going  D enough money for go

13.7 Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has ____________.
A a quite good job  B quite a good job  C a pretty good job

13.8 The exam was quite easy – ____________ I expected.
A more easy that  B more easy than  C easier than  D easier as

13.9 The more electricity you use, ____________.
A your bill will be higher  B will be higher your bill
C the higher your bill will be  D higher your bill will be

13.10 Patrick is a fast runner. I can’t run as fast as ____________.
A he  B him  C he can

13.11 The movie was really boring. It’s ____________ I’ve ever seen.
A most boring movie  B the more boring movie  C the movie more boring
D the most boring movie

13.12 Ben likes walking ____________.
A Every morning he walks to work.  B He walks to work every morning.
C He walks every morning to work.  D He every morning walks to work.

13.13 Joe never phones me. ____________.
A Always I have to phone him.  B I always have to phone him.
C I have always to phone him.  D I have to phone always him.

13.14 Lucy ____________. She left last month.
A still doesn’t work here  B doesn’t still work here
C no more works here  D doesn’t work here any more

13.15 ____________ she can’t drive, she bought a car.
A Even  B Even when  C Even if  D Even though
Conjunctions and prepositions

14.1 I couldn’t sleep __________________ very tired.
   A although I was  B despite I was  C despite of being  D in spite of being

14.2 You should insure your bike __________________ stolen.
   A in case it will be  B if it will be  C in case it is  D if it is

14.3 The club is for members only. You __________________ you’re a member.
   A can’t go in if  B can go in only if  C can’t go in unless  D can go in unless

14.4 We watched TV all evening __________________ we didn’t have anything better to do.
   A when  B as  C while  D since

14.5 ‘What’s that noise?’ ‘It sounds __________________ a baby crying.’
   A as  B like  C as if  D as though

14.6 They are very kind to me. They treat me __________________ their own son.
   A as I am  B as if I would be  C as if I am  D as if I were

14.7 I’ll be in Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine ____________ there.
   A while I’ll be  B while I’m  C during my visit  D during I’m

14.8 Joe is away at the moment. I don’t know exactly when he’s coming back, but I’m sure he’ll be back ____________ Monday.
   A by  B until

Prepositions

15.1 Bye! I’ll see you __________________ .
   A at Friday morning  B on Friday morning  C in Friday morning  D Friday morning

15.2 I’m going away ____________ the end of January.
   A at  B on  C in

15.3 When we were in Italy, we spent a few days ____________ Venice.
   A at  B to  C in

15.4 Our apartment is ____________ the second floor of the building.
   A at  B on  C in  D to

15.5 I saw Steve ____________ a conference on Saturday.
   A at  B on  C in  D to

15.6 When did they ____________ the hotel?
   A arrive to  B arrive at  C arrive in  D get to  E get in

15.7 I’m going ____________ holiday next week. I’ll be away for two weeks.
   A at  B on  C in  D for

15.8 We travelled ____________ 6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30.
   A in the  B on the  C by the  D by

15.9 ‘Have you read anything ____________ Ernest Hemingway?’ ‘No, what sort of books did he write?’
   A of  B from  C by
15.10 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage ____________ the other car.
A of  B for  C to  D on  E at

15.11 I like them very much. They have always been very nice ____________ me.
A of  B for  C to  D with

15.12 I’m not very good ____________ repairing things.
A at  B for  C in  D about

15.13 I don’t understand this sentence. Can you ____________ ?
A explain to me this word  B explain me this word  C explain this word to me

15.14 If you’re worried about the problem, you should do something ____________ it.
A for  B about  C against  D with

15.15 ‘Who is Tom Hart?’ ‘I have no idea. I’ve never heard ____________ him.’
A about  B from  C after  D of

15.16 ‘What time will you be home?’ ‘I don’t know. It depends ____________ the traffic.’
A of  B for  C from  D on

15.17 I prefer tea ____________ coffee.
A to  B than  C against  D from

Phrasal verbs

16.1 These shoes are uncomfortable. I’m going to ____________ .
A take off  B take them off  C take off them

16.2 They were playing cards, so I ____________ .
A joined in  B came in  C got in  D broke in

16.3 Nobody believed Paul at first, but he ____________ to be right.
A worked out  B came out  C found out  D turned out

16.4 We can’t ____________ making a decision. We have to decide now.
A put away  B put over  C put off  D put out

16.5 ‘Have you finished painting the kitchen?’ ‘Nearly. I’ll ____________ tomorrow.’
A finish it out  B finish it over  C finish it off

16.6 You can always rely on Paul. He’ll never ____________ .
A put you up  B let you down  C take you over  D see you off

16.7 Children under 16 ____________ half the population of the city.
A make up  B put up  C take up  D bring up

16.8 I’m surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have ____________ . They seemed very happy together.
A broken up  B ended up  C finished up  D split up

16.9 I parked in a no-parking zone, but I ____________ it.
A came up with  B got away with  C made off with  D got on with
In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

### UNIT 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 What’s / What is he studying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2’s / is your new job going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s getting / it is getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he isn’t enjoying / he’s not enjoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he’s beginning / he is beginning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 I’m not listening / I am not listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 She’s having / She is having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I’m not eating / I am not eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 He’s learning / He is learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 They aren’t speaking / They’re not speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I’m getting / I am getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 isn’t working / ’s not working / is not working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 I’m looking / I am looking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 is changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ’s getting / is getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 is rising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 is starting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 opens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 connects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 do the banks close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 don’t use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 does Ricardo come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 do you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 takes ... does it take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 does this word mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 doesn’t do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 is trying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 are they talking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 It’s getting / It is getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I’m coming / I am coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 are you getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 He always gets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 Everybody’s waiting / Everybody is waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Are you listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Do you listen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 flows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ’s flowing / is flowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 We usually grow ... we aren’t growing / we’re not growing / we are not growing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 it’s improving / it is improving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 She’s staying / She is staying ... She always stays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 I’m starting / I am starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 I’m learning / I am learning ... ‘s teaching / is teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 I finish ... I’m working / I am working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 live ... do your parents live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 ’s looking / is looking ... She’s staying / She is staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 does your brother do ... he isn’t working / he’s not working / he is not working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 I usually enjoy ... I’m not enjoying / I am not enjoying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 I’m using / I am using</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 does he want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 is he looking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 believes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I don’t remember / I do not remember or I can’t remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I’m thinking / I am thinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 I think ... You don’t use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 consists</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 What are you doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Who does this umbrella belong to?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 The dinner smells good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Is anybody sitting there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 These gloves don’t fit me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Do you believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 OK (I feel is also correct)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 It tastes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I think</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 ’s being / is being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ’s / is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 are you being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Is he</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 She had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 She walked to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 It took her (about) half an hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 She started work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 She didn’t have (any) lunch. / ... eat (any) lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 She finished work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 She was tired when she got home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 She cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 She didn’t go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 She went to bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 She slept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2
taught
sold
fell ... hurt
threw ... caught
spent ... bought ... cost

5.3
did you travel / did you go
did it take (you)
did you stay
Was the weather
Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4
didn't disturb didn't cost
didn't left didn't have
didn't sleep 9 were
flew

UNIT 6
6.1
Example answers:
I was working.
I was in bed asleep.
I was getting ready to go out.
I was watching TV at home.

6.2
Example answers:
I was taking a shower.
I was driving home.
I was reading the paper.
I was watching it.

6.3
didn't see ... was looking
didn't met ... were going ... was going ... had ... were waiting / waited
didn't was cycling ... stepped ... was going ... managed ...
didn't hit

6.4
didn't do ...
didn't go ...
didn't go ...
didn't know ...
didn't see ...
didn't see ...
didn't walk ...
didn't change ...
didn't want ...
didn't want ...
didn't break ...

UNIT 7
7.1
Lisa has broken her leg.
The bus fare has gone up.
Her English has improved.
Dan has grown a beard.
The letter has arrived.
The temperature has fallen.

7.2
been
gone
been
been
been

7.3
Yes, I've just seen her. / Yes, I have just seen her. or
Yes, I just saw her.
He's already left. / He has already left. or He already left.
I haven't read it yet. or I didn't read it yet.
No, she's already seen the film. / No, she has already seen ... or No, she already saw ...
Yes, they've just arrived. / Yes, they have just arrived. or Yes, they just arrived.
We haven't told him yet. or We didn't tell him yet.

7.4
he's just gone out / he has just gone out or he just went out
I haven't finished yet or I didn't finish yet
I've already done it / I have already done it or I already did it
Have you found a place to live yet? or Did you find a place ... ?
I haven't decided yet or I didn't decide yet
she's just come back / she has just come back or she just came back

UNIT 8
8.1
Have you ever been to California?
Have you ever run (in) a marathon?
Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / ... you have ever visited?

8.2
haven't eaten
haven't played (it)
I've had / I have had
I haven't read
I've never been / I haven't been
it's happened / it has happened or that's happened / that has happened
I've never tried / I haven't tried or I've never eaten / I haven't eaten
's been / has been
I've never seen / I haven't seen

8.3
Example answers:
I haven't travelled by bus this week.
I haven't been to the cinema recently.
I haven't read a book for ages.
I haven't lost anything today.

8.4
Have you played tennis before?
No, this is the first time I've played tennis.
Have you ridden a horse before? / Have you been on a horse before?
No, this is the first time I've ridden a horse. / ... I've been on a horse.

UNIT 9
9.1
She's been watching television. / She has been watching television.
They've been playing tennis. / They have been playing tennis.
He's been running. / He has been running.

9.2
Have you been waiting long?
What have you been doing?
How long have you been working there?
How long have you been selling mobile phones?

9.3
've been waiting / have been waiting
've been learning Spanish / have been learning Spanish
'She's been working there / She has been working there
'They've been going there / They have been going there

9.4
I've been looking / I have been looking
'are you looking
'She's been teaching / She has been teaching
I've been thinking / I have been thinking
He's working / he is working
She's been working / She has been working
### Key to Exercises

#### UNIT 10

**10.1**
2. She’s been travelling / She has been travelling
   She’s visited / She has visited
3. He’s won / He has won …
   He’s / He has …
4. They’ve / They have been making (films …)
   They’ve / They have made (five films …)

**10.2**
2. Have you been waiting long?
3. Have you caught any fish?
4. How many people have you invited?
5. How long have you been teaching?
6. How many books have you written?
   How long have you been writing books?
7. How long have you been saving?
   How much money have you saved?

**10.3**
2. Somebody’s broken / Somebody has broken a window
3. Have you been working?
4. Have you ever worked?
5. has she gone
6. He’s appeared / He has appeared
7. I haven’t been waiting
8. it’s stopped / it has stopped
9. I’ve lost / I have lost … Have you seen
   I’ve been reading / I have been reading … I haven’t finished
11. I’ve read / I have read
12. I’ve had / I have had

#### UNIT 11

**11.1**
3. have been married
4. OK
5. It’s been raining / It has been raining
6. have you been living or have you lived
7. has been working
8. OK
9. I haven’t drunk
10. have you had

**11.2**
2. How long have you been teaching English? or
   How long have you taught …
3. How long have you known Katherine?
4. How long has your brother been in Australia?
5. How long have you had that jacket?
UNIT 16
16.1
2 They’d been playing football. / They had been playing …
3 I’d been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward …
4 She’d been dreaming. / She had been dreaming.
5 He’d been watching a film. / He had been watching …

16.2
2 I’d been waiting for 20 minutes when I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant. or … that I had come to the wrong restaurant.
3 At the time the factory closed down, Sarah had been working there for five years.
4 The orchestra had been playing for about ten minutes when a man in the audience started shouting.

Example answer:
I’d been walking along the road for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

16.3
3 he was walking
4 She’d been running / She had been running
5 They were eating
6 They’d been eating / They had been eating
7 He was looking
8 was waiting … she’d been waiting / she had been waiting
9 I’d had / I had had
10 We’d been travelling / We had been travelling

UNIT 17
17.1
3 I don’t have a ladder. / I haven’t got a ladder.
4 We didn’t have enough time.
5 He didn’t have a map.
6 She doesn’t have any money. / She hasn’t got any money.
7 I don’t have enough energy. / I haven’t got enough energy.
8 They didn’t have a camera.

17.2
2 B
3 A or C
4 A or C
5 A
6 C

17.3
3 he didn’t have
4 I have or I’ve got
5 OK
6 I didn’t have
7 OK (or He hasn’t got)
8 Did you have
9 OK

17.4
2 has a break
3 had a party
4 have a look
5 ‘s having / is having a nice time
6 had a chat
7 Did you have trouble
8 had a baby
9 was having a shower
10 Did you have a good flight?

UNIT 18
18.1
2 used to have/ride
3 used to live
4 used to eat/like/love
5 used to be
6 used to take
7 used to be
8 did you use to go

18.2
2–10
• She used to have lots of friends, but she doesn’t know many people these days.
• She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
• She didn’t use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now.
• She used to be a hotel receptionist, but she works in a bookshop now.
• She used to play the piano, but she hasn’t played the piano for years. / … played it for years.
• She never used to read / She didn’t use to read newspapers, but she reads a newspaper every day now.
• She didn’t use to drink tea, but she likes it now.
• She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.
• She used to go to a lot of parties, but she hasn’t been to a party for ages.
Key to Exercises

18.3
Example answers:
1. I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.
2. I used to watch TV a lot, but I don't watch it much now.
3. I used to hate getting up early, but now it's no problem.
4. I didn't use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.
5. I didn't use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 19

19.1
2. How long are you going for?
3. When are you leaving?
4. Are you going alone?
5. Are you travelling by car?
6. Where are you staying?

19.2
2. I'm working late. I'm working till 9 o'clock.
3. I'm going to the theatre.
4. I'm meeting Julia.

19.3
Example answers:
2. I'm working tomorrow morning.
3. I'm not doing anything tomorrow evening.
4. I'm playing football next Sunday.
5. I'm going to a party this evening.

19.4
3. We're having / We are having finishes
4. I'm not going / I am not going ... I'm staying / I am staying
5. Are you doing
6. We're going / We are going ... It starts
7. I'm leaving / I am leaving
8. We're meeting / we are meeting
10. Does this train get
11. I'm going / I am going ... Are you coming
12. Does it end
13. I'm not using / I am not using 's coming / is coming ...
   She's travelling / She is travelling ...
   Arrives

UNIT 20

20.1
2. What are you going to wear?
3. Where are you going to put it?
4. Who are you going to invite?

20.2
2. I'm going to take it back to the shop.
3. I'm not going to accept it.
4. I'm going to phone her tonight.
5. I'm going to complain.

20.3
2. He's going to be late.
3. The boat is going to sink.
4. They're going to run out of petrol.

20.4
2. was going to buy
3. were going to play
4. was going to phone
5. was going to give up
6. were you going to say

UNIT 21

21.1
2. I'll turn / I'll switch / I'll put
3. I'll send
4. I'll do
5. I'll show
6. I'll have
7. I'll stay / I'll wait
8. I'll pay / I'll give
9. I'll try

21.2
2. I'll go to bed.
3. I think I'll walk.
4. I'll eat anything,
5. I don't think I'll go swimming.

21.3
3. I'll meet
4. I'll lend
5. I'm having
6. I won't forget
7. does your train leave
8. won't tell
9. Are you doing
10. Will you come

21.4
2. Shall I buy it?
3. What shall I give/buy/get Helen (for her birthday)?
4. Where shall we go (on holiday)?
5. Shall we go by car or (shall we) walk? / ... or (shall we) go on foot?
6. What time shall I come?

UNIT 22

22.1
2. I'm going
3. will get
4. is coming
5. we're going
6. It won't hurt

22.2
2. won't
3. 'll / will
4. won't
5. 'll / will
6. won't

22.3
2. It will look
3. you'll like / you will like
4. You'll get / You will get
5. people will live
6. we'll meet / we will meet
7. she'll come / she will come
8. it will be

UNIT 23

23.1
2. I'll lend
3. I'll get
4. I'm going to wash
5. are you going to paint
6. I'm going to buy
7. I'll show
8. I'll have
9. I'll call
10. He's going to have ... he's going to do

23.2
2. I'm going to take ... I'll join
3. you'll find (you're going to find is possible)
4. I'm not going to apply or
   I'm not applying
5. We're going to be late.
6. it's going to fall down
7. I'll take ... I'll pick ...
   Kate is going to take or
   Kate is taking
UNIT 24

2.4 We'll have finished
3. We'll be playing
4. I'll be working
5. The meeting will have ended
6. He'll have spent
7. You'll still be doing
8. She'll have travelled
9. I'll be staying
10. Will you be seeing

UNIT 25

2.51 She goes
3. You know
4. Will you be ... I get
5. There are ... I'll call / I will call
6. It's / it is
7. You see ... you won't recognise / you will not recognise
8. I'll be / I will be ... he gets
9. You need ... I'm / I am
10. I'll wait / I will wait ... you're / you are

2.52 I'll give you my address when I find somewhere to live, or ... when I've found somewhere to live.
3. I'll come straight back home after I do the shopping, or ... after I've done the shopping.
4. Let's go home before it gets dark.
5. I won't speak to her until she apologises. or ... until she has apologised.

2.53 You go / you leave
3. You decide or you've decided / you have decided
4. You're in Hong Kong / you go to Hong Kong
5. Build the new road or 've built the new road / have built the new road

2.54 If
2. When
3. If
4. If
5. If
6. When
7. If
8. If

UNIT 26

2.6.1 Can
2. Can be able to
3. Been able to
4. Could be able to
5. Can or will be able to
6. Will be able to

2.6.2 Example answers:
2. I used to be able to run fast.
3. I'd like to be able to play the piano.
4. I've never been able to get up early.

2.6.3 Could run
3. Can wait
4. Couldn't eat
5. Can't hear
6. Couldn't sleep

2.6.4 Was able to finish it
3. Were able to find it
4. Was able to get away

2.6.5 Couldn't
5. Managed to
6. Could
7. Managed to
8. Could
9. Managed to
10. Couldn't

UNIT 27

2.7.1 We could have fish.
3. You could phone (her) now.
4. You could give her a book.
5. We could hang it in the kitchen.

2.7.2 I could kill him!
4. OK (could have is also possible)
5. I could stay here all day
6. It could be in the car (may/might are also possible)
7. OK
8. OK (could borrow is also possible)
9. You could fall.

2.7.3 Could have come/gone
3. Could apply
4. Could have been
5. Could have got/taken
6. Could come

UNIT 28

2.8.1 Must
6. Can't
3. Can't
7. Must
4. Must
8. Must
5. Must
9. Can't

2.8.2 Go
4. Have taken / have stolen / have moved
5. Be
6. Have been
7. Be looking
8. Have been
9. Have heard
10. Be following

2.8.3 It must have been very expensive.
4. They must have gone away.
5. I must have left it in the restaurant last night.
6. It can't have been easy for her.
7. He must have been waiting for somebody.
8. She can't have understood what I said. or She couldn't have understood what I said.
9. I must have forgotten to lock it.
10. My neighbours must have been having a party.
11. The driver can't have seen the red light. or The driver couldn't have seen ...

UNIT 29

2.9.1 She might be busy.
3. She might be working.
4. She might want to be alone.
5. She might have been ill yesterday.
6. She might have gone home early.
7. She might have had to go home early.
8. She might have been working yesterday.
9. She might not want to see me.
10. She might not be working today.
11. She might not have been feeling well yesterday.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.
Key to Exercises

29.2
2 be
3 have been
4 be waiting
5 have arrived / have come

29.3
2 a She might be watching TV.
    b She might have gone out.
3 a It might be in the car.
    b You might have left it in the restaurant.
4 a He might have gone to bed early.
    b He might not have heard the doorbell.
    c He might have been in the shower.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

29.4
3 might not have received it / might not have got it
4 couldn’t have been an accident
5 couldn’t have tried
6 might not have been American

UNIT 30
30.1
2 I might buy a Honda.
3 He might come on Saturday.
4 I might hang it in the dining room.
5 She might go to university.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.2
2 might wake
3 might bite
4 might need
5 might slip
6 might break
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.3
2 might be able to meet
3 might have to work
4 might have to leave
5 might have to sell
6 might be able to fix
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.4
2 I might not go out this evening.
3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.
4 Sam might not be able to go out with us tonight.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.5
2 I might as well go
3 We might as well paint the bathroom.
4 We might as well watch it. /
   ... watch the film.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

UNIT 31
31.1
3 We had to close
4 She has to leave or She’ll have to leave / She will have to leave
5 do you have to be
6 I have to go or I’ll have to go / I will have to go
7 Does he have to travel
8 do you have to go or will you have to go
9 did you have to wait
10 had to do

31.2
3 have to make
4 don’t have to do
5 had to ask
6 don’t have to pay or won’t have to pay / will not have to pay
7 didn’t have to go
8 has to make
9 will have to drive or is going to have to drive

31.3
3 OK (have to is also correct)
4 He has to work.
5 I had to work late yesterday evening.
6 OK (have to is also correct)
7 She has had to wear glasses since she was very young.
For the present perfect (has had)
with for and since, see Units 17–12.

31.4
3 don’t have to
4 mustn’t
5 don’t have to
6 mustn’t
7 doesn’t have to
8 mustn’t
9 mustn’t
10 don’t have to

UNIT 32
32.1
2 don’t need to 6 needn’t
3 must 7 must ... mustn’t
4 mustn’t 8 needn’t ... must
5 don’t need to

32.2
2 needn’t come
3 needn’t walk
4 needn’t ask
5 needn’t explain

32.3
2 You needn’t have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
3 You needn’t have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.
4 She needn’t have phoned me in the middle of the night. She could have waited until the morning.
5 You needn’t have shouted at me. You could have been more patient.
6 You needn’t have left without saying anything. You could have said goodbye to me.

32.4
3 You needn’t worry / You don’t need to worry / You don’t have to worry
4 You needn’t wait / You don’t need to wait / You don’t have to wait
5 OK (You needn’t keep is also correct)
6 I didn’t need to go / I didn’t have to go
7 OK

UNIT 33
33.1
2 You should look for another job.
3 He shouldn’t go to bed so late.
4 You should take a photo.
5 She shouldn’t use her car so much.
6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2
2 I don’t think you should go out. /
   I think you should stay at home.
3 I think you should apply for it. /
   ... for the job.
4 I don’t think the government should increase taxes.

33.3
3 should come
4 should do
5 should have done
6 should have won
7 should win
8 should be
9 should have turned
UNIT 34
34.1
2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed a little longer
3 they should visit / they visit / they visited the museum after lunch
4 we should pay / we pay / we paid the rent by Friday
5 I should go / I go / I went away for a few days

34.2
1 b OK
c OK
d wrong
2 a OK
b wrong
c OK

34.3
2 should say
3 should worry
4 should leave
5 should ask
6 should listen

34.4
2 If it should rain
3 If there should be any problems
4 If anyone should ask
5 Should there be any problems
6 Should anyone ask (where I'm going)

34.5
2 I should keep
3 I should phone
4 I should get

UNIT 35
35.1
2 You'd better put a plaster on it.
3 We'd better reserve a table.
4 You'd better not go to work (this morning).
5 I'd better pay my phone bill (soon). I'd better pay it (soon).
6 I'd better not disturb him.

35.2
3 'd better
4 should
5 should
6 'd better
7 should
8 should

35.3
1 b 'd/had
c close/shut
d hadn't
2 a did
b was done
c thought

35.4
2 It's time I had a holiday.
3 It's time the train left.
4 It's time I/we had a party.
5 It's time some changes were made. It's time the company made some changes.
6 It's time he tried something else.

UNIT 36
36.1
Example answers:
2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
4 It would be nice to have a big garden.
5 I'd like to go to Mexico.

36.2
2 'd enjoy / would enjoy
3 'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed
4 would you do
5 'd have stopped / would have stopped
6 would have been
7 'd be / would be
8 'd have passed / would have passed
9 would have

36.3
2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

UNIT 37
37.1
2 Can/Could I leave a message (for her)? or Can/Could you give her a message?
3 Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? or ... the way to the station? or ... where the station is?
4 Can/Could I try on these trousers? or Can/Could I try these (trousers) on?
5 Can I give/offer you a lift?

37.2
3 Do you think you could check these forms (for me)? or check them (for me)?
4 Do you mind if I leave work early?
5 Do you think you could turn the music down? or ... turn it down?
6 Is it OK if I close the window?
7 Do you think I could have a look at your paper? or ... at your newspaper?

37.3
2 Can/Could/Would you show me?
or Do you think you could show me? or ... do it for me?
3 Would you like to sit down?
or Would you like a seat?
or Can I offer you a seat?
4 Can/Could/Would you slow down?
or Do you think you could ... ?
5 Can/Could/May I/we have the bill, please? or Do you think I/we could have ... ?
6 Would you like to borrow it?

UNIT 38
38.1
2 b
3 a
4 b
5 b
6 a
7 b
Key to Exercises

38.2
2 bought
3 asked
4 would lose
5 'd be / would be
6 were ... stopped
7 gave ... 'd have / would have

38.3
2 If he did his driving test now, he'd fail it / ... he would fail it.
3 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
4 If she left her job, she wouldn't get another one.
5 If we invited Ben (to the party), we'd have to invite his friends too. / ... we would have to ...
6 If I told him what happened, he wouldn't believe me.

38.4
Example answers:
2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.
3 If you bought a car, it would cost you a lot to maintain it.
4 I'd be surprised if the economic situation improved.
5 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you tonight?

UNIT 39

39.1
3 I'd help / I would help
4 we lived
5 we'd live / we would live
6 It would taste
7 were/was
8 I wouldn't wait ... I'd go / I would go
9 you didn't go
10 there weren't ... there wouldn't be

39.2
2 I'd buy it / I would buy it if it weren't/wasn't so expensive.
3 We'd go out / We would go out more often if we could afford it.
4 If I didn't have to work late, I could meet you tomorrow. or ... I'd meet / I would meet ... or ... I'd be able to meet ...
5 We could have lunch outside if it weren't/raining / wasn't raining.
6 If I wanted his advice, I'd ask for it / I would ask for it.
UNIT 42
42.1 2 is made  3 was damaged  4 were invited  5 are shown  6 are held  7 was written ... was translated  8 were overtaken  9 is surrounded
42.2 2 When was television invented?  3 How are mountains formed?  4 When were antibiotics discovered?  5 What is silver used for?
42.3 3 covers  4 is covered  5 are locked  6 was sent ... arrived  7 sank ... was rescued  8 died ... were brought up  9 grew up  10 was stolen  11 disappeared  12 did Sue resign  13 was Ben fired  14 is owned  15 called ... was injured ... wasn't needed  16 were these pictures taken ... Did you take?  17 'm not bothered / am not bothered
42.4 2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.  3 This road isn't used much.  4 I was accused of stealing money.  5 How are languages learned/learnt?  6 We were warned not to go out alone.

UNIT 43
43.1 2 it can't be broken  3 it can be eaten  4 it can't be used  5 it can't be seen  6 it can be carried
43.2 3 be made  4 be spent  5 have been repaired  6 be carried  7 be woken up  8 have been arrested  9 have been caused
43.3 2 The computer is being used at the moment.  3 I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.  4 ... we found that the game had been cancelled.  5 A new ring road is being built round the city.  6 A new hospital has been built near the airport.
43.4 3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!  4 Somebody has taken it. or ... taken my umbrella.  5 He's been promoted. / He has been promoted.  6 It's being redecorated. / It is being redecorated.  7 It's working again. / It is working again.  8 It's been repaired. / It has been repaired.  9 The furniture had been moved.  10 He hasn't been seen since then.  11 Haven't you ever been mugged?

UNIT 44
44.1 2 I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.  3 Amy was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.  4 I wasn't told about the meeting.  5 How much will you be paid for your work?  6 I think Tom should have been offered the job.  7 Have you been shown what to do?
44.2 2 being invited  3 being given  4 being knocked down  5 being treated  6 being stuck
44.3 2-6  4 Ludwig van Beethoven was born in 1770.  5 Galileo was born in 1564.  6 Mahatma Gandhi was born in 1869.  7 Michael Jackson was born in 1958.  8 Martin Luther King was born in 1929.  9 Elvis Presley was born in 1935.  10 William Shakespeare was born in 1564.  11 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452.

UNIT 45
45.1 2 The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.  3 The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.  4 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.  5 The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.  6 The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.  7 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
45.2 2 He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.  3 He is supposed to be very rich.  4 He is supposed to have twelve children.  5 He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.
45.3 2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.  3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.  4 It was supposed to be a joke.  5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
45.4 2 're / are supposed to start  3 was supposed to phone  4 aren't / 're not are not supposed to block  5 was supposed to depart

UNIT 46
46.1 2 a  3 a  4 b
Key to Exercises

46.2
2 Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3 It cost twelve pounds to have my suit cleaned.
4 The last time I had my eyes tested was two years ago.
5 We’ve had some new cupboards fitted in the kitchen.
6 We need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3
2 I had it cut.
3 We had them cleaned.
4 He had it built.
5 I had them delivered.

46.4
2 have another key made
3 you had your hair cut
4 Do you have a newspaper delivered
5 we’re having / we are having a garage built
6 Have you had the washing machine fixed / Did you have the washing machine fixed
7 have your ears pierced
9 She had her credit cards stolen.
10 We all had our bags searched.

UNIT 47

47.1
2 He said (that) his father wasn’t very well.
3 He said (that) Rachel and Mark were getting married next month.
4 He said (that) his sister had had a baby.
5 He said (that) he didn’t know what Joe was doing.
6 He said (that) he’d seen / he had seen Helen at a party in June and she’d seemed / she had seemed fine. or He said (that) he saw Helen … and she seemed …
7 He said (that) he hadn’t seen Amy recently.
8 He said (that) he wasn’t enjoying his job very much.
9 He said (that) I could come and stay at his place if I was ever in London.
10 He said (that) his car had been stolen a few days ago.
11 He said (that) he wanted to go on holiday, but (he) couldn’t afford it.
12 He said (that) he’d tell / he would tell Chris he’d seen / he had seen me. or … he saw me.

47.2
Example answers:
2 she wasn’t coming / she was going somewhere else / she couldn’t come
3 they didn’t like each other / they didn’t get on with each other / they couldn’t stand each other
4 he didn’t know anyone
5 she would be away / she was going away
6 you were staying at home
7 he couldn’t speak / he didn’t speak any other languages
8 he’d seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 48

48.1
But you said you didn’t like fish.
3 But you said you couldn’t drive.
4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.
5 But you said you didn’t have any brothers or sisters.
6 But you said you’d / you had never been to the United States.
7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2
2 Tell 7 tell … said
3 Say 8 tell … say
4 said 9 told
5 told 10 said
6 said

48.3
2 her to slow down
3 her not to worry
4 asked Tom to give me a hand or … to help me
5 asked me to open my bag
6 asked him to get (me) a paper
7 told him to mind his own business
8 asked her to marry him
9 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49

49.1
2 Were you born there?
3 Are you married?
4 How long have you been married?
5 Have you got (any) children?
6 How old are they?
7 What do you do?
8 What does your wife do?

49.2
3 Who paid it? / Who paid the bill?
4 What happened?
5 What did she/Diane say?
6 Who does it / this book belong to?
7 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?
8 What did you fall over?
9 What fell off the shelf?
10 What does it / this word mean?
11 Who did you borrow it from? / … borrow the money from?
12 What are you worried about?

49.3
2 How is cheese made?
3 When was the computer invented?
4 Why isn’t Sue working today?
5 What time are your friends coming?
6 Why was the trip cancelled?
7 Where was your mother born?
8 Why didn’t you come to the party?
9 How did the accident happen?
10 Why doesn’t this machine work?

49.4
2 Don’t you like him?
3 Isn’t it good?
4 Haven’t you got any? or Don’t you have any?

UNIT 50

50.1
2 c 6 c
3 a 7 b
4 b 8 a
5 b

50.2
2 How far is it to the airport?
3 I wonder how old Tom is.
4 When is Lisa going on holiday?
5 Could you tell me where the post office is?
6 I don’t know whether anyone was injured in the accident.
7 Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

50.3
2 He asked me where I’d been. / … where I had been.
3 He asked me how long I’d been back. / … how long I had been back.
4 He asked me what I was doing now.
5 He asked me why I’d come back. / … why I had come back. or … why I came back.
6 He asked me where I was living.
7 He asked me if/whether I was glad to be back.
8 He asked me if/whether I had any plans to go away again.
9 He asked me if/whether I could help him find a job.
UNIT 51

51.1
2 doesn’t
3 was
4 will
5 am ... isn’t or ’m not ... is or can ... can’t or can’t ... can or am ... can’t or can’t ... is
6 should
7 won’t
8 do
9 didn’t
10 would ... could ... can’t

51.2
3 Do you? I don’t.
4 Didn’t you? I did.
5 Haven’t you? I have.
6 Did you? I didn’t.

51.3
Example answers:
3 So did I. or
Did you? What did you watch?
4 Neither will I. or
Won’t you? Where will you be?
5 So do I. or
Do you? What sort of books do you like?
6 So would I. or
Would you? Where would you like to live?
7 Neither can I. or
Can’t you? Why not?

51.4
2 I hope so.
3 I expect so.
4 I don’t think so.
5 I’m afraid not.
6 I’m afraid so.
7 I suppose so.
8 I hope not.
9 I think so.

UNIT 52

52.1
3 don’t you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn’t he
7 hasn’t she
8 can’t you
9 will they
10 aren’t there
11 shall we
12 is it
13 aren’t I
14 would you
15 hasn’t she
16 should I
17 had he
18 will you

52.2
2 It’s (very) expensive, isn’t it?
3 The course was great, wasn’t it?
4 You’ve had your hair cut, haven’t you? or
You had your hair cut, didn’t you?
5 She has a good voice, hasn’t she? or
She’s got / She has got / a good voice, hasn’t she? or
She has a good voice, doesn’t she?
6 It doesn’t look very good, does it?
7 This bridge isn’t very safe, is it? or
... doesn’t look very safe, does it?

52.3
2 Joe, you couldn’t give me a hand (with this table), could you?
3 Kate, you don’t know where Sarah is, do you? or
... you haven’t seen Sarah, have you?
4 Helen, you haven’t got a bicycle pump, have you? or
... you don’t have a bicycle pump, do you?
5 Ann, you couldn’t take me to the station, could you? or
... you couldn’t give me a lift to the station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven’t seen my keys, have you?

UNIT 53

53.1
2 playing tennis
3 driving too fast
4 going swimming
5 breaking the DVD player
6 waiting a few minutes

53.2
2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 using
8 forgetting
9 paying
10 being
11 trying
12 losing

53.3
2 travelling
3 painting the kitchen
4 turning the music down
5 not interrupting

53.4
Example answers:
2 going out
3 sitting on the floor
4 having a picnic
5 laughing
6 breaking down

UNIT 54

54.1
2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8 o’clock
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone

54.2
2 to get
3 to live
4 (how) to use
5 to tell
6 say or to say

54.3
2 to look
3 walking
4 waiting
5 to finish
6 barking
7 to call
8 having
9 missing
10 to be

54.4
2 Tom appears to be worried about something.
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 David tends to forget things.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5
2 what to do
3 how to ride
4 whether to go
5 where to put
6 how to use

UNIT 55

55.1
2 or do you want me to lend you some
3 or would you like me to shut it
4 or would you like me to show you
5 or do you want me to repeat it
6 or do you want me to wait

55.2
2 to stay with them
3 her to call Joe
4 him to be careful
5 her to give him a hand
UNIT 55
55.3
2 I didn’t expect it to rain.
3 Let him do what he wants.
4 Tim’s glasses make him look older.
5 I want you to know the truth.
6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.
9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

UNIT 56
56.1
driving 9 causing
2 to go 10 to do
3 to go 11 being
4 raining 12 to climb
5 to win 13 to tell
6 asking 14 talking... to see
7 asking 8 to answer

56.2
2 He remembers going to Paris with his parents when he was eight.
3 He doesn’t remember crying on his first day at school.
4 He can remember falling into the river.
5 He can’t remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. or
He can’t remember wanting to be a doctor.
6 He doesn’t remember being bitten by a dog.

56.3
1 b knocking
2 a to go
3 a to become
4 a losing or to lose
b to get / to feel
c crying or to cry

UNIT 57
57.1
1 Try turning it the other way.
2 Have you tried restarting it?
3 You could try phoning his office.
4 Have you tried taking an aspirin?
5 It needs painting.
6 It needs cutting.
7 They need tightening.
8 It needs emptying.

57.2
1 b knocking
2 a to go
3 b looking
4 c cleaning
d cutting
e You don’t need to iron...
It doesn’t need ironing
3 a overbearing
b get or to get
c smiling
d make or to make

UNIT 58
58.1
Example answers:
2 I don’t mind playing cards.
3 I don’t like being alone. or
2 to be alone.
4 I enjoy going to museums.
5 I love cooking. or I love to cook.
6 She likes teaching biology.
7 He likes taking pictures.
8 He likes studying medicine.
9 He doesn’t like being famous.
10 She doesn’t like taking risks.
11 She doesn’t like to take risks.
8 I like to know things in advance.

58.2
2 She likes teaching biology.
3 He likes taking pictures.
4 I didn’t like working there.
5 She likes studying medicine.
6 He doesn’t like being famous.
7 She doesn’t like taking risks.
8 She doesn’t like to take risks.
9 I like to know things in advance.

UNIT 59
59.1
Example answers:
2 I prefer basketball to football.
3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching DVDs at home.
4 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.
5 I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch DVDs at home.
6 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do.

59.2
3 prefer
4 eat/stay
5 I’d rather (wait) / I’d prefer to (wait)
6 to go
7 I’d rather (think) / I’d prefer (think)
8 I’d prefer to stand.
9 go
11 I’d prefer to go for a swim rather than play tennis.
12 I’d rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
13 I’d prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.
14 I’d rather listen to some music than watch TV.

59.3
2 (would you rather) I told her
3 would you rather I did it
4 would you rather I phoned her

59.4
2 stayed/remained/waited
3 stay
4 didn’t
5 were
6 didn’t
UNIT 60
60.1
1 applying for the job
2 remembering names
3 winning the lottery
4 being late
5 eating at home, we went to a restaurant
6 having to queue or queuing
7 playing very well
8 UNIT
60.2
1 by standing on a chair
2 by turning a key
3 by borrowing too much money
4 by doing too fast
5 by putting some pictures on the walls
6 paying/settling
7 going
8 using
9 being/travelling/sitting
10 asking/telling/consulting
11 doing/having
12 turning/going
13 taking
60.4
1 I’m looking forward to seeing her. / ... seeing Kate.
2 I’m not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).
3 She’s looking forward to leaving school (next summer).
4 I’m looking forward to playing tennis (tomorrow).

UNIT 61
61.1
1 When Jack started working in this job, he wasn’t used to driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he got used to it. Now it’s no problem for him. He’s used to driving two hours every morning. / He is used to driving ...
2 She wasn’t used to working nights and it took her a few months to get used to it. Now, after a year, it’s OK for her. She’s used to working nights. / She is used to working ...
61.2
1 No, I’m used to sleeping on the floor.
2 I’m used to working long hours.
3 Yes, I’m not used to going to bed so late.
61.3
2 They soon got used to her. / ... to the/their new teacher.
3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.
4 (example answers) They’ll have to get used to the weather. / ... to the food. / ... to speaking a foreign language.
61.4
2 drink
3 eating
4 having
5 have
6 go
7 be
8 being
9 live ... living

UNIT 62
62.1
2 doing
3 coming/going
4 spending/having
5 buying/having
6 seeing
7 watching
8 solving
9 buying/having
62.2
2 of causing
3 from walking (or stop people walking)
4 for interrupting
5 of using
6 of doing
7 from escaping (or prevent the prisoner escaping)
8 on telling
9 to eating
10 for being
11 for inviting
12 of (not) wearing
62.3
2 on taking Ann to the station
3 on getting married
4 Sue for coming to see her
5 (to me) for not phoning earlier
6 me of being selfish

UNIT 63
63.1
2 There’s no point in working if you don’t need money.
3 There’s no point in trying to study if you feel tired.
4 There’s no point in hurrying if you’ve got plenty of time.
63.2
2 asking David
3 in going out
4 phoning her/Lisa
5 complaining (about what happened)
6 keeping
63.3
2 remembering people’s names
3 getting a job
4 getting a ticket for the game
5 understanding him
63.4
2 reading
3 packing / getting ready
4 watching
5 going/climbing/walking
6 getting/being
63.5
2 went swimming
3 go skiing
4 goes riding
5 gone shopping

UNIT 64
64.1
2 I opened the box to see what was in it.
3 I’m saving money to go to Canada.
4 I need a knife to chop these onions.
5 I’m wearing two sweaters to keep warm.
6 I phoned the police to report the accident.
64.2
2 to read
3 to walk / to go on foot
4 to drink
5 to put / to carry
6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
7 to go / to travel
8 to talk / to speak
9 to wear / to put on
10 to celebrate
11 to help / to assist
64.3
2 for
3 to
4 to
5 for
6 to
7 for
8 for ... to
Key to Exercises

UNIT 66

66.1
3 I’m afraid of losing it.
4 I was afraid to tell her.
5 We were afraid of missing our train.
6 We were afraid to look.
7 I was afraid of dropping it.
8 a I was afraid to eat it.
   b I was afraid of getting sick.

66.2
2 in starting
3 to read
4 in getting
5 to know
6 in looking

66.3
2 sorry to hear
3 sorry for saying / sorry about saying / sorry I said
4 sorry to disturb
5 sorry for losing / sorry about losing / sorry I lost

66.4
1 b to leave
c from leaving
2 a to solve
   b in solving
3 a of/about going
to go
c to go
d to going
4 a to buy
   b on buying
c to buy
d of buying

UNIT 67

67.1
2 arrive
3 take it / do it
4 it ring
5 him play or him playing
6 you lock it / you do it
7 her fall

67.2
2 We saw David and Helen playing tennis.
3 We saw Clare eating in a restaurant. / ... having a meal in a restaurant.
4 We heard Bill playing his guitar.
5 We could smell the dinner burning.
6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

67.3
3 tell 8 explode
crying 9 crawling
5 riding 10 slamming
6 say 11 sleeping
7 run ... climb

UNIT 68

68.1
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
3 Sue opened the door carefully trying not to make a noise.
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Lisa was in London for two years working in a bookshop.
6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

68.2
2 I fell asleep watching TV.
3 A friend of mine slipped and fell getting off a bus.
4 I got very wet walking home in the rain.
5 Laura had an accident driving to work yesterday.
6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

68.3
2 Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.
3 Having had lunch, they continued their journey.
4 Having done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.

68.4
2 Thinking they might be hungry, ...
3 Being a vegetarian, ...
4 Not knowing his email address, ...
5 Having travelled a lot, ...
6 Not being able to speak the local language, ...
7 Having spent nearly all our money, ...

UNIT 69

69.1
3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
4 OK
5 I use a toothbrush ...
6 ... if there’s a bank near here?
7 ... for an insurance company
8 OK
9 OK
10 ... we stayed in a big hotel.
11 ... I hope we come to a petrol station soon.
12 ... I have a problem.
13 ... It’s a very interesting idea.
14 John has an interview for a job tomorrow.
15 ... It’s a good game.
16 OK
17 Jane was wearing a beautiful necklace.
10

UNIT70

70.1
2 a a paper
b paper
3 a Light
b a light
4 a time
b a wonderful time
5 a nice room
6 advice
7 nice weather
8 bad luck
9 job
10 journey
11 total chaos
12 some bread
13 doesn't
14 Your hair is ... it
15 The damage

70.2
2 information
3 chairs
4 furniture
5 hair
6 progress
7 job
8 work
9 permission
10 advice
11 experience
12 experiences

70.3
2 I'd like some information about places to see in the town.
3 Can you give me (some) advice about which courses to do? / ... courses I can do?
4 What time is the news (on)?
5 It's a beautiful view, isn't it?
6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 71

71.1
3 It's a vegetable.
4 It's a game. / It's a board game.
5 They're birds.
6 It's a (tall/high) building.
7 They're planets.
8 It's a flower.
9 They're rivers.
10 They're musical instruments.
12 He was a writer / a poet / a playwright / a dramatist.
13 He was a scientist / a physician.
14 They were US presidents / American presidents / presidents of the USA.
15 She was an actress / a film actress / a film star / a movie star.
16 They were singers.
17 They were painters / artists.

71.2
2 He's a waiter.
3 She's a journalist.
4 He's a surgeon.
5 He's a chef.
6 He's a plumber.
7 She's a tour guide.
8 She's an interpreter.

71.3
4 a
5 an
6 - (You're always asking questions!)
7 a
8 Some
9 - (Do you like staying in hotels?)
10 - (I've got sore feet.)
11 a
12 some
13 a ... a
14 - (Those are nice shoes.)
15 some
16 You need a visa to visit some countries
17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
18 He's a liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 72

72.1
1 ... and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put the magazine.
2 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn't hurt, but the car was badly damaged.
3 ... a blue one and a grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who the owner of the grey one is.
4 My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.

72.2
1 a a
b the
c the
2 a a
b a
c the
3 a a
b the
c the
4 a an ... The
b the
c the
5 a the
b a
c a

72.3
2 the dentist
3 the door
4 a mistake
5 the bus station
6 a problem
7 the post office
8 the floor
9 the book
10 a job in a bank
11 a small apartment in the city centre
12 a supermarket at the end of the street

72.4
Example answers:
2 About once a month.
3 Once or twice a year.
4 50 kilometres an hour.
5 About seven hours a night.
6 Two or three times a week.
7 About two hours a day.
8 About £20 a day.
Key to Exercises

UNIT 73
73.1 1 a nice holiday ... the best holiday 2 the nearest shop ... the end of this street 3 a lovely day ... a cloud in the sky 4 to the internet ... the same problem 5 the most expensive hotel ... a cheaper hotel 6 to travel in space ... go to the moon 7 a star ... a planet ... the largest planet in the solar system
73.2 2 watching TV 3 the radio 4 The television 5 had dinner 6 the same time 7 the capital 8 for breakfast 9 the ground ... the sky
73.3 2 the same thing 3 Room 25 is on the second floor. 4 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days. or ... goes round Earth ... 5 a very hot day ... the hottest day of the year 6 We had lunch in a nice restaurant by the sea. 7 at the cinema 8 eat a good breakfast 9 on the wrong platform 10 The next train ... from Platform 3 11 You’ll find the information you need at the top of page 15.
73.4 2 the sea 5 breakfast 3 question 8 6 the gate 4 the cinema 7 Gate 21

UNIT 74
74.1 2 to school 3 at home 4 to work 5 in hospital 6 at university 7 in bed 8 to prison
74.2 2 school 3 the school 4 School 5 ... get to and from school ... The school isn’t very far. 6 school
74.3 1 c OK 2 d the university 3 a OK 4 b OK 5 c the church 6 b OK 7 a OK 8 c OK
74.4 2 in bed 6 go to bed 3 after work 7 The bed 4 in the sea 8 at sea 5 like home 9 work

UNIT 75
75.1 Example answers:
2–5
• I like cats.  
• I don’t like zoos.  
• I don’t mind snow.  
• I’m not interested in boxing.
75.2 3 spiders 4 meat 5 the questions 6 the people 7 History 8 lies 9 The hotels 10 The water 11 the grass 12 patience
75.3 2 Apples 3 the apples 4 Women ... men 5 tea 6 The vegetables 7 Life 8 holidays (= ‘holidays by the sea’ in general) 9 education 10 the people 11 people ... aggression 12 All the books 13 the rooms 14 war 15 The First World War 16 films 17 the history of modern art 18 the marriage 19 Most people ... marriage ... family life ... society

UNIT 76
76.1 1 b the cheetah 2 a the swan 3 a the wheel 4 a the penguin 5 a the owl 6 c the telescope
76.2 2 a 3 the 4 a 5 the 6 the 7 a 8 The
76.3 2 the injured 3 the unemployed 4 the sick 5 the rich ... the poor
76.4 2 a German Germans 3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman the French 4 a Russian Russians 5 a Chinese the Chinese 6 a Brazilian Brazilians 7 an Englishman/Englishwoman the English 8 ...

UNIT 77
77.1 2 the 3 the ... the 4 – (President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.) 5 the 6 – (I’m looking for Professor Brown.)
77.2 3 OK 4 the United States 5 The south of England ... the north 6 OK 7 the Channel 8 the Middle East 9 OK 10 the Swiss Alps 11 The UK 12 The Seychelles ... the Indian Ocean 13 OK 14 The river Volga ... the Caspian Sea
UNIT 78

78.1
2 Turner's in Carter Road
3 the Crown (Hotel) in Park Road
4 St. Peter's in Market Street
5 the City Museum in George Street
6 Blackstone's (Books) in Forest Avenue
7 Mario's (Pizza) in George Street
8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

78.2
2 The Eiffel Tower
3 Buckingham Palace
4 The White House
5 The Kremlin
6 Broadway
7 The Acropolis
8 Gatwick Airport

78.3
2 Central Park
3 St. James's Park
4 The Imperial Hotel ... Baker Street
5 Dublin Airport
6 Liverpool University
7 Harrison's
8 the Park Plaza
9 The Statue of Liberty ... New York Harbour
10 the Science Museum
11 IBM ... British Telecom
12 The Classic
13 the Great Wall
14 The Times
15 Cambridge University Press
16 the College of Art

UNIT 79

79.1
3 shorts
4 a means
5 means
6 some scissors or a pair of scissors
7 a series
8 series
9 species

79.2
2 politics 5 physics
3 economics 6 gymnastics
4 athletics 7 electronics

79.3
2 don't
3 want
4 was
5 aren't
6 are
7 wasn't
8 does or do
9 they are
10 Do
11 is or are
12 enjoy

79.4
3 ... wearing black jeans.
4 OK
5 ... very nice people.
6 Ten pounds isn't ...
7 ... buy some new pyjamas. or ... buy a new pair of pyjamas.
8 OK (The committee hasn't is also correct)
9 There was a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman ...
10 What are the police ...
11 These scissors aren't ...
12 OK

UNIT 80

80.1
3 a job interview
4 (your) holiday pictures
5 milk chocolate
6 a factory inspector
7 a race horse
8 a horse race
9 running shoes
10 a university student
11 (your) exam results
12 the living room carpet
13 an oil company scandal
14 car factory workers
15 a road improvement scheme
16 a New York department store
17 a five-day course
18 a two-part question
19 a thirty-year-old man

80.2
2 seat belt
3 credit card
4 weather forecast
5 newspaper editor
6 shop window
7 room number
8 birthday party
9 truck driver

80.3
2 twenty-pound
3 ten-pound
4 15-minute
5 60 minutes
6 two-hour
7 twelve-storey
8 five days
9 Five-star
10 six years old
11 500-year-old
12 twelve-hour ... 24-hour

UNIT 81

81.1
3 your friend's umbrella
4 OK
5 Charles's daughter
6 Helen and Dan's son
7 OK
8 last Monday's newspaper
9 OK
10 OK
11 Your children's friends
12 Our neighbours' garden
13 OK
14 David's hair
15 Katherine's party
16 OK
17 Mike's parents' car
18 OK
19 OK (the government's economic policy is also correct)

81.2
2 a boy's name
3 children's clothes
4 a girls' school
5 a bird's nest
6 a women's magazine

81.3
2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
3 The town's only cinema has closed down.
4 Britain's weather is very changeable.
5 The region's main industry is tourism.

81.4
2 twenty minutes' walk
3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday
4 an/one hour's sleep
### Key to Exercises

#### UNIT 82

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### UNIT 83

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>83.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>83.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>83.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>83.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>83.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### UNIT 84

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>84.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>84.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### UNIT 85

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>85.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>85.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 86
86.1
3 no 8 No
4 any 9 no
5 None 10 any
6 none 11 none
7 any 12 no
8 Nobody/No-one
9 Nobody/No-one
10 I wasnt talking to anybody/anyone
11 I dont want any sugar
12 I am not going anywhere
13 I did not get any emails.
14 I did not pay anything.

86.2
2 Nobody/No-one.
3 None.
4 Nowhere.
5 Nothing.
8 I wasnt talking to anybody/anyone
9 I dont want any sugar.
10 I am not going anywhere.
11 I did not get any emails.
12 I did not pay anything.

86.3
2 nobody/no-one
3 Nowhere
4 anything
5 Nothing I couldnt find anything...
6 Nothing
7 anywhere
8 Nobody/No-one said anything.

86.4
2 nobody 6 Anything
3 anyone 7 anything
4 Anybody 8 any
5 Nobody 9 No-one...anyone

UNIT 87
87.1
3 a lot of salt
4 OK
5 It cost a lot
6 OK
7 many people or a lot of people
8 Mike travels a lot.
9 OK
10 a lot of money
87.2
2 He has (got) plenty of money.
3 There's plenty of room.
4 ... she still has plenty to learn.
5 There is plenty to see.
6 There are plenty of hotels.

87.3
2 little 5 few
3 many 6 little
4 much 7 many

87.4
3 a few dollars
4 OK
5 a little time
6 OK
7 only a few words
8 a few months

87.5
2 a little 6 a little
3 a few 7 little
4 few 8 a few
5 little

UNIT 88
88.1
3 of my spare time
4 accidents
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 of my dinner

Example answers:
2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
6 (of) the money

88.3
2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 None of it
7 Some of them
8 all of it

UNIT 89
89.1
2 Neither 4 Either
3 both 5 Neither

89.2
2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 neither driver...both / both
6 the / both of the cars
7 the / both of

89.3
2 either of them
3 both of them
4 Neither of us
5 neither of them

89.4
2 Both Joe and Sam are on holiday.
3 Neither Joe nor Sam has (got) a car.
5 Brian neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
6 The movie was both boring and long.
7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.
9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

89.5
2 either 5 any
3 any 6 either
4 none 7 neither

UNIT 90
90.1
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody/everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody/everyone
10 All
11 everything/all
12 Everybody/Everyone
13 All
14 everything

90.2
2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family play/plays tennis.
6 Ann/She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Ann worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

90.3
2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months
Key to Exercises

UNIT 91

91.1
3 Each 6 every
4 Every 7 each
5 Each 8 every

91.2
3 Every 8 every
4 Each 9 each
5 every 10 Every
6 every 11 each
7 each 12 each

91.3
2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. / Sonia and I each had ten pounds.
3 Those postcards cost 80 pence each. / Those postcards are 80 pence each.
4 We paid £150 each. / We each paid £150.

UNIT 92

92.1
2 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
3 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.
4 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.
5 A coward is someone who is not brave.
6 An atheist is someone who doesn’t believe in God.
7 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.
8 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live in a house or apartment.

92.2
2 The waitress who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.
5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

UNIT 93

93.1
3 OK (the people who/that we met is also correct)
4 The people who work in the office
5 OK (the people who/that I work with is also correct)
6 OK (the money that/which I gave you is also correct)
7 the money that/which was on the table
8 OK (the worst film that/which you’ve ever seen is also correct)
9 the best thing that/which has ever happened to you

93.2
2 you’re wearing or that/which you’re wearing
3 you’re going to see or that/which you’re going to see
4 I/we wanted to visit or that/which I/we wanted to visit
5 I/we invited to the party or who/whom/that we invited ...
6 you had to do or that/which you had to do
7 I/we rented or that/which I/we rented

UNIT 94

94.1
2 whose wife is an English teacher
3 who owns a restaurant
4 whose ambition is to climb Everest
5 who have just got married
6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2
2 where I can get some water
3 (The) factory where I work
4 the hotel where Sue is staying
5 (the) park where I/we play football

94.3
2 where 6 where
3 who 7 whose
4 whose 8 whom
5 whom

94.4
Example answers:
2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was very low.
3 I’ll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.
4 Do you remember the day we first met?
5 The reason they don’t have a car is that they don’t need one.
6 2003 was the year Amanda got married.

UNIT 95

95.1
3 We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge, which is not far from London.
4 I went to see the doctor, who told me I needed to change my diet.
5 Steven, who/whom I’ve known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.
6 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.
7 The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be finished next month.
8 Alaska, where my brother lives, is the largest state in the USA.
9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.
UNIT 97

97.1
2 the man sitting next to me on the plane
3 The taxi taking us to the airport
4 a path leading to the river
5 A factory employing 500 people
6 a brochure containing the information I needed
97.2
2 the gate damaged in the storm
3 Most of the suggestions made at the meeting
4 The paintings stolen from the museum
5 the man arrested by the police
97.3
3 living
4 offering
5 called
6 blown
7 sitting ... reading
8 working ... studying
97.4
3 There's somebody coming.
4 There were a lot of people travelling.
5 There was nobody else staying there.
6 There was nothing written on it.
7 There's a course beginning next Monday.

UNIT 98

98.1
2 a exhausting
   b exhausted
3 a depressing
   b depressed
   c depressed
4 a exciting
   b exciting
   c excited
98.2
2 interested
3 exciting
4 embarrassing
5 embarrassed
6 amazed
7 amazing
8 amused
9 terrifying ... shocked
10 bored ... boring
11 boring ... interesting
98.3
2 bored
3 confusing
4 disgusting
5 interested
6 annoyed
7 boring
8 exhausted
9 excited
10 amusing
11 interesting

UNIT 99

99.1
2 an unusual gold ring
3 a beautiful old house
4 black leather gloves
5 an old American film
6 a long thin face
7 big black clouds
8 a lovely sunny day
9 an ugly yellow dress
10 a long wide avenue
11 a lovely little restaurant
12 a little old red car
13 a nice new green sweater
14 a small black metal box
15 a big fat black cat
16 beautiful long black hair
17 an interesting old French painting
18 an enormous red and yellow umbrella

UNIT 100

100.1
2 badly
3 easily
4 patiently
5 unexpectedly
6 regularly
7 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly

UNIT 101
UNIT 102

102.1
1 so
2 so
3 such a
4 so
5 such
6 such a
7 so
8 such
9 such a
10 such a
11 so
12 so ... such
13 so
14 such a
15 such a

102.2
3 I was so tired (that) I couldn’t keep my eyes open.
4 We had such a good time on holiday (that) we didn’t want to come home.
5 She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language. or She speaks such good English (that) ...
6 I’ve got such a lot to do (that) I don’t know where to begin. or I’ve got so much to do (that) ...
7 The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.
8 I had such a big breakfast (that) I didn’t eat anything else for the rest of the day.
9 It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.
10 I was so surprised (that) I didn’t know what to say.

Example answers:
2 a She’s so friendly.
   b She’s such a nice person.
3 a It’s so lively
   b It’s such an exciting place.
4 a It’s so exhausting
   b It’s such a difficult job.
5 a I haven’t seen you for so long
   b I haven’t seen you for such a long time.

102.3

UNIT 103

103.1
3 enough money
4 enough milk
5 warm enough
6 enough room
7 well enough
8 enough time
9 big enough
10 enough cups

UNIT 104

104.1
2 quite hungry
3 Quite good
4 quite often
5 quite noisy
6 quite surprised
7 quite late
8 quite old

104.2
2 quite a good voice
3 quite a long way
4 a pretty cold wind
5 quite a lot of traffic
6 a pretty busy day

Example answers:
2 rather long
3 rather disappointed
4 rather strange
5 rather impatient

104.3
3 more than a little ...
4 completely
5 more than a little ...
6 more than a little ...
7 completely

104.5
2 quite safe
3 quite impossible
4 quite right
5 quite different
6 quite unnecessary
7 quite sure
UNIT 105

105.1
2 stronger
3 smaller
4 more expensive
5 warmer/hotter
6 more interesting / more exciting
7 nearer/closer
8 more difficult / more complicated
9 better
10 worse
11 longer
12 more quietly
13 more often
14 further/farther
15 happier / more cheerful

105.2
3 more serious than
4 thinner
5 bigger
6 more interested
7 more important than
8 simpler / more simple
9 more crowded than
10 more peaceful than
11 more easily
12 higher than

105.3
2 It takes longer by train than by car.
3 I ran further/farther than Dan.
4 Joe did worse than Chris in the test.
5 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
6 The buses run more often than the trains. or The buses run more frequently than ... or The buses are more frequent than ...
7 We were busier than usual in the office today.

UNIT 106

106.1
2 much bigger
3 much more interesting than
4 a bit cooler
5 far more complicated than
6 a bit more slowly
7 a lot easier
8 slightly older

106.2
2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
4 any further/farther
5 no worse than

106.3
2 bigger and bigger
3 heavier and heavier
4 more and more nervous
5 worse and worse
6 more and more expensive
7 better and better
8 more and more talkative

106.4
2 the more I liked him or the more I got to like him
3 the more profit you (will) make or the higher your profit (will be) or the bigger your profit (will be)
4 the harder it is to concentrate
5 the more impatient she became

106.5
2 more 7 elder or older
3 longer 8 slightly
4 any 9 no
5 the 10 less ... better
6 older

UNIT 107

107.1
2 My salary isn’t as high as yours.
3 You don’t know as much about cars as me. or … as I do.
4 We aren’t as busy today as we were yesterday. or … as yesterday.
5 I don’t feel as bad as I did earlier. or … as I felt earlier.
6 Our neighbours haven’t lived here as long as us. or … as we have.
7 I wasn’t as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. or … as usual.

107.2
3 The station wasn’t as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don’t go out as much as I used to. or … as often as I used to.
6 Karen used to have longer hair.
7 You don’t know them as well as me. or … as I do.
8 There aren’t as many people at this meeting as at the last one.

107.3
2 as well as
3 as long as
4 as soon as
5 as often as
6 as quietly as
7 just as comfortable as
8 just as hard as
9 just as bad as

107.4
2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom’s. or My birthday is the same as Tom’s.

107.5
2 than him / than he does
3 as me / as I do
4 than us / than we were
5 than her / than she is
6 as them / as they have been

UNIT 108

108.1
2 It’s the cheapest restaurant in the town.
3 It was the happiest day of my life.
4 She’s the most intelligent student in the class.
5 It’s the most valuable painting in the gallery.
6 It’s the busiest time of the year.
7 He’s one of the richest men in the country.
8 It’s one of the biggest castles in Europe.
9 She’s one of the best players in the team. (on the team is also possible)
10 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
11 It’s one of the most famous universities in the world.

108.2
3 larger
4 the smallest
5 better
6 the worst
7 the most popular
8 … the highest mountain in the … world … It is higher than …
9 the tallest
10 more comfortable
11 the quickest
12 quicker
13 the most expensive
14 The oldest or The eldest

108.3
2 That’s the funniest joke I’ve ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I’ve ever tasted.
4 She’s the most generous person I’ve ever met.
5 That’s the furthest/farthest I’ve ever run.
6 It’s the worst mistake I’ve ever made. or It was the worst …
7 Who’s the most famous person you’ve ever met?
UNIT 109

109.1
3 Joe doesn’t like football very much.
4 OK
5 I ate my breakfast quickly and ...
6 ... a lot of people to the party?
7 OK
8 Did you go to bed late last night?
9 OK
10 I met a friend of mine on my way home.

109.2
2 We won the game easily.
3 I closed the door quietly.
4 Tanya speaks German quite well.
5 Sam watches TV all the time.
6 Please don’t ask that question again.
7 Does Kevin play football every weekend?
8 I borrowed some money from a friend of mine.

109.3
2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.
3 Why did you come home so late?
4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
5 I haven’t been to the cinema recently.
6 Please write your name at the top of the page.
7 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
8 We walked around the town all morning.
9 I didn’t see you at the party on Saturday night.
10 We found some interesting books in the library.
11 Laura left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
12 They are building a new hotel opposite the park.

UNIT 110

110.1
3 I usually have ...
4 OK
5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
6 ... and I also went to the bank.
7 Jane always has to hurry ...
8 I’ve never worked / I have never worked ...
9 OK (I never have enough time.)
   I’m always busy. / I am always busy.

110.2
2 Katherine is always very generous.
3 I don’t usually have to work on Saturdays.
4 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?
5 ... he is also learning Japanese.
   a We were all on holiday in Spain.
   b We were all staying at the same hotel.
   c We all enjoyed ourselves.
7 a The new hotel is probably very expensive.
   b It probably costs a lot to stay there.
   c I can probably help you.
   d I probably can’t help you.

UNIT 111

111.1
3 He doesn’t write poems any more.
4 He still wants to be a teacher.
5 He isn’t / He’s not interested in politics any more.
6 He’s still single.
7 He doesn’t go fishing any more.
8 He doesn’t have a beard any more.
   or He hasn’t got ...
10–12
   • He no longer writes poems.
   • He is / He’s no longer interested in politics.
   • He no longer goes fishing.
   • He no longer has a beard. or
   • He’s no longer got a beard.

UNIT 112

112.1
2 even Lisa
3 not even Amy
4 even Lisa
5 even Kate
6 not even Lisa

112.2
2 We even painted the floor.
3 She’s even met the prime minister.
4 You could even hear it / You could
   even hear the noise from the next street. or
   You could hear it / You could
   hear the noise even from the next street.
6 I can’t even remember her name.
7 There isn’t even a cinema.
8 He didn’t even tell his wife (where
   he was going). The
9 I don’t even know the people next
door.

112.3
2 even older
3 even better
4 even more difficult
5 even worse
6 even less

112.4
2 if
3 even if
4 even
5 even though
6 Even
7 even though
8 even if
9 Even though
UNIT 113

113.1
2 Although I had never seen her before
3 although it was quite cold
4 although we don’t like them very much
5 Although I didn’t speak the language well
6 Although the heating was on
7 although I’d met her twice before
8 although we’ve known each other a long time

113.2
2 a In spite of (or Despite) b Although
3 a because b although
4 a because of b in spite of (or despite)
5 a although b because of

Example answers:
6 a he hadn’t studied very hard
   b he had studied very hard
7 a I was hungry b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3
2 In spite of having very little money, they are happy. or
   In spite of the fact (that) they have very little money ...
3 Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk home. or
   I managed to walk home although my ...
4 I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story. / ... in spite of the story being silly. / ... in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly. or
   In spite of ..., I enjoyed the film.
5 Despite living in the same street, we hardly ever see each other. or
   Despite the fact (that) we live in ... or We hardly ever see each other despite ...
6 Even though I was only out for five minutes, I got very wet in the rain. or
   I got very wet in the rain even though I was ...

113.4
2 It’s very windy though.
3 We ate it though.
4 I don’t like her husband though.

UNIT 114

114.1
2-5
   • Take a map in case you get lost.
   • Take an anorak in case it rains.
   • Take a camera in case you want to take some pictures.
   • Take some water in case you’re thirsty. / ... in case you are thirsty.
   • or ... you get thirsty.

114.2
2 I’ll say goodbye now in case I don’t see you again (before you go).
3 Can you check the list in case we forgot something?
   or ... forgot anything?
4 You should back up your files in case there’s a problem with your computer. / ... there is a problem with your computer.

114.3
2 in case I forgot it.
3 in case they were worried (about me).
4 in case she didn’t get the first one. / in case she hadn’t got ... / in case she hadn’t gotten ...
5 in case they came to London (one day).

114.4
3 If 7 if
4 if 8 in case
5 in case 9 in case
6 if

UNIT 115

115.1
2 You won’t know what to do unless you listen carefully.
3 I’ll never speak to her again unless she apologises to me. or
   Unless she apologises to me, I’ll ...
4 He won’t be able to understand you unless you speak very slowly. or
   Unless you speak very slowly, he ...
5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon. or
   Unless business improves soon, the company ...

115.2
2 I’m not going (to the party) unless you go too. / ... unless you’re going too.
3 The dog won’t attack you unless you move suddenly.
4 Ben won’t speak to you unless you ask him something.
5 The doctor won’t see you unless it’s an emergency.

115.3
2 unless 7 provided
3 providing 8 Unless
4 as long as 9 unless
5 unless 10 as long as
6 unless

Example answers:
2 it’s not too hot
3 there isn’t too much traffic
4 it isn’t raining
5 I’m in a hurry
6 you have something else to do
7 you pay it back next week
8 you take risks

UNIT 116

116.1
2 I listened as she told me her story.
3 I burnt myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
4 The crowd cheered as the two teams came onto the field.
5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

116.2
2 As today is a public holiday, many of the shops are shut.
3 As I didn’t want to disturb anybody, I was very quiet.
4 As I don’t know what to do, I need some advice.
5 As none of us had a watch, we didn’t know what time it was.

116.3
3 because
4 at the same time as
5 at the same time as
6 because
7 because

116.4
3 OK
4 when I was in London
5 When I left school
6 OK
7 when I was a child

116.5

Example answers:
1 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
2 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
3 As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi, I had to walk home.
4 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of the camera.
Key to Exercises

UNIT 117
117.1
3 like her mother
4 people like him
5 OK
6 like most of his friends or as most of his friends are
7 like talking to the wall
8 OK
9 OK
10 OK
11 like a bomb exploding
12 like a fish
117.2
2 like blocks of ice
3 like a beginner
4 as a tour guide
5 like a theatre
6 as a birthday present
7 like winter
8 like a child
117.3
2 like 11 like
3 as 12 as
4 like 13 as
5 like 14 Like
6 as or like 15 as
7 like 16 As
8 as 17 like
9 as 18 as or like
10 like or such as

UNIT 118
118.1
2 You look like you've seen a ghost. ... like you saw a ghost.
3 You sound as if you're having a good time.
4 I feel like I've (just) run a marathon. ... like I (just) ran a marathon.
118.2
2 It looks like it's going to rain.
3 It sounds like they're having an argument.
4 It looks like there's been an accident.
5 It looks like we'll have to walk.
6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.
118.3
2 as if he meant what he said
3 as if she's hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
4 as if he hadn't eaten for a week
5 as if she was enjoying it
6 as if I'm going to be sick
7 as if she didn't want to come
8 as if I didn't exist

UNIT 119
119.1
3 during 9 during
4 for 10 for
5 during 11 for
6 for 12 for
7 for 13 during
8 for 14 for
119.2
3 while 9 while
4 While 10 during
5 During 11 while
6 while 12 during
7 during 13 while
8 During 14 while
119.3
Example answers:
3 Nobody came to see me while I was in hospital.
4 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?
5 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.
6 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
7 Don't open the car door while the car is moving.
8 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.
9 It started to rain during the game.
10 It started to rain while we were walking home.
11 What are you going to do while you're on holiday?

UNIT 120
120.1
2 I have to be at the airport by 8.30.
3 Let me know by Saturday whether you can come to the party.
4 Please make sure that you're here by 2 o'clock.
5 If we leave now, we should arrive by lunchtime.
120.2
2 by 3 by
3 by 4 until
4 until (5.30) ... by (now)
5 by 7 until
6 by 8 by
9 by 10 until
11 By
12 by

UNIT 121
121.1
2 on
3 in
4 At or On
5 on or I last saw her Tuesday. (no preposition)
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 on or There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve. (no preposition)
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 in
15 On Saturday night or Saturday night (no preposition) ... at midnight
16 at 5 o'clock in the morning
17 on 7 January ... in April
18 at home on Tuesday morning or at home Tuesday morning (no preposition) ... in the afternoon
121.2
2 at night
3 in the evening
4 on 21 July 1969
5 at the same time
6 in the 1920s
7 in about 20 minutes
8 at the moment
9 in the Middle Ages
10 in 11 seconds
11 on Saturdays or ... works Saturdays (no preposition)
UNIT 122

122.1
2 on time
3 in time
4 on time
5 in time
6 on time
7 in time
8 in time
9 on time
10 a

122.2
2 I got home just in time.
3 I stopped him just in time.
4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. / ... just in time to see the beginning of the film.

122.3
2 at the end of the month
3 at the end of the course
4 at the end of the race
5 at the end of the interview

122.4
2 In the end she resigned (from her job).
3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn German).
4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party). or In the end we didn't go (to the party).

122.5
2 In 6 at
3 at ... at 7 in
4 in 8 at
5 in 9 in

UNIT 123

123.1
2 On his arm. or On the man's arm.
3 At the traffic lights.
4 a On the door.
   b In the door.
5 On the wall.
6 In Paris.
7 a At the gate.
   b On the gate.
8 On the beach.

123.2
2 on my guitar
3 at the next petrol station
4 in your coffee
5 on that tree
6 in the mountains
7 on the island
8 at the window

123.3
2 on
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 at
8 in a small village in the south-west
9 on
10 in
11 on the wall in the kitchen
12 at

UNIT 124

124.1
2 On the second floor.
3 At/On the corner.
4 In the corner.
5 At the top of the stairs.
6 in the back of the car.
7 At the front.
8 On the left.
9 In the back row.
10 On a farm.

124.2
2 on the right
3 in the world
4 on the way to work
5 on the west coast
6 in the front row
7 at the back of the class
8 on the back of this card

124.3
2 in 9 in
3 in 10 on
4 at 11 in
5 in 12 on
6 on 13 in
7 At 14 on ... on
8 in

UNIT 125

125.1
2 on a train
3 at a conference
4 in hospital / in the hospital
5 at the hairdresser's
6 on his bike
7 in New York
8 at the Savoy Theatre

125.2
2 in a taxi
3 at the cinema
4 in prison
5 at school
6 at the sports centre
7 in hospital
8 at the airport
9 on the plane
10 in Tokyo

125.3
2 at
3 in
4 at
5 at/in a very comfortable hotel ... in Amsterdam
6 in
7 on
8 at
9 in
10 at
11 in
12 at home or be home (no preposition) ... at work
13 in
14 in Birmingham ... at Birmingham University

UNIT 126

126.1
2 at
3 to
4 to
5 to
6 into
7 in
8 to
9 into
10 to
11 at
12 to
13 into
14 to
15 get home (no preposition) ... going to bed
16 returned to France ... two years in Brazil
17 born in Chicago ... moved to New York ... lives in New York

126.2
Example answers:
2-4
- I've been to Sweden once.
- I've never been to the United States.
- I've been to Paris a few times.

126.3
2 in
3 - (no preposition)
4 at
5 to
6 - (no preposition)
Key to Exercises

126.4
2 I got on
3 I got out of the car. / ... my car.
4 I got off the train.
5 I got into the taxi. or I got in the taxi.
6 I got off the plane.

UNIT 127
127.1
2 in cold weather
3 in pencil
4 in love
5 in capital letters
6 in the shade
7 in my opinion

127.2
2 on strike
3 on a tour
4 on TV
5 on purpose
6 on a diet
7 on business
8 on holiday
9 on the phone
10 on the whole

127.3
2 on
3 on
4 at
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 on
9 at
10 at
11 on
12 In my opinion ... on television
13 on
14 on
15 on
16 at
17 on
18 in

UNIT 128
128.1
2 by mistake
3 by hand
4 by credit card
5 by canal

128.2
2 on
3 by
4 by car ... on my bike
5 in
6 on
7 by

128.3
2 travelling by bus or travelling on the bus or travelling on buses
3 taken with a very good camera
4 this music is by Beethoven
5 pay cash or pay in cash
6 a mistake by one of our players

128.4
Example answers:
3-5
• Ulysses is a novel by James Joyce.
• Yesterday is a song by Paul McCartney.
• Guernica is a painting by Pablo Picasso.

128.5
2 by
3 with
4 by
5 by
6 by car ... in your car
7 by the bed with a lamp and a clock on it

128.6
2 The price has gone up by ten pence.
3 Helen won by two votes.
4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129
129.1
2 to the problem
3 with her brother
4 in the cost of living
5 to your question
6 for a new road
7 in or to working at home
8 in the number of people without jobs
9 for shoes like these any more
10 between your job and mine

129.2
2 invitation to
3 contact with
4 key to (key for is also possible)
5 cause of
6 reply to
7 connection between
8 photographs of
9 reason for
10 damage to

129.3
2 to
3 in
4 of
5 in or to
6 for
7 to or towards
8 with
9 in
10 to
11 of
12 for a rise in pay
13 to
14 with

UNIT 130
130.1
2 That was nice of him.
3 That was generous of her.
4 That wasn’t very nice of them.
5 That’s very kind of you.
6 That isn’t very polite of him.
7 That’s a bit childish of them.

130.2
2 kind to
3 angry with
4 excited about
5 impressed by / impressed with
6 bored with (bored by is also possible)
7 amazed at / amazed by
8 careless of

130.3
2 of
3 to
4 with
5 with (by or in are also possible)
6 to
7 at/by
8 with
9 about
10 about
11 for
12 about/by/at
13 to
14 of
15 by/with
16 about
17 at/by
18 about
19 with us for making
20 sorry for/about ... angry with
UNIT 131
131.1
2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from / different to
(different than is also possible)
8 capable of
131.2
2 of furniture
3 on sport
4 of time
5 at tennis
6 to a Russian / to a Russian man / to a Russian guy
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / to yours or from your problem / to your problem
131.3
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 in
6 of or about
7 of ... of
8 on
9 of
10 with
11 of
12 in
13 of
14 of
15 at
16 of
17 on
18 of
131.4
Example answers:
2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at maths.
4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.
5 I'm good at sport.

UNIT 132
132.1
2 a
3 b
4 b
5 a
6 a
7 b
8 a
9 b
10 b
11 a
12 b
132.2
3 speak to
4 point (them) at
5 look at
6 listen to
7 throw (stones) at
8 throw (it) to
9 reply to
132.3
2 at
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 to

UNIT 133
133.1
2 for
3 of
4 to
5 of
6 about
7 - (no preposition)
8 about
9 - (no preposition)
10 for
11 for
12 about
13 for
14 for
133.2
2 of
3 about
4 for
5 of
6 for
7 about
8 - (no preposition)
133.3
2 looking for
3 looked after
4 looking for
5 look for
6 looks after
134.1
2 hear about
3 heard from
4 heard of
5 hear from
6 hear about
7 heard of
134.2
2 think about
3 think of
4 think of
5 thinking of/about
6 think of
7 thought about
8 think (much) of
9 thinking about/of
10 think of
134.3
2 about
3 to us about
4 of
5 of
6 about ... about ... about ...
about
7 of
8 about
9 about/of
134.4
2 complaining about
3 think about
4 warn (you) about
5 heard of
6 dream of
7 reminded (me) about
8 remind (you) of

UNIT 135
135.1
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 - (no preposition)
6 for
7 of
8 for
9 of
10 for
11 on
135.2
2 for the misunderstanding
3 her/jane on winning the tournament
4 him from his enemies
5 of eleven players
6 on bread and eggs
7 me for your problems / your problems on me
UNIT 137

137.1
1 sit down
2 flew away
3 get out
4 speak up
5 get by
6 gone up
7 looked round

137.2
1 back at
2 up to
3 forward to
4 away with
5 up at
6 in through

137.3
1 wake me up
2 get it out
3 give them back
4 switch it on
5 take them off

137.4
1 I have to take them back
2 We can turn the television off
3 or We can turn off the television
4 I knocked it over
5 I don’t want to wake her up
6 (example answer) You should put your coat on
7 or You should put on your coat
8 I was able to put it out
9 (example answer) They’ve put the price(s) up
10 or they’ve put up the price(s)
11 Shall I turn the light(s) on?
12 or Shall I turn on the light(s)?

UNIT 138

138.1
1 eats
2 moved
3 drop
4 checked
5 cut
6 plug
7 filling / to fill
8 left
9 left
10 dive
11 rub / cross
12 dropped

138.2
1 into
2 in
3 out
4 into
5 into
6 out of

UNIT 139

139.1
1 a mistake
2 a candle
3 an order
4 a cigarette / a candle
5 a new product
6 a mess

139.2
2 works out
3 carried out
4 ran out
5 sort out / work out
6 find out
7 tried out
8 pointed out
9 work out
10 went out
11 turned out
12 works out / turns out
13 find out
14 put out

139.3
2 giving out / handing out
3 turned out nice / fine / sunny
4 working out
5 fallen out
6 work out how to use the camera / her new camera

139.4
2 try it out
3 work it out
4 sorted it out / worked it out

UNIT 140

140.1
2 put the heating on
3 put the oven on
4 put the kettle on
5 put a CD on
### UNIT 141

141.1
1. went on / carried on
2. walked on / carried on or carried on walking
3. dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
4. went off
5. keeps on phoning me

141.2
1. went off
2. finish off
3. drive on / carry on
4. get on / carry on
5. did you get on
6. get on
7. showing off
8. put off

141.3
1. finish it off
2. were ripped off
3. go off
4. did you get on
5. carried on (playing) / went on (playing)
6. tell them off
7. doesn’t get on (well) with

### UNIT 142

142.1
1. took them down
2. stand up
3. turned it up
4. put their bags down
5. were blown down / fell down
6. put them up
7. bent down (and) picked them up

142.2
1. turn it down
2. calm him down
3. wrote it down
4. let her down
5. turned it down

142.3
1. calm down
2. slowed down
3. was turned down
4. broken down
5. cut down
6. let down
7. (has) closed down
8. be knocked down (or be pulled down or be torn down)
9. turned down
10. was knocked down
11. broke down

### UNIT 143

143.1
1. went up to / walked up to
2. catch up with
3. keep up with

143.2
1. used up
2. washed up
3. grow up
4. turn up / show up
5. gave up
6. taking up
7. give up
8. ended up
9. takes up
10. make up

143.3
1. tidy it up / tidy up
2. fixed it up
3. keep up with
4. was brought up
5. keep it up
6. went up to
7. was made up of
8. set it up / fix it up

### UNIT 144

144.1
1. did
2. e
3. c
4. g
5. a
6. b

144.2
1. held up
2. did it up
3. cheer him up

144.3
1. blew up
2. beaten up
3. broken up / split up
4. do up
5. clears up / will clear up
6. mixed up

144.4
1. look it up
2. put up with
3. made it up
4. come up with
5. tear it up
6. saving up for

### UNIT 145

145.1
1. blew away
2. put it back
3. walked away
4. throw it back (to her)
5. threw them away

145.2
1. be away / have gone away
2. be back
3. ran away
4. smile back
5. get away
6. Keep away / Keep back

145.3
1. Pay
2. throw
3. gets
4. be
5. look
6. gave
7. get

145.4
1. throw it away
2. take them back
3. pay you back / pay it back
4. gave them away
5. call back / call me back

367
Key to Additional exercises (see page 302)

1  I'm getting / I am getting
2  do you do
3  we arrived ... it was raining
4  phones ... she didn't phone
5  you were thinking ... I decided
6  are you looking
7  It doesn't rain
8  rang ... I was getting
9  we went ... she was preparing ...
10  We didn't want ... we didn't stay
11  told ... he didn't believe ...
   He thought ... I was joking

2  didn't go
3  is wearing
4  went
5  haven't heard
6  is being
7  wasn't reading
8  didn't have
9  It's beginning
10  got
11  wasn't
12  you've been
13  I've been doing
14  did she go
15  I've been playing
16  do you come
17  since I saw her
18  for 20 years

3  are you going
4  Do you watch
5  have you lived / have you been living / have you been
6  Did you have
7  Have you seen
8  was she wearing
9  Have you been waiting / Have you been here
10  does it take
11  Have you ridden / Have you ridden on / Have you been on
12  Have you (ever) been

4  've known each other / have known each other / or 've been friends / have been friends
3  I've ever had / I've ever been on /
   I've had for ages (etc.)
4  He went / He went home / He went out / He left
5  I've worn it
6  I was playing
7  been swimming for
8  since I've been / since I (last) went
9  did you buy / did you get

5  1  got ... was already waiting ... had arrived
   2  was lying ... wasn't watching ...
      'd fallen / had fallen ... was snoring ...
      turned ... woke
   3  'd just gone / had just gone ... was reading ... heard ... got ... didn't see ...
      went
   4  missed ... was standing ... realised ...
      'd left / had left ... had ... got
   5  met ... was walking ... 'd been / had been ... 'd been playing / had been playing ...
      were going ... invited ...
      'd arranged / had arranged ... didn't have

6  2 Somebody has taken it.
   3 They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
   4 It's been raining / It has been raining all day. or It's rained / It has rained all day.
   5 I'd been dreaming / I had been dreaming.
   6 I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
   7 They've been going / They have been going there for years.
   8 I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
   9 He's been training / He has been training very hard for it.

7  1  I haven't seen
   2 You look / You're looking
   3 are you going
   4 are you meeting
   5 I'm going
   6 Do you often go
   7 are you going
   8 I'm meeting
   9 has been
   10 I've been waiting
   11 has just started / just started
   12 is she getting
   13 Does she like
   14 she thinks
   15 Are you working
   16 spoke
   17 you were working
   18 went
   19 I started / I'd started
   20 I lost
   21 you haven't had
   22 I've had
   23 have you seen
   24 has he been
   25 I saw

8  1 invented
   2 it's gone / it has gone
   3 had gone ... left
   4 did you do ... Did you go
   5 have you had
   6 was looking or 'd been looking / had been looking
   7 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
   8 I bought ... I haven't worn or I didn't wear
   9 I saw ... was ... I'd seen / I had seen ... I remembered ... it was
   10 Have you heard ... She was ... died ... She wrote ... Have you read
   11 does this word mean ... I've never seen
   12 Did you get ... it had already started
   13 knocked ... was ... she'd gone / she had gone ... she didn't want
   14 He'd never used / He had never used ... he didn't know
   15 went ... She needed or She'd needed / She had needed ... she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9  3 used to drive
   4 was driving
   5 were working
   6 used to have
   7 was living
   8 was playing
   9 used to play
   10 was wearing

10  2 I'm going to the dentist.
   3 No, we're going to hire a car.
   4 I'll look after the children.
   5 I'm having lunch with Sue.
   6 What are you going to have? / What are you having?
   7 I'll turn on the light.
   8 I'm going to turn on the light.
11 should have been warned
12 might not have been feeling / might not have felt

18 could rain / might rain
4 might have gone / could have gone
5 couldn’t go
6 couldn’t have seen / can’t have seen
7 should get
8 wouldn’t recognise / might not recognise
9 must have heard
10 should have turned

19 rings
5 you were
6 it’s / it is
7 it was / it were
8 it had been
9 you had
10 we hadn’t had
11 you’d driven / you had driven or you’d been driving / you had been driving
12 I didn’t read

20 came
3 I’d known / I had known … wouldn’t have disturbed …
4 They’d be / They would be … told
5 hadn’t frightened … wouldn’t have attacked
6 wouldn’t have got / wouldn’t have gotten …
   I’d had / I had had
7 hadn’t been / hadn’t got / hadn’t gotten …
   wouldn’t have failed or would have passed / ‘d have passed

21 Example answers:
1 I wasn’t feeling so tired
2 I hadn’t had much to do
3 I would have forgotten Jane’s birthday
4 I’d take a picture of you
5 I’ll take a picture of you
6 you were in trouble
7 you hadn’t taken so long to get ready
8 I would have gone to the concert
9 I might have got the job
10 you’d eaten lunch
11 there was less traffic
12 people would go out more
22
3 was cancelled
4 has been repaired
5 is being restored
6 It's believed / It is believed
7 I'd be sacked / I would be sacked
8 It might have been thrown
9 I was taught
10 being arrested / having been arrested or I was arrested
11 Have you ever been arrested
12 are reported ... have been injured

23
3 've sold / have sold or sold
4 's been sold / has been sold or was sold
5 are made
6 might be stolen
7 must have been stolen
8 must have taken
9 can be solved
10 should have left
11 is delayed
12 is being built ... is expected

24
Castle Fire
2 was discovered
3 was injured
4 be rescued
5 are believed to have been destroyed
6 is not known
Shop robbery
1 was forced
2 being threatened
3 had been stolen
4 was later found
5 had been abandoned
6 has been arrested / was arrested
7 is still being questioned
Road delays
1 is being resurfaced
2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked
3 is expected
4 will be closed / is going to be closed
5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted
Accident
1 was taken
2 was allowed
3 was blocked
4 be diverted
5 have been killed

25
1 I told her (that) Paul had gone out and I didn't know when he'd be back.
I asked (her) if/whether she wanted to leave a message, but she said (that) she'd try again later.

26
3 changing
4 to change
5 change
6 being
7 saying
8 to call
9 drinking
10 to be
11 to see
12 to be
13 to think ... making
14 living ... to move
15 to be ... playing
16 being stopped ... stealing ... driving
17 work ... pressing

27
3 I don't fancy going out.
4 He tends to forget things.
5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?
6 Everybody seems to have gone out.
7 We're / We are thinking of moving.
8 I was afraid to touch it.
9 He's / He is afraid of being robbed.
10 It's / It is not worth seeing.
11 I'm not used to walking so far.
12 She seems to be enjoying herself.
13 He insisted on showing them to me.
14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

28
3 I've given up reading newspapers.
4 I'd rather not go out tonight / ... stay at home tonight.
5 He has trouble sleeping at night.
6 Do you want me to phone you this evening?
7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me / ... without being seen.
8 I was accused of being a cheat / ... of cheating.
9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.
10 What do you advise me to do?
11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.
12 I regret not taking your advice / ... that I didn't take your advice.

29
2 a foreign country ... the language
3 an economist ... in the United States ... for an investment company
4 I love sport, especially tennis ... two or three times a week ... not a very good player
5 for dinner ... after work ... to the cinema
6 When unemployment is ... for people to find work ... a big problem
7 an accident ... going home ... taken to hospital / taken to the hospital ... I think most accidents ... by people driving
8 the name of the hotel ... The Ambassador ... in Queen Street in the city centre ... near the station
9 The older one ... a pilot with British Airways ... The younger one ... at school ... he leaves school ... go to university ... study law
31
3 It's the most polluted place ... 
4 I was disappointed that ...
5 OK
6 Joe works hard, but ...
7 ... in a large modern building.
8 OK (as fast as he can is also correct)
9 I missed the last three days ...
10 OK
11 The weather has been unusually cold ...
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.
13 ... to wait such a long time. or ...
14 OK
15 ... I got up earlier than usual.

32
2 if 11 in case
3 when 12 in case
4 if 13 if
5 when 14 even if
6 if 15 Although
7 if 16 Although
8 unless 17 When
9 if 18 when
10 as long as

33
2 on
3 at 9.30 on Tuesday morning
4 at / on
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 at
9 during
10 on Friday ... since then
11 for
12 at 
13 at the moment ... until Friday
14 by
15 in

34
1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 to a party at Lisa's house
8 on
9 on
10 to ... 
11 in Vienna ... at the age of 35
12 in this photo ... on the left
13 to the theatre ... in the front row
14 on the wall ... by the door / next to
15 at
16 on
17 in a tower block ... on the fifteenth floor
18 on
19 by
20 on the bus ... by car
21 on ... on
22 in
23 in Chicago ... to Italy
24 to
25 on

35
1 for 7 of
2 at 8 to
3 to 9 of
4 to 10 at/ by
5 in 11 of
6 with 12 about

36
1 of
2 after
3 – (no preposition)
4 about
5 to
6 – (no preposition)
7 into
8 of (about is also possible)
9 to
10 – (no preposition)
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 – (no preposition)
15 in
16 at (about is also possible)
17 on
18 If Alex asks you for money
19 I apologised to Sarah for keeping ...
20 I thanked her for everything

37
2 h 7 c
3 e 8 j
4 g 9 l
5 a 10 f
6 k 11 i

38
2 D 8 C
3 B 9 C
4 B 10 B
5 A 11 A
6 A 12 D
7 D

39
2 out to 8 out with
3 up with 9 on with
4 forward to 10 back on
5 up with 11 out about
6 out of 12 on with
7 on with

40
3 went off
4 turned up / showed up
5 fill it in / fill it out
6 knocked down / pulled down / torn down
7 sorted out
8 gave
9 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
10 split up / break up
11 put up with it
12 get by / live on
13 went on
14 put it off

41
2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 done
6 turned / turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 set
10 held
11 left / 've left / have left or missed / 've missed / have missed
12 works
13 join
14 works
15 drop / call
16 sort / work
17 went off ... woke me up
The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 69–72
a/an and the 72, 73B
a little / a few 87D
a/an with quite and pretty 104B
such a/an 102
able (be able to) 26
about
adjective + about 130, 131B
verb + about 133–134
accuse (of) 62B, 135A
active and passive 42
adjectives 98–101
adjectives + to ... 65–66
the + adjective 76B
adjectives ending in -ing and -ed 98
order of adjectives 99
adjectives after verbs 99C
adjectives and adverbs 100–101
comparatives 105–107
superlatives 108
adjectives + preposition 130–131
admit (+ -ing) 53, 56A
advantage (of/in/to) 60A, 129B
adverbs
adjectives and adverbs 100–101
comparatives 105B
position of adverbs with the verb (always, etc.) 110
advice (uncountable noun) 70B
advise (+ to ... and -ing) 55C
afford (+ to ... 54A, 56A
afraid (of) 131A
I’m afraid so/not 51D
afraid to do and afraid of doing 66A
after
after + present simple / present perfect 25A–B
after + -ing 60B, 68C
look after 133D
ago 12B
agree (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
all 88, 90
all and all the 75B, 88B
all (of) 88
all and both 89D
all, every and whole 90
position of all 110D
alleged (it is alleged ...) 45A
allow (+ to ... and -ing) 55C, 66D
already 111D
already with the present perfect 7D
position of already 110
also (position of also) 110
although 113
always
always do and I’m always doing 3B
position of always 110
amazed
amazed to ... 65C
amazed at by 130C
American English Appendix 7
an see a
angry (about/with/for) 130B
annoyed (about/with/for) 130B
answer
an answer to something 129D
to answer a question (no preposition) 132B
any 69C, 85–86
any and some 85
anybody/anyone/anything/ anywhere 85–86
not ... any 86
any and no 86D
any (of) 88
any and either 89D
any + comparatives 106B
any more / any longer 111B
apologise (to somebody for) 62, 132A, 135B
apostrophe (in short forms) Appendix 5
apostrophe s ‘ (s) 81
appeal (+ to ...) 54C
apply (for) 133B
approve (of + -ing) 62A, 135A
aren’t I? (question tag) 52D
arrange (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
arrive (in/at) 126B
articles (a/an/the) 69–78
a/an 69–72
a/an and the 72, 73B
the 72–78
school / the school etc. 74
children / the children etc. 75
the with names. 77–78
as 107, 116–118
as soon as 25A–B
as ... as (in comparative sentences) 107
as long as 115B
as (= at the same time as) 116A
as and when 116
as (= because) 116B
as and like 117
as if / as though 118
ashamed (of) 131A
ask
ask in passive sentences 44A
ask (somebody) to do something 48D, 55A
ask how/what + to ... 54D
ask somebody (no preposition) 132B
ask (somebody) for 133B
astonished (at/by) 130C
at
at (time) 121
at the end and in the end 122B
at (position) 123–5
at the age of ... 127D
adjectives + at 130C, 131C
verbs + at 132
attitude (to/towards) 129D
auxiliary verbs (see also modal verbs)
in questions 49A–B
in short answers etc. 51
in question tags 52
avoid (+ -ing) 53, 56A
aware (of) 131B
away (verb + away) 137, 145
back
in/at/on the back 124D
verb + back 145
bad (at) 131C
baggage (uncountable noun) 70B
because (of) 113B–C
bed (in bed / to bed) 74C, 124A, 126A
been to 8A, 126A
been to and gone to 7C
before
before + present simple 25A
before + -ing 60B
begin (+ -ing or to ...) 56C
beginning (at the beginning) 122B
being (he is and he is being) 4E
believe (in) 136A
believed (it is believed ...) 45A
better 105C
had better 35A–B
between (noun + between) 129E
blame 131B
bored
bored and boring 98
bored with 130C
born (I was born) 44C
both (of) 89
both ... and 89C
both and all 89D
position of both 110D
bother (+ -ing or to ...) 56C
bottom (at the bottom) 124C
bound (bound to do) 65E
bread (uncountable) 70B
break
break into 136B
break down 137A, 142D
break up 144D
busy (busy doing something) 63D
by 120, 128
by after the passive 42B, 128C
by (+ -ing) 60B
by myself / yourself etc. 83D
by (the time) 120
by and until 120B
by chance / by post etc. 128A
by car / by bus etc. 128B
a play by Shakespeare etc. 128C
adjective + by 130C
I wish I could 41C
could/you ... ? 37
could and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
countable and uncountable nouns
69–70
damage (uncountable noun) 70B
damage to 129D
dare 54B
decided + to ... 54, 56A
decide against + -ing 62A
delighted (with) 130B
demand + demand should 34A–B
a demand for 129A
deny (+ -ing) 53, 56A
depend (on) 135D
dependent (on) 131C
depressed (and depressing) 98
deserve (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
despite 113
did (in past simple questions and negatives) 5C
die (of) 135A
difference (between) 129E
different (from/to) 131C
difficulty (have difficulty + -ing) 63C
direct speech and reported speech
47–48, 50B
disappointed + to ... 65C
disappointed and disappointing 98
with 130B
discuss (no preposition) 133A
divide (into) 136B
do (in present simple questions and negatives) 2C
do + up 144D
down (verb + down) 137, 142
dream + -ing 62A, 66D
dream about/of 134C
during 119
each of) 91
each other 82C
- ed clauses 97
either (of) 89
not ... either 51C
either ... or 89C
either and any 89D
elder 106E
elest 108C
encourage + to ... 55B
end in the end and at the end 122B
at the end (position) 124C
end up 143E
enjoy + -ing 53A, 54A, 56A, 58A
enough 103
envious (of) 131A
even 112
position of even 110
even if/when 112D
even though 112D, 113E
ever (with the present perfect) 8A
every 90
every and all 90
everybody/everyone/everything 90A–C
every and each 91
everyone and every one 91D
excited (about) 130B
exclamations (What ... !) 71A–B
excuse (form) 62B
expect I expect so / I don’t expect so 51D
expect + to ... 55A
expected (It is expected that) 45A
experience (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
explain 54D, 132A
fail (+ to ... ) 54A, 56A, 66D
fairly 104
famous (for) 131C
fancy (+ -ing) 53A, 56A
far far/further/farther 105C
far + comparative 106A
fast 101B
fed up (with) 60A, 130C
feel
how do you feel and how are you feeling 4D
feel like 62A
feel + adjective 99C, 100B
few 69C, 87
few and a few 87C–D
two of) 88
finish finish + -ing 53
finish off 141C
first it’s the first time I’ve ... 8D
the first last next + to ... 65D
the first two days 99D
fond (of) 131A
for for with the present perfect 8B, 9B
for and 11–12
for and since 12A
for and to ... (purpose) 64C, 103C
for and during 119
noun + for 129A
adjective + for 130D, 131C
verb + for 133, 135B
forget (+ to ... ) 54, 56A
forget (for) 135B
frightened (of) 131A
from adjective + from 131C
verb + from 135C
...
front (in/at/on the front) 124D
full (of) 131B
furious (about/with/for) 130B
furniture (uncountable noun) 70B
further 105C
future 19–25, Appendix 3
present tenses for the future 19
going to 20
will 21–22
will and shall 21D, 22D
will and going to 23
will be doing (future continuous) 24
will have done (future perfect) 24
future with when, if etc. 25, 114A, 115C, 119B

generous (+ preposition) 130A
generical names with and without the 77
gerund see -ing
get
get in the passive 44D
get something done 46C
get someone to do something 55B
get used to 61
get + adjective 99C
get to (a place) 126B
get in/out/on/off 126D, 138A
get by 137A
get out of 138C
get on 137A, 141B
get away (with) 145B
get back to 145C
give
give in passive sentences 44A
give up 53B, 143E
give out 139C
give away 145B

glad (+ to …) 65C

go
go swimming/shopping etc. 63E
go on holiday / on a trip etc. 127C
go on 53B, 140B, 141A
go on doing and go on to do 56B
go out 139A
go off 140D, 141C
going to 20, Appendix 3
going to and will 23
was/were going to 20D
gone to and been to 7C

good
good at 60A, 131C
good of someone to do something, (be) good to someone 130A
good and well 101A
it’s no good (+ -ing) 63A
got (have got) 17A, 31D
gotten (American English) Appendix 7
guess (I guess so) 51D

had
had done (past perfect) 15
had been doing (past perfect continuous) 16
had (past of have) 17
if I’d known / I wish I’d known 40
had better 35A–B
hair (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
half (of) 88
happen (to) 136D
happy (happy/about with) 130B
hard 101B–C
hardly 101C–D
hate
hate doing / to do 58
would hate 58B–C
have/has 17
have done (present perfect) 7–14
have been -ing (present perfect continuous) 9–10
have and have got 17
have breakfast / have a bath etc. 17C
I’m having, we’re having etc. 17C
have to (and must) 31
have got to 31D
have something done 46
having (done) 53D, 68C
hear
with the present simple or can 4C
hear someone do/doing 67
hear of/about/from 134A
help
help + to … 55A
can’t help 57C
home 74C, 125A, 126C
hope
hope + present simple 22B
hope and wish 41A
I hope so / I hope not 51D
hope + to … 54A, 56A
hospital (hospital / the hospital) 74B,
125A
American English Appendix 7
how about (+ -ing) 60A
how long … ? (+ present perfect) 11–12
how long is it since … ? 12C
if 25, 38–40
if I do … 25C
if I do and if I did 38
if I knew, if I were etc. 39
if I had known, if I had been etc. 40
if and when 25D
if + should 34E
if any 85C
even if 112D
if and in case 114B
as if 118
if (= whether) 50
imagine (+ -ing) 53, 56A
impressed (with/by) 130C
in
in (time) 121
in time and on time 122A
in the end and at the end 122B
in (position) 123–126
in/of after a superlative 108D
in (other uses) 127A, 129C
adjective + in 131C
verb + in 136A, 137, 138
in and into 138A
in case 114
increase (in) 129C

infinitive (to be, to play etc.) 54–59, 64–67

passive infinitive (to be done) 43A–B

infinitive in reported speech 48D
verbs + infinitive 54–59
continuous infinitive (to be doing) 54C
perfect infinitive (to have done) 54C, 58C

infinitive after a question word 54D
verbs + object + infinitive 55
verbs + infinitive or -ing 55–58
to-infinitive and to + -ing 60C

infinitive for purpose (I went out to post a letter) 64

adjectives + infinitive 65–66

infinitive without to after make and let 55D
see/hear somebody do 67

information (uncountable noun) 70B

-ing (being, playing etc.) 53, 55–63
being (done) (passive) 44B

verbs + -ing 53, 55–59
having (done) 53D, 68C
verbs + -ing or to … 55–58
prepositions + -ing 60, 66
to + -ing and to-infinitive 60C
used to + -ing 61
verbs + preposition + -ing 62, 66D
expressions + -ing 63
go swimming / go shopping etc. 63E
see/hear somebody doing 67

- ing clauses 68, 97

insist
insist + should 34A–B
insist on 62A, 136E

in spite of 60A, 113

instead of (+ -ing) 60A

intend (+ to … or -ing) 56C

interested (in) 60A, 131C
interested in doing and interested to do 66B
interested and interesting 98

into 126D
verbs + into 136B
in and into 138A

invitation (to) 129D

invite
invite + to … 55B
inviting somebody to something 136D

Index

375
irregular verbs 5B, Appendix 1
it and there 84
it’s no good / it’s no use (+ -ing) 63A
it’s time ... 35C
it’s worth (+ -ing) 63B
jealous (of) 131A
just
just with the present perfect 7D
just in case 114A
just as 116A
just in time 122A
keep
keep on 53, 56A, 141A
keep up (with ... ) 143A
keep away (from ...) 145B
kind (kind of someone to do something / be kind to someone) 65B, 130A
know (how/what etc. + to ...) 54D
late and lately 101B
laugh (at) 132C
learn (how) (+ to ...) 54, 56A
leave
leave for 133B
leave something out 138C
less 107A
let
let somebody do something 55D
let down 142D
like (verb)
like doing / to do 58
would like 37E, 55A, 58B–C
like (preposition/conjunction)
like and as 117
like and as if 118
likely (+ to ...) 65E, 84B
listen (to) 132A
little 69C, 87
little and a little 87C-D
little (of) 88
a little + comparative 106A
live (on) 135D
long
as long as 115B
no longer / not ... any longer 111B
look
you look and you’re looking 4D
look forward to 60C, 62A, 137B
look + adjective 99C, 100B
look as if 118
look at 132C
look for/after 133D
look up 144D
lot (a lot / lots) 87A–B
quite a lot 104B
a lot + comparative 106A
love
love doing / to do 58
would love 58B–C
be/fall in love with 127A
luck
luck (uncountable noun) 70B
luggage (uncountable noun) 70B
make
make somebody do something 55D
make up 143E, 144A
manage (+ to ...) 26D, 54A, 56A
many (and much) 69C, 87
many (of) 88
married (to) 131C
may 29–30
may as well 30D
may I ... ? 37B–C
may and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mean (adjective – mean of someone to do something / be mean to someone) 65B
means (noun) 79B
might 29–30
might in if sentences 30B, 38C, 40D
might as well 30D
might and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mind (+ -ing) 53, 56A, 58A–B
do you mind if ... ? 37C
mine/your etc. (a friend of mine/your ... ) 83A
modal verbs (will, can, must etc.) 21–22,
26–37, Appendix 4
more
more in comparatives 105
not ... any more 111B
most
most + noun 75A
most (of) 88
most in superlatives 108
much (and many) 69C, 87
much (of) 88
much + comparative 106A
must
must and can’t 28
must and have to 31
mustn’t 31C, 32A
must and should 33A
must and other modal verbs Appendix 4
myself/yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 82
by myself / by yourself etc. 83D
name
names with and without the 77–78
nationality words with the 76C
need
need to do and need doing 57B
a need for 129A
needn’t 32
needn’t have (done) and didn’t need to
(dо) 32D
needn’t and other modal verbs Appendix 4
American English Appendix 7
negative
present simple 2C
past simple 5C
negative questions 49D
no, none and any 86
negative short forms
Appendix 5.3
neither (of) 89
neither am I, neither do I etc. 51C
neither ... nor 89C
neither and none 89D
never
never with the present perfect 8A
position of never 110
news (uncountable noun) 70B, 79B
tice (nice of someone to do something / be nice to someone) 65B, 130A
no
no and none (of) 86A, 88
no and any 86
nobody/no-one/nothing/nowhere 86B
no with comparatives 106B
no longer 111B
none
none (of) and no 86A, 88
none and neither 89D
nor
nor am I, nor do I etc. 51C
neither ... nor 89C
nouns
countable and uncountable 69–70
singular and plural 69, 71, 79
noun + noun (compound nouns) 80
of
of and ’s 81
all of / none of / most of etc. 88, 96B
both of / neither of / either of 89, 96B
a friend of mine/your etc. 83A
of/in after a superlative 108D
noun + of 129B
adjective + of 130A, 131A–B
verb + of 134, 135A
off (verb + off) 137, 140–141
offer
offer in passive sentences 44A
offer + to ... 54A, 56A
on
on (time) 121
on time and in time 122A
on (position) 123–125
on a bus / on a train etc. 125E
on (other uses) 127B–C
adjective + on 131C
verb + on 135D, 136E, 137, 140–141
one another 82C
only (position of only) 110
ought to 33D
ought and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
out
out of 126D
verb + out 137–139
out and out of 138A
own
my own house / your own car 83B–C
my own / on your own etc. 83D
Index

questions 49–50
  present simple questions 2C, 49B
  past simple questions 5C, 49B
  negative questions 49D
  embedded questions (Do you know what ... ?) 50A
  reported questions 50B
  question tags 52

quite 104

rather
  would rather 59C
  I’d rather you did something 59D
  rather cold / rather nice etc. 104

reason (for) 129A

recommend 34A–8

reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself etc.) 82
  by myself/yourself etc. 83D

refuse (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

regret (+ -ing and to ...) 53D, 56B

regular and irregular verbs
  Appendix 1

relationship (with/between) 129E

relative clauses 92–96
  relative clauses as object 93
  prepositions in relative clauses 93C
  two types of relative clause 95

relative pronouns 92–96
  who 92–96
  which 92–93, 95–96
  that 92–94
  that and what 92D
  whose 94A, 95B
  whom 94B, 95B, 96A–B
  where 94C, 95B
  of whom / of which 96B
  whom / whose 96B
  etc. 96B

remember
  remember + to ... and -ing 56B
  remember how/what + to ... 54D

remind
  remind + to ... 55B
  remind of/about 134E

reported speech 47–48
  reported questions 50B

responsible (for) 131C

rise (in) 129C

risk (+ -ing) 53, 56A

room (countable or uncountable noun) 70A

’s (apostrophe s) 81, Appendix 5.1

said (it is said that) 45A

same (the same as) 73A, 107C

satisfied
  satisfied and satisfying 98
  satisfied with 130B

say
  say and tell 48C
  say (+ to ...) 48D

scared (of) 131A

scenery (uncountable noun) 70B

school (school / the school) 74A

sea (sea / the sea) 74D

see
  with the present simple or can 4C
  see someone do/doing 67
  see off 140D

seem
  seem + to ... 54C
  seem + adjective 99C

self (myself / yourself etc.) 82, 83D

series 79B

shall and will 22D

shall / we? 21D

Let’s ..., shall we? 52D

shall and other modal verbs
  Appendix 4

American English Appendix 7

shocked
  shocked and shocking 98
  shocked at/by 130C

short (of) 131B

short forms (I’m, you’ve, didn’t etc.)
  Appendix 5

should 33–34

should and had better 35B

should and other modal verbs
  Appendix 4

shout (at/to) 132D

show
  show in passive sentences 44A
  show someone how / what + to ... 54D
  show off 141C
  show up 143E

similar (to) 131C

simple past see past simple

simple present see present simple
  since
  with present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
  since and for 12A
  how long is it since ... ? 12C
  since (= because) 116B

singular and plural 69, 71, 79

they / them / their used for somebody / nobody etc. 85E, 86C, 90C

slightly (+ comparative) 106A

smell
  with the present simple and can 4C
  smell something (burning) 67D
  smell + adjective 99C

so
  so am I, so do / etc. 51C
  I think so, I hope so etc. 51D
  so that (purpose) 64D
  so and such 102
  so + adjective + that 102B
  so long as 115B

solution (to) 129D

some
  69C, 71, 85
  some with countable nouns 71
  some and any 85
  somebody / someone / something / somewhere 85
  some (of) 88

soon (as soon as) 25A–B

sorry
  sorry + to ... 65C
  sorry to do and sorry for/about doing 66C
  sorry about / for 130D
  feel sorry for 130D

sound
  sound + adjective 99C
  sound as if 118

space (space and a space) 73B

speak (to) 132A

species 79B

spelling Appendix 6

spend (spend money) 63D, 136E

spite (in spite of) 113

start (start + to ... or -ing) 56C

state verbs (like, know, belong etc.) 4A, 6E, 10D, 16E, 17A

still 111

still and yet 111C

stop
  stop + -ing 53, 56A
  stop someone (from) + -ing 53C, 62B, 66D

stupid (stupid of someone to do something) 65B, 130A

subjunctive 34B

American English Appendix 7

succeed (in + -ing) 62A, 66D, 136A

such
  such and so 102
  such as 117A

suffer (from) 135C

suggest
  suggest + should 34A–C, 55B
  suggest + -ing 53, 54A, 56A

superlative (longest / best etc.) 108

suggest (I suppose so / not) 51D

supposed (He is supposed to ...) 45B

sure
  sure + to ... 65E, 84B
  sure of/about 131B

surprised + to ... 65C

surprised and surprising 98

surprised at/by 130C

suspect (of) 62B, 135A

suspicious (of) 131A

tags (question tags) 52

take
  take care of 133C
  take somebody in 138B
  take off 140
  take down 142A
  take up 143

talk
  talk to somebody 132A
  talk about something 62A, 133A

taste
  with the present simple or can 4C
  taste + adjective 99C
teach
teach in passive sentences 44A
teach somebody how to do something 54D
teach + to ... 55B
telephone see phone
tell
tell in passive sentences 44A
tell and say 48C
tell someone to do something 48D, 55B
tell someone what to do 54D
tell off 141C
temporal clauses (when clauses) 25
tend (+ to ...) 54C
than 105, 107
thank (for) 68B, 132B, 135B
that
said that 47B
in relative clauses 92–94
the 72–78
the and a/an 72, 73B
the sea, the sky etc. 73B
the cinema, the theatre etc. 73C
school / the school 74
children / the children 75
the + adjective (the young etc.) 76B
the + adjectival words (the French etc.) 76C
the with geographical names 77
the with streets, buildings etc. 78
the ... the ... (with comparatives) 106D
the + superlative (the oldest etc.) 108B
there (and it) 84
there’s no point in ... 63A
there will / must / should etc. 84B
there is + -ing or -ed 97D
they / them / their (used for somebody /
anybody / nobody / everybody) 85E, 86C, 90C
think
I think and I’m thinking 4B
I think so, I don’t think so 51D
think of / -ing 54A, 62A, 66D
think about and think of 134B
though 113E
as though 118
even though 112D, 113E
threaten (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
throw
throw to / at 132D
throw away 137C, 145B
till see until
time
it’s the first time I’ve ... 8D
it’s time ... 35C
countable or uncountable noun 70A
on time and in time 122A
tired
tired and tiring 98
tired of 130C
to + infinitive (to be / to do etc.) see
infinitive
to 126
to + -ing 60C
noun + to 129D
adjective + to 130A, 131C
verb + to 132, 136D
too and enough 103
top (at the top) 124C
translate (from / into) 136B
travel (uncountable noun) 70B
trouble (have / having / doing something)
63C
try
try + to ... or -ing 57A
try out 139C
try on 140C
turn
turn out 139
turn on / off 137C, 140A
turn up 142A, 143E
turn down 142
two-word verbs see phrasal verbs
typical (of) 131B
uncountable nouns 69–70
understand (how / what + to ...) 54D
university (university / the university)
74B
unless 115A
until (or till)
until + present simple / present perfect
25A–B
until and by 120B
up (verb + up) 137, 142–144
upset (about) 130B
use (it’s no use + -ing) 63A
used
used to do 18
be / get used to 61
I am used to doing and I used to do 18F,
61D
usually (position of usually) 110
verbs see also present, past, future,
passive etc.
verbs not used in continuous tenses
4A, 6E, 10D, 16E, 17A
list of irregular verbs
Appendix 1.4
present and past tenses
Appendix 2
verbs + -ing and verbs + to ... (infinite) 53–59
verbs + preposition 62, 132–136
phrasal verbs (break down / get on etc.)
137–145
wait (for) 133B
want (+ to ...) 55A, 66D
warn
warn someone (not) to do something
55B
warn someone of / about something
134F
was / were 5D
was / were -ing (past continuous) 6
was / were going to 20D
was / were able to 26D
was and were in if sentences 39C
waste (waste time + -ing) 63D
weather (uncountable noun) 70B
well 101A
were (used with / he/she/it) 39C, 118D
what
what in questions 49
what ... for? 64C
What ... ? (exclamations) 71A–B
what and that (relative clauses) 92D,
93D
what and which (relative clauses) 96C
when
when + present simple / present perfect
25
when and if 25D
when + -ing 68B
even when 112D
when and as 116
where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95C
whether 50
which
which in questions 49
which in relative clauses 92–93, 95–96
all / none / some of which 96B
while
while + present simple / present perfect
25A
while + -ing 68B
while and during 119B
who
who in questions 49
who in relative clauses 92–96
who and whose in relative clauses 94A
who and whom in relative clauses 94B
whole 90D–E
on the whole 127B
whom
in questions 49C
in relative clauses 94B, 96A–B
all / none / some of whom 96B
whose (in relative clauses) 94A, 95C
why
why isn’t / didn’t (etc.) ... ? 49D
why in relative clauses 94E
will 21–22
will you? 21C–D, 37A
will and shall 21D, 22D
will and going to 23
will be doing (future continuous) 24
will have done (future perfect) 24
will in if and when sentences 25, 115C
will and would 36B, Appendix 4
will in the passive 43A
Don’t ... will you? 52D
will and other future forms
Appendix 3
will and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
Index

wish 41
I wish I knew etc. 39, 41
I wish I’d known etc. 40C, 41
wish and hope 41A
wish … would 41D

with
noun + with 129E
adjective + with 130B–C, 131C
verb + with 136C

without (+ -ing) 60B
won’t (= will not) 21–22

word order
have something done 46
questions 49
negative questions 49D
embedded questions (Do you know
what … ?) 50A
reported questions 50B
order of adjectives 99
verb and object together 109A
place and time 109B
position of adverbs with the verb (also,
always etc.) 110
word order with phrasal verbs (turn on
the light, turn it on etc.) 137C

work
uncountable noun 70B, 74C
work out 139B
worried (about) 130B
worse 105C
worst 108A
worth (it’s worth + -ing) 63B
would 36
would and will 36B
would you …? 37A
would you like? I’d like 37E
would in if sentences 38–40
wish … would 41D
would like/love/hate/prefer + to … 55A,
58B–C
would prefer 58B, 59B
would rather 59C–D
would and other modal verbs
Appendix 4

write
write to 132B
write down 142D

yet
yet and still 111C
yet + present perfect 7D
Grammar words

This is a list of words used in the explanations in this book.

active and passive

Many verbs can be active or passive. For example, build:

My grandfather built this house. (active)
This house was built by my grandfather. (passive)

The active sentence begins with My grandfather (the subject). This sentence tells us something about my grandfather and what he did (he built this house).

The passive sentence begins with This house (the subject). This sentence tells us something about the house (it was built by my grandfather).

Passive forms are be + past participle. Compare:

active                           passive
I can’t repair it.               It can’t be repaired.
Somebody stole my wallet.       My wallet was stolen.
Have they cleaned the room?     Has the room been cleaned?

See Units 42–44.

adjective

An adjective is a word that tells us about somebody or something. Nice, tall, hungry, foreign and interesting are all adjectives.

Adjectives go before a noun:

a nice day            foreign languages
or after some verbs (be, get, seem, look, taste etc.)

she’s tall           this looks interesting


adverb

Adverbs often end in -ly, for example:

slowly       really       fortunately

These -ly adverbs often tell us how somebody does something:

quietly     carefully       safely

Other adverbs do not end in -ly. Many of these adverbs tell us where, when or how often something happens. Here, yesterday and always are all adverbs.

Some adverbs (for example very, really and absolutely) are used with adjectives:

very sorry       really nice       absolutely enormous

See Units 100, 101 and 110.
apostrophe

We use an apostrophe (’) instead of the missing letter(s) in a short form:

I’m (= I am)  you’ve (= you have)  didn’t (= did not)

We also use an apostrophe + s (’s) to show possession:

Rachel’s car  my sister’s friends  the cat’s tail

See Unit 81 and Appendix 5.

article

A/an and the are articles. Articles are a type of determiner.

See Units 71–78.

auxiliary verb

We use auxiliary verbs together with other verbs:

we are going  the plane has landed  I can’t help  do you know

In these examples, going, landed, help and know are the main verbs. Are, has, can and do are auxiliary verbs.

See Units 51–52.

clause

A clause is a whole sentence or a part of a sentence. There is always a verb in a clause. Examples of clauses:

I’m tired. (one clause, one sentence)
I’m tired and I want to go home. (two clauses, one sentence)
I was tired when I got home. (two clauses, one sentence)
Although I was tired, I went out, which wasn’t a good idea. (three clauses, one sentence)

Some clauses begin with a participle (talking/standing/injured/stolen etc.):

Who were those people standing outside your office?

See Units 68 and 92–97.

comparative and superlative

Adjectives and adverbs have comparative and superlative forms.

The comparative form is -er or more ... :

old → older  important → more important

The superlative form is -est or most ... :

old → oldest  important → most important

See Units 105–108.

conjunction

A conjunction is a word that joins clauses. For example, in the following sentences but and if are conjunctions:

We were hungry, but there was nothing to eat.
If she gets the job, she’ll be really happy.

Other conjunctions are and, so, or, when, because, although and that.

See Units 25, 38–40 and 113–120.
contraction  see short form

continuous

Continuous verb forms are be + -ing. For example:

- I am working
- I was working
- I have been working
- I had been working
- I will be working
- I might be working
- I might have been working
- I pretended to be working

See Units 1, 3–4, 6, 9–12, 16, 19, 24 and 54.

countable and uncountable  see noun

determiner

These words are determiners:

- a, an, the  (articles)
- my, your, his, her, its, our, their  (possessives)

We use a determiner with a noun:

- the airport
- your new car
- my best friend

The following words are determiners too (used with a noun), but they can also be pronouns (used without a noun):

- this, that, these, those
- some, any, no, all
- many, much, few, little
- both, either, neither, each

For example:

- I like this jacket.  (determiner)
- I like this.  (pronoun)

See Units 71–78 and 85–91.

direct speech and reported speech

When we use direct speech, we use the words of the speaker. For example:

- Paul went home early. He said 'I'm not feeling good.'

When we use reported (or indirect) speech, we change I'm not to he wasn't:

- Paul went home early. He said he wasn't feeling good.

See Units 47–48.

future

To talk about the future, we use present tenses (I leave, I'm leaving etc.), will or (be) going to.

See Units 19–25 and Appendix 3.
infinitive

The infinitive form of a verb is the form without any extra ending (the form you will find when you look in a dictionary). Sometimes this is called ‘the base form’. So understand, dance and stay are infinitive forms:

- He doesn’t understand.
- Let’s dance.
- We can’t stay here.

The infinitive is often used with to:

- It’s hard to understand.
- I’m not going to dance.
- We don’t want to stay here.

irregular verb  see regular and irregular verbs

modal verb

The following are modal verbs:

- can could will would shall should may might must ought

These verbs are followed by the infinitive (can see, should go, must work etc.).

See Units 21–41.

negative

The negative form is verb + not: I’m not, he did not (didn’t), they cannot (can’t) etc.

noun

A noun is a word for somebody or something. In the sentence

- My friend plays tennis most weekends.

friend, tennis and weekends are nouns.

A noun can be countable (friend/banana/weekend) or uncountable (tennis/water/electricity).

A countable noun can be singular (friend/banana/weekend) or plural (friends/bananas/weekends).

See Units 69–71.

object  see subject and object

participle  see present participle and past participle

passive  see active and passive

past  see tense
past participle

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed (cleaned, danced, played etc.). Irregular verbs have different endings, for example: lost, broken, done.

We use the past participle for perfect forms (have cleaned, had done etc.) and passive forms (is cleaned, was broken etc.).

See also Units 7, 42, 97 and Appendix 1

perfect

Perfect verb forms are have + past participle. For example:

- she has gone: present perfect
- she had gone: past perfect
- she must have gone: perfect infinitive
- she will have gone: perfect infinitive (= future perfect)
- she would like to have gone: to + perfect infinitive

Perfect forms can also be continuous: I have been waiting / I had been waiting / I must have been waiting etc.

See Units 7–16, 24, 27–29, 33, 36, 40, 43, 45, 53–54 and 58.

phrasal verb

A phrasal verb is a verb + in/out/on/off/up/down/away/back etc. These words are sometimes called particles (a type of adverb). For example:

- get on
- take off
- come back
- break down
- keep up

Sometimes phrasal verbs are used for movement and direction:

Go away and don’t come back!
I took my shoes off.

But often they have a special meaning. For example:

- My brother and I don’t get on very well. (= we don’t have a good relationship)
- There are a few problems I need to sort out. (= I need to solve)

Sometimes there is a preposition after a phrasal verb:

I don’t get on with my brother.

Here, get on is a phrasal verb and with is a preposition.

See Units 137–145.

plural see singular and plural

preposition

Some examples of prepositions:

- at, in, on, to, of, for, with, by, from, during

Prepositions are usually followed by a noun or pronoun:

- I don’t like going out at night.
- They live in a small village.
- What’s the name of this street?
- This is for you.

Sometimes (for example, in questions), there is a preposition at the end of a sentence:

- What are you looking for?

See Units 121–136.
**present**  see tense

**present participle**

The present participle ends in -ing (going, dancing, thinking etc.).

We use the present participle for continuous forms of the verb (I'm going, they were dancing etc.).

We also use participles in sentences like:

- Joe hurt his knee *playing* football.

See Units 68 and 97.

**pronoun**

These words are pronouns:

- I/me, you, he/him, she/her, we/us, they/them, it  (personal pronouns)
- mine/yours/his/hers/ours/their's  (possessive pronouns)
- myself/yourself/their's  (reflexive pronouns)

Other pronouns include:

- someone/nobody/everything etc.
- this/that/these/those

See Units 82–91. See also relative pronouns and determiners.

**question tag**

A question tag is a 'mini-question' that we sometimes put on the end of a sentence:

- You haven't seen Kate, *have you?*
- There was a lot of traffic, *wasn't there?*

See also Unit 52.

**regular and irregular verbs**

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs are the same and end in -ed. For example:

- *I worked*  (past simple)
- *I have worked*  (past participle used with have)
- *Tom painted the room.*  (past simple)
- *The room will be painted.*  (past participle used in the passive)

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are sometimes the same and sometimes different. But they do not end in -ed. For example:

- *I lost*  (past simple)
- *I have lost*  (past participle with have)
- *Somebody stole my phone.*  (past simple)
- *My phone was stolen.*  (past participle used in the passive)

See Appendix 1.
relative clause

A relative clause gives information about something or somebody. Relative clauses often begin with relative pronouns (who, whom, whose, which, that):

An architect is a person who designs buildings.
Grace works for a company that makes furniture.

See Units 92–96.

relative pronoun  see relative clause

sentence

A sentence has one or more clauses.

My phone rang. (one clause)
My phone rang, so I answered it. (two clauses)
If my phone rings, can you answer it for me, please? (two clauses)

A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B, C etc.) and ends with a full stop (.)

short form (or contraction)

In spoken English, we usually say I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc. These are short forms or contractions.

The full forms are I am / you have / did not.

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (’) for the missing letters.

See Appendix 5.

singular and plural

A singular form is used for one person or thing. For example: flower, school, child.

A plural form is used for more than one person or thing. For example: flowers, schools, children.

Verbs sometimes have different forms for singular and plural. For example:

Where does she live? (singular)
Where do they live? (plural)

See Units 71 and 79.

subject and object

In the following sentences, Tom is the subject:

Tom is eating an apple.
Tom saw Helen.
Tom plays football.

After the subject, there is a verb (is eating, saw, plays) and an object (an apple, Helen, football).

The object is what he’s eating, who he saw, what he plays.

The subject normally goes before the verb (Tom is eating), and the object goes after the verb (eating an apple). In questions, the verb usually goes before the subject – see Unit 49A.

Some verbs (for example give, show, buy) can have two objects. For example:

Helen bought her mother a present.

Her mother is the indirect object (= the receiver) and a present is the direct object (what Helen bought).

See Units 42, 44A, 46B, 49, 55, 93, 94B, 95B and 137C.
**subjunctive**

The subjunctive has the same form as the infinitive: *do, be, eat, play* etc. You can use the subjunctive after *insist, recommend, suggest* etc. You can also use *should:*

- I insisted that he apologise.
- I insisted that he should apologise.

See Unit 34.

**superlative**  
see **comparative**

**syllable**

A syllable is a part of a word. For example, the word *remember* has three syllables: re-mem-ber.

**tense**

A tense is a verb form that shows time. English verbs have two main tenses, present and past.

Present and past tenses can be simple or continuous. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I walk</em></td>
<td><em>I walked</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I am walking</em></td>
<td><em>I was walking</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of these can also be perfect (with *have*):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect Simple</th>
<th>Past Perfect Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I have walked</em></td>
<td><em>I had walked</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I have been walking</em></td>
<td><em>I had been walking</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Units 1–18 and Appendix 2.

**uncountable**  
see **noun**

**verb**

A verb is a word for an action (*go, eat, work*), a happening (*rain, find, die*) or a state (*be, know, want*).

In the sentence

- *Tom is hungry and wants something to eat.*

*is, wants* and *eat* are all verbs.

Verbs have four or five different forms. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive (or base form)</th>
<th>+ s</th>
<th>+ ing (present participle)</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>work</em></td>
<td>works</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>buy</em></td>
<td>buys</td>
<td>buying</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eat</em></td>
<td>eats</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**word order**

Word order is the way words go together in a sentence. For example, we say:

- *a modern building*  
  (not *a building modern*)
- *I don’t know where she is.*  
  (not *I don’t know where is she*)
- *She always walks to work.*  
  (not *She walks always*)

See Units 49–50, 99, 109–110 and 137.